



WKD 982 03 B 21 24

WKD 982 03 B 21 24

718 Cayman GT4 RS, 718 Spyder RS



# 718 Cayman GT4 RS, 718 Spyder RS

Good to Know – Owner's Manual



Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG is the owner of numerous trademarks, both registered and unregistered, including, without limitation, the Porsche Crest®, Porsche®, Boxster®, Carrera®, Cayenne®, Cayman®, Macan®, Panamera®, Taycan®, PCM™, PDK®, 911®, 718®, 4S®, RS® and the model numbers and the distinctive shapes of the Porsche automobiles, such as the federally registered 911 and Boxster automobiles in the US. The third party trademarks contained herein are the property of their respective owners.

All text, images, and other content in this publication are protected by copyright. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means without prior written permission of Porsche Cars North America, Inc. Porsche Cars North America, Inc. and its affiliates believe the specifications to be correct at the time of printing. However, specifications, standard equipment, and options are subject to change without notice. Some options may be unavailable when any particular car is built.

Some vehicles may be shown with equipment that is not available in the US or Canada. Please ask your authorized Porsche dealer for advice concerning the current availability of options and verify that your vehicle includes the optional equipment you ordered. Porsche recommends seat belt usage and observance of traffic laws at all times. ©2023 Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG

### Further information

You will find more information in the digital channels.

### App



Scan the QR code to download the My Porsche App in the relevant App Store. You will find the comprehensive Owner's Manual in the My Porsche app under:

► [🏠 Vehicle](#) ► [Details](#) ► [Owner's Manual](#)

After downloading the Owner's Manual, it can also be accessed offline.

### Web

You can access the comprehensive Owner's Manual at the following web address:



Fig. 1: QR code manual.porsche.com

- [manual.porsche.com](http://manual.porsche.com)
- [my.porsche.com](http://my.porsche.com)

## About this Owner's Manual

Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG is the owner of numerous trademarks, both registered and unregistered, including, without limitation, the Porsche Crest®, Porsche®, Boxster®, Carrera®, Cayenne®, Cayman®, Macan®, Panamera®, Taycan®, PCM™, PDK®, 911®, 718®, 4S®, RS® and the model numbers and the distinctive shapes of the Porsche automobiles, such as the federally registered 911 and Boxster automobiles in the US. The third party trademarks contained herein are the property of their respective owners.

All text, images, and other content in this publication are protected by copyright. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means without prior written permission of Porsche Cars North America, Inc. Porsche Cars North America, Inc. and its affiliates believe the specifications to be correct at the time of printing. However, specifications, standard equipment, and options are subject to change without notice. Some options may be unavailable when any particular car is built. Some vehicles may be shown with equipment that is not available in the US or Canada. Please ask your authorized Porsche dealer for advice concerning the current availability of options and verify that your vehicle includes the optional equipment you ordered. Porsche recommends seat belt usage and observance of traffic laws at all times. ©2023 Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG

### Warnings and symbols

Different types of warning instructions and symbols are used in this Owner's Manual.



Serious injury or death

Failure to observe warnings in the "Danger" category may result in serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Possible serious injury or death

Failure to observe warnings in the "Warning" category may result in serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Possible moderate or slight injury

Failure to observe warnings in the "Caution" category may result in moderate or slight injury.

#### NOTE

Vehicle damage possible

Failure to observe warnings in the "Notice" category can result in damage to the vehicle.

#### **i** Information

Additional information is provided under "Information".

- ✓ Prerequisites that must be fulfilled in order to use a function.
- ▶ Instructions that must be followed.
- 1. Instructions are numbered in cases where a sequence of steps must be followed.
- 2. Instructions that must be followed on the center display.

▷ Indicates where you can find more information on a topic.

### Disclaimer

Apple®, the Apple logo, CarPlay®, iPod®, Siri®, iPhone® and other designations of Apple are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the USA and other countries.

App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the USA and other countries. iOS® is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco Technology, Inc. in the USA and other countries and is used under license by Apple. Android®, Google Play® and the Google Play logo are trademarks of Google LLC. QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE.

# Table of Contents

## Safety and Driving Pleasure..... 3

### Overview graphics

Driver's Cockpit.....	20
Center Console.....	21
Control panel.....	22
PCM Text and character Input.....	23
PCM Operating Principle.....	24
PCM Drives.....	26
PCM control panel.....	27
Overhead console.....	28

### Opening and Locking

Alarm System.....	29
Vehicle Key.....	30
Windows.....	33
Trunk lid.....	34
Garage door opener / (HomeLink®).....	36
Convertible top.....	39
Central Locking.....	48

### Air Conditioning and Ergonomics

Airbag Systems.....	53
Instrument and Interior Lighting.....	56
Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats).....	58
Air conditioning system.....	62
Steering Wheel.....	68
Seat Belts.....	68
Seats.....	70
Sun Visors.....	72
Mirrors.....	73

### Driving and Driving Assistance

Drive-off assistant.....	76
Brakes.....	76
Starting, Driving and Stopping the Vehicle.....	78
Sport exhaust system.....	80

Transmission.....	80
Lights.....	86
Front axle lift system.....	89
ParkAssist.....	90
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM).....	92
Porsche Stability Management (PSM).....	93
Windshield wipers.....	96
Rear spoiler.....	99
Cruise.....	99

### Display and input

Instrument cluster.....	101
Porsche Communication Management (PCM).....	110
Voice Control.....	114
Warning and Information Messages.....	121

### Operation and use

Vehicle settings.....	141
Device Manager.....	145
MyScreen.....	148
Media.....	149
Messages.....	153
Navigation.....	154
Sport Chrono Stopwatch.....	161
Phone.....	165

### Porsche Connect

Setting up Porsche Connect.....	175
Apple CarPlay.....	179
Fuel Prices.....	180
Message Dictation.....	180
Real-time Traffic Info.....	182
My Porsche App.....	183
News.....	183
Online Map Update.....	184
Online search.....	184
Parking spaces.....	184

Satellite Map.....	184
Weather.....	185

### Luggage and Transport

Storage.....	186
Cup Holders.....	187
Luggage compartment.....	188
Smoker's Package.....	191
Electrical Socket.....	192

### Roadside Assistance

Battery.....	194
Towing and tow-starting.....	198
Brake Fluid.....	201
Emission control system.....	202
Coolant.....	204
Engine oil.....	206
Car Care.....	209
Measurement on the Test Stand.....	217
Tires and Wheels.....	217
Flat Tire.....	237
Fuses.....	239
Refueling.....	244
Jack and Lifting Platform.....	246
Washer Fluid.....	247

### Technical Data

Technical Data.....	248
Radio equipment in accordance with 2014/53/EU.....	259
Radio equipment outside the EU.....	262
Index.....	273



## Safety and Driving Pleasure

### Your contribution

Your Porsche: High performance, great sportiness. A fascinating experience – no doubt about it. But only if you can remain relaxed, whatever the situation. Therefore, for us the best quality also applies to safety.

Here you can find out how you can play your part in ensuring safety while driving your Porsche.

### Excellent technology: A prerequisite for your safety

Dear vehicle owner, thank you for choosing a Porsche sports car. No other vehicle embodies such a unique blend of legendary tradition, ground-breaking innovation, high performance, and sportiness.

Because your safety and driving pleasure are important to us, we ask you to study the Owner's Manual before starting your journey. Please familiarize yourself with the handling of your Porsche vehicle.

To prevent or limit injuries, always fasten your seat belts and always operate your Porsche vehicle within the legal requirements.

Always keep the Owner's Manual in the vehicle. If you sell your Porsche vehicle, please pass the Owner's Manual and other operating instructions on to the new owner. If you have any questions regarding the handling or maintenance of your vehicle, please select 1-800-PORSCHE or contact your Porsche dealer.

**A separate maintenance booklet** provides information on keeping your Porsche running in perfect condition with regular maintenance.

**A separate warranty and information booklet** for customers contains detailed information on warranty protection for your Porsche.

#### WARNING

Improper use of your Porsche

Your Porsche is designed to be used safely and according to local traffic regulations, the prevailing driving conditions and information in the Owner's Manual.

- ▶ Do not misuse your Porsche by ignoring traffic regulations, driving conditions or the information in this Manual.

Your vehicle consists of thousands of parts and components developed and manufactured to meet the high demands that Porsche places on technical quality and safety.

In this brochure, "left" refers to the driver side of the vehicle, while "right" refers to the passenger side. The texts, illustrations, and technical data in this brochure are based on the information available at the time of publication.

Porsche has always striven to continuously improve its products. For this reason, Porsche reserves the right to make design changes, modify technical data and expand or improve products. However, this does not imply obligation to apply these changes and improvements to previously manufactured products.

We wish you many miles of safety and driving pleasure with your Porsche!

### Reporting Safety Defects

#### For U.S. only:

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway

Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Porsche Cars North America, Inc. (Porsche Cars N.A.).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety problem exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you and your authorized Porsche dealer, or Porsche Cars N.A.. To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to

<http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

#### For Canada only

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should notify Porsche Cars Canada, Ltd. immediately and may also inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel: 1-800-333-0510 or Tel: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)

TTY for hearing impaired: 1-888-675-6863 or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory 80 Noel Street Gatineau, QC J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

- English:

- ▶ <https://tc.canada.ca/en/road-transportation>
- French:
  - ▶ <https://tc.canada.ca/fr/transport-routier>

## Note to owners

In Canada, this manual is also available in French. To obtain a copy contact your authorized Porsche centre or write to:

## Note aux propriétaires

Au Canada on peut se procurer un exemplaire de ce Manuel en français auprès du concessionnaire ou du: Porsche Cars Canada, Ltd.

Automobiles Porsche Canada, LTEE

165 Yorkland Boulevard

Unit 150

Toronto, ON

Canada, M2J 4R2

Telephone number for customer assistance: 1-800-PORSCHE / Option 3

## Excellent technology: A prerequisite for your driving pleasure

High-quality materials and outstanding craftsmanship ensure a long vehicle life. The vehicle requires care and attention in order to achieve its full potential. You will thus be able count on your Porsche in critical situations.

## Checking the vehicle for damage and correct functioning



A vehicle with technical defects may lead to accidents, e.g. due to unintended operating behavior.

- ▶ Regularly check your vehicle at least once a month and prior to long trips to ensure it is free of technical defects. Check for the following in particular:
  - Undamaged tires, correct tire pressure and sufficient tread
  - Functioning headlights, brake lights and turn signals
  - Undamaged aerodynamic components
  - Intact wiper blades
  - Windshield and window glass is clear and free of cracks or other damage
  - Exterior and interior mirrors are intact and correctly adjusted
  - Sensors and cameras are not cracked or damaged
  - Cooling air ducts, sensors and cameras not covered (e.g., by films, stone guards, license plate holders)
- ▶ Only operate telephones or radio devices with built-in radio antennae in the vehicle with the external antenna connected. This is necessary in order not to exceed electromagnetic radiation limits.

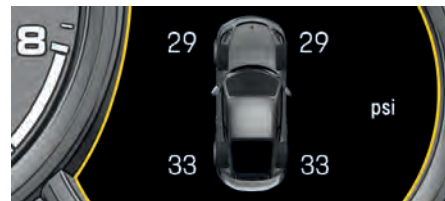
## Checking tires for damage



Damaged tires can rupture while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Inspect the tires as often as required depending on use, but at least once a month, for any sharp objects, punctures, cuts, tears, or bulges. Also check the tire sidewalls as part of this process.
- ▶ If in doubt, have the tire and the entire wheel checked by an authorized Porsche service center.
- ▶ Do **not** continue driving with damaged tires. Have damaged tires replaced immediately: Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Setting tire pressure



Excessively low or high tire pressure can destroy the tire and wheel, extend braking distance, and significantly increase accident risk. If tire pressure is too low, fuel consumption can increase noticeably and range can decrease.

- ▶ Adjust tire pressure to suit your tires and the load.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Wheels and Tires" on page 252.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.
- ▶ Ensure that the settings in the Tire Pressure menu in the multifunction display correspond to the tires mounted on the vehicle and the current vehicle load.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.
- ▶ If a red tire pressure warning appears on the multifunction display: Stop immediately in a suitable place and check the tires for damage. Do **not** continue driving with damaged tires. If necessary, repair damage using tire sealant.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Flat Tire" on page 237.

### Checking the lights



If the lights are faulty, your vehicle is difficult to see in the dark and in poor visibility. Other road users may notice you too late, increasing the risk of an accident.

Lighting system components are:

- parking and driving lights, low beam and high beam
  - turn signal, brake and reversing lights
  - fog lights
- ▶ Check that all lights function correctly and have defective lights repaired immediately.

### Checking aerodynamic components

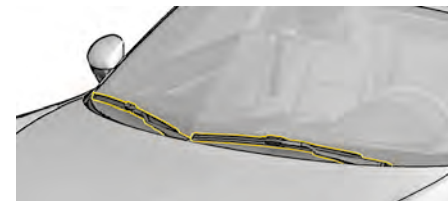


Damaged or missing aerodynamic components, e.g. spoilers or underbody paneling, impair vehicle handling.

- ▶ Check your vehicle regularly for damage.
- ▶ Damaged or missing components must be replaced immediately.

Adding, removing, modifying and replacing aerodynamic components can impair handling. This poses a considerable safety risk. We therefore strongly advise against this.

### Keeping windshield, windows and wiper blades clean and functional



Dirty windshields and windows and defective wiper blades reduce visibility and significantly increase the risk of an accident.

- ▶ Keep the vehicle and windshield/windows clean.
- ▶ Thaw frozen wiper blades and free them from the windshield.
- ▶ Replace wiper blades regularly, or at the latest when they begin to leave streaks on the windshield.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Wiper blades" on page 98.

### Service and modifications to the vehicle must be performed by an authorized Porsche dealer



Any modification to the vehicle may impair or disable its safety functions. Unauthorized work performed during the warranty period may result in claims being denied.

- ▶ Have all service work and modifications to the vehicle performed exclusively by an authorized Porsche dealer. This ensures that your vehicle remains reliable and safe to drive, and that no consequential damage occurs to your vehicle. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Diagnostic socket

The diagnostic socket is used to connect diagnostic devices in authorized Porsche dealer workshops. External devices connected to the diagnostic socket can impair vehicle system functions and completely discharge and damage the battery when the ignition is switched off (deep discharge). Examples of such external devices are navigation devices and head-up displays. Examples of such external devices are navigation devices and head-up displays. External devices and cables can obstruct clearance around the pedals or become caught between the pedals when braking or changing direction.

- ▶ Do not connect any devices to the diagnostic socket.
- ▶ Do not place any devices or cables in the driver's footwell.

## Replacement parts for your Porsche



- ▶ Only use genuine Porsche replacement parts or replacement parts of a similar quality, which have been manufactured according to Porsche's specifications and production requirements. This ensures that your vehicle remains reliable and safe to drive, and that no consequential damage occurs to your vehicle. These parts are available from authorized Porsche dealers or qualified specialist repair shops. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.
- ▶ Only use accessories from the Porsche Tequipment range or which have been tested and approved by Porsche. For information on Porsche Tequipment: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

### Information

Porsche accepts no liability for damage caused by other replacement parts or accessories. Even if a supplier has obtained a General Operating License for replacement parts or accessories, the safety of the vehicle may still be affected.

The use of replacement parts or accessories not approved by Porsche may also void your vehicle warranty.

Unshielded devices and equipment can cause interference to reception as well as vehicle electronics.

## Load, safety systems, children in the vehicle: Know-how for Porsche drivers

With your Porsche, you can accelerate to above 60 mph (100 km/h) within a few seconds. With so much power, you should do everything necessary to ensure safety before driving.

Therefore, prepare for the journey with the same passion that you feel during driving.

### Your life-saver: Correct use of seat belts



The seat belts can only protect you from injuries if they are functional and are used correctly.

### Information

Without seat belts, severe injuries can occur at speeds as low as 20 mph (30 km/h). Safety systems only protect when used in combination. For example, the airbags can only protect you properly if the seat belts are worn correctly.

- ▶ Always fasten seat belts tightly, even on short journeys.
- ▶ Use one seat belt to secure one occupant only.
- ▶ Remove any bulky articles of clothing, e.g. winter coats.

- ▶ Do not lead seat belts over hard or fragile objects, e.g. glasses or ball-point pens.
- ▶ Do not twist seat belts.
- ▶ Always fully retract unused seat belts.
- ▶ Pregnant drivers or passengers: Position the lap belt well below the belly and lead the shoulder belt tautly over the chest.
- ▶ If worn or damaged, have the belt, belt buckle or attachment points replaced.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Seat Belts" on page 68.

### Airbag system



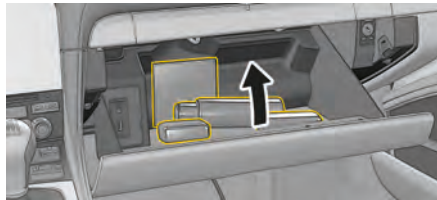
Airbag systems can only perform their protective function if all occupants have their seat belts fastened and maintain the correct seating position. Objects and luggage must be stowed safely.

- ▶ Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects between the occupants and the area into which the airbag deploys.
- ▶ Maintain a distance from the airbags, e.g., do not lean against the inside of the doors. Always keep your feet in the footwell while driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat cushion.

Airbag systems that have been tampered with offer no protection. They may either not trigger or be triggered unintentionally. Unintentional triggering can cause serious injuries.

- ▶ Do not use seat covers.
- ▶ Do not attach any additional trims or stickers to the steering wheel or in the vicinity of the airbags.
- ▶ Do not route any cables of additional electrical equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring.
- ▶ Do not remove airbag components, e.g. steering wheel, front seats, ceiling coverings.
- ▶ Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag system.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Airbag Systems" on page 53.

### Securing all objects in the passenger compartment



An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load in the passenger compartment can be thrown around as a result of braking or acceleration as well as during changes of direction or in an accident. Occupants may be endangered and injured.

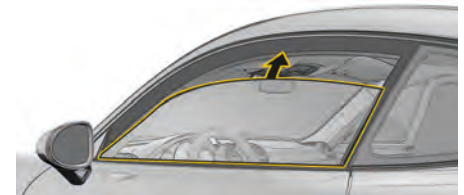
### Information

In a collision at 30 mph (50 km/h), for example, unsecured objects can be thrown forwards with a force up to 50 times their weight. For example, a 0.4 gallon (1.5 liter) bottle of water has a force of up to 165 lbs. (75 kg) when it flies through the interior.

- ▶ As a rule, transport only secured objects in the vehicle.
- ▶ Always stow loads securely, e.g. in the trunk.
- ▶ Stow small items in storage compartments and close all storage compartments. Objects must not protrude out of the storage compartments.
- ▶ Never place objects on top of the dashboard.
- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Also provide your passengers with all information regarding safety measures.

For correctly loading your Porsche and stowing items:  
 ▶ Refer to chapter "Stowing loads" on page 188.

### Preventing crushing hazards



If persons or animals are within the range of movement of certain vehicle components, there is a risk of body parts being trapped or crushed. These components include:

- Adjustable front seats
  - Doors
  - Windows
  - Flaps and lids
  - Storage compartment lids
- ▶ Make sure that no persons or animals are within the range of movement when moving these vehicle components.

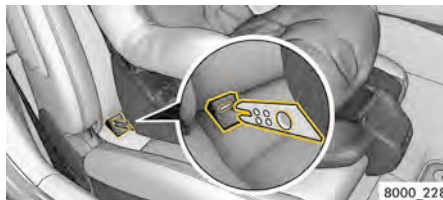
## Supervise children's behavior



Children often cannot judge dangers correctly and may behave inappropriately in dangerous situations. Children can accidentally trigger automatic settings (e.g. seat adjustment) and suffer injury. Children may not be able to exit the vehicle in emergency situations, e.g. overheated interior. This can be fatal, especially for young children.

- ▶ Keep children away from live or hot parts, e.g. the tailpipe.
- ▶ Keep toxic materials out of the reach of children, e.g. tire sealant, engine oil.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

## Safe use of child restraint systems (child seats)



Child restraint systems only function when installed correctly.

- ▶ **Only** use child restraint systems approved for your Porsche.
- ▶ Before using a child restraint system: Read and follow the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer as well as this Owner's Manual.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 58.

## Safe, competent driving: Making the right decisions

Your Porsche is an all-rounder. From Launch Control to emergency braking – when you release it everything is possible. However: You are ultimately responsible for keeping your powerful vehicle under control.

## Driving safety



- ▶ Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs.
- ▶ Always drive defensively.
- ▶ Expect the unexpected.
- ▶ Use the direction indicators when turning and changing lanes.
- ▶ Switch on the headlights at dusk or when the situation requires it.
- ▶ Always keep a safe distance from vehicles in front, taking into account the traffic situation, road conditions and weather conditions.
- ▶ Reduce your speed at night and in bad weather.
- ▶ Driving in the wet requires mindfulness and reduced speeds. This is especially true on roads with standing water, as the handling properties of the vehicle can be impaired by aquaplaning of the tires.
- ▶ Always adhere to speed limits and obey traffic signs and rules.
- ▶ When you get tired, stop and take a break at an appropriate place. Turn off the vehicle.
- ▶ Also turn the front wheels towards the curb on inclines/declines.

The safe driver:



- knows his vehicle and all controls,
- maintains the vehicle appropriately,
- uses his driving skills wisely and always drives within the limits of his abilities and familiarity with the vehicle.

In these instructions you will find useful information on how to carry out most of the tests and measures listed on the following pages.

### Avoiding distractions

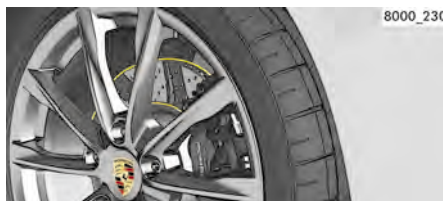


If you operate the Porsche Communication Management PCM or other components in the vehicle while driving, you will be distracted from the driving situation. You may not be able to respond to dangerous situations in time. For your safety, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ Never adjust the mirror, seat or steering wheel while driving. The seat or steering wheel may move further than desired. You may lose control of the vehicle. Adjust the mirror, seat and steering wheel position as required before your journey.
- ▶ Only use the multi-function steering wheel, information system, etc., while driving if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely. If in doubt, stop in a safe place.
- ▶ Do not use a telephone or other mobile device while driving.

- ▶ Only make or receive calls using hands-free equipment.
- ▶ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes while driving. Otherwise, you may not be able to react fast enough to dangerous situations.

### Awareness of braking behavior in rain and snow



In heavy rain, driving through water or after washing the vehicle, a film of water may form on the brakes. The water film delays the braking effect and requires more force when pressing the brake pedal.

After a long drive over wintry or salted streets, a coating may form on the brake disks and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore the braking action as well.

- ▶ Brake the brakes dry, especially before parking the vehicle. This prevents corrosion.
- ▶ Corroded brakes tend to "judder". If braking comfort is noticeably impaired, have the brake system checked.

### Suitable tires and appropriate driving style



▶ Refer to chapter "Tires and Wheels" on page 217.

#### Reacting correctly to uneven running and vibrations

Damage to tires or the vehicle can cause uneven running or vibration while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Reduce speed immediately, but without braking sharply.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and inspect the tires. If a cause cannot be established for the fault, drive on carefully and have the fault corrected. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

#### Keeping tires in a safe condition

Damaged tires can burst, especially at high speeds. Prevent damage to the tires by driving carefully.

- ▶ Cross curb edges slowly and at right angles if possible.
- ▶ Avoid driving over steep and sharp curbs.

#### Running in new tires

New tires have not yet achieved their maximum grip and tend to slip.

- ▶ Drive at moderate speed during the first 125 miles (200 km) with new tires.

## Driving with snow tires

Maximum speeds apply for snow tires. If you exceed the maximum permitted speed, the tires may burst.

- ▶ Always observe the maximum permitted speed for the respective tire.
- ▶ Affix the sticker with the maximum permitted speed in the driver's field of vision. Observe the applicable regulations in your country.
- ▶ Set the maximum permitted speed as the speed limit using the multifunction display:
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

## Driving with summer tires

Noises may occur during parking or maneuvering at outside temperatures below 60 °F (15 °C)

- ▶ Change to snow tires when outside temperatures are below 45 °F (7 °C).

✓ 718 GT4 RS

## Driving with sports tires

Your vehicle may be optionally equipped with special sports tires (performance tires) as summer tires. For information on availability: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer. This type of tire is approved for use on public highways and meets all statutory requirements and safety criteria. The design of the tire is also geared towards use on race circuits (driver safety training courses, sports driving schools, Club Sport events) and provides significant advantages in terms of dry grip and wear compared to standard

road tires. The sports tires on the vehicle harden at very low temperatures below approx. 19°F (-7 °C). This can lead to cracks and erosion of the tires.

- ▶ Do not drive the vehicle at temperatures below approx. 19 °F (-7 °C).

Important features are a smaller tread depth and special tread pattern and casing.

### The design features of these sports tires lead to the following effects compared to other summer tires when used in normal road conditions:

- Sport tires have a smaller tread depth and may therefore reach their wear limit sooner.
- As with all tires, the attainable mileage depends on the individual driving style and the conditions of use.
- On wet roads, especially in aquaplaning situations (e.g. standing water, puddles, lane grooves, etc.), exercise caution due to lesser tread depth and adapt speed accordingly.
- The higher performance requires that you adapt your attention appropriately in extreme driving situations, because potentially exceeding the upper performance limits also entails greater risks.
- ▶ Notify anyone using your vehicle of these characteristics and the possible effects.

The reduced tire tread depth means that there is an increased risk of aquaplaning on wet roads. Road surface contact, control over the vehicle and braking ability can be lost.

- ▶ Reduce vehicle speed significantly when driving on wet or mud-covered roads.

Sport tires have a smaller tread depth and may therefore reach their wear limit sooner.

- ▶ Check the tread depth regularly.

## Suitable tires and appropriate driving style

✓ 718 GT4 RS

### Road-legal race track tires

For particularly performance-oriented driving on the race track, there are special race track tires approved by Porsche.

For information about race track tires:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▶ Observe the tire manufacturer's customer information on the specific properties of the tires.

## Awareness of assistance systems and their limits



Your Porsche is equipped with driver assistance systems that increase safety and driving comfort.

None of these systems can overcome the limits dictated by the laws of driving physics.

- ▶ These systems should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. Assistance systems cannot reduce the risk of accidents due to an inappropriate driving style.
- ▶ Assistance systems cannot replace your attention. Drive with care so you can respond appropriately to the traffic situation.
- ▶ Familiarize yourself with assistance systems before using them.

## Emergency braking function



You can carry out emergency braking using the electric parking brake, for example if the conventional footbrake is defective.

This emergency braking function works with very high braking power. As a result, the traffic behind may be endangered.

- ▶ Only use the emergency brakes function in an emergency situation and not during normal driving.
- ▶ Pull and hold the (P) button for emergency braking. Release the button to stop braking.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 76.

## Driving with a loaded vehicle

The handling of your Porsche changes depending on the load condition.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the altered vehicle handling.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight and axle load.

## Driving off with Launch Control



When moving off with Launch Control activated, the vehicle accelerates very quickly. In some situations (poor road conditions, driver inattention, etc.) control over the vehicle may be lost or other road users may be endangered as a result.

- ▶ Only use Launch Control on public streets if the road and traffic conditions permit.
- ▶ Do not endanger others on the road when using Launch Control.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Transmission" on page 80.
- ▶ Switching the sports exhaust system to the acoustically optimized mode results in significantly increased noise emissions in conjunction with a very sporty driving style. You should therefore be aware of your social responsibility and respect the privacy of your environment, especially at nighttime.

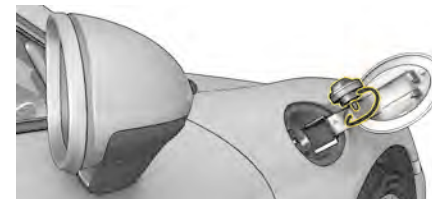
## Responding correctly to warning signals



If the systems recognize malfunctions or defective parts, the vehicle warns you with lights or messages. Disregarding vehicle warning signals may result in an increased risk of accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.

- ▶ Familiarize yourself with the meaning of warning and information messages and follow the instructions for the warning and information messages so that you can respond correctly to the warnings. Stop driving if necessary.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

## Dangers during refueling



Fuel is highly flammable, can combust or explode. Fuel and fuel vapors are harmful to health.

- ▶ Fire, open lights and smoking prohibited while refueling.
- ▶ Do not inhale fuel vapors.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin and clothing.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Refueling" on page 244.

If a spare canister carried in the vehicle is damaged in an accident, fuel can leak and ignite or explode.

- ▶ Do not carry a spare canister.

## Hazardous fluids



Not only fuel, but also engine oil, transmission oil, electrolyte, coolant and brake fluid are hazardous to health.

- ▶ Only work on the vehicle outdoors or in well-ventilated spaces.
- ▶ Fluid containers must be labeled appropriately and must be kept out of reach for children.
- ▶ Dispose of residues in an environmentally friendly manner and according to regulations.

Engine oil can ignite. Engine oil stored in non-ventilated areas or thrown-away pieces of cloth with engine oil residues can self-combust and result in a fire.

- ▶ Wipe up spilled engine oil with a piece of cloth.
- ▶ Cloths soaked with engine oil must be stored in a well-ventilated area until disposal.
- ▶ Protect your skin by washing it thoroughly with soap and water.

## Transportable liquid containers



**⚠ DANGER**

Leaking portable fuel containers

Portable fuel containers can leak, no matter whether the container is full or partially empty. Fuel leaking from a portable container stored in your vehicle could cause a fire or explosion in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Never store reserve fuel in a portable container in your vehicle.

## • Toxic gases



Exhaust gas contains the colorless and odorless carbon monoxide, which causes poisoning even in low concentrations.

- ▶ Switch off the engine when the vehicle is at a standstill. Never leave the engine running unnecessarily in closed spaces.
- ▶ Only carry out work with the engine running outdoors or use suitable extraction devices for vehicle exhaust gases.

### California Proposition 65

#### WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle.

For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth issues or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of

component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth issues or other reproductive harm.

#### Parking the vehicle safely



An improperly parked vehicle can roll away in an uncontrolled manner, endangering persons or causing material damage.

Before leaving the vehicle:

- ▶ Activate the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Move the gear lever to position **P**.

If gear lever position **P** is flashing in the instrument panel, the parking lock is not correctly engaged. In this case, move gear lever to position **R**, then move gear lever to position **P** once more.

The exhaust system is very hot when the engine is running and for a period after the engine is stopped. Risk of burns and danger of fire.

- ▶ Do not park the vehicle in places where flammable substances, e.g. dry grass or leaves, could come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▶ Stay a safe distance away from the tailpipes when standing or walking behind the vehicle.
- ▶ Make sure that children do not burn themselves on the tailpipes.

#### WARNING

Risk of fire due to hot exhaust system

- ▶ Do not park the vehicle in places where flammable substances, such as dry grass or leaves, could come into contact with the hot exhaust system. Otherwise, a vehicle fire can occur, which can cause serious injury.

#### CAUTION

Hot exhaust system burn risk

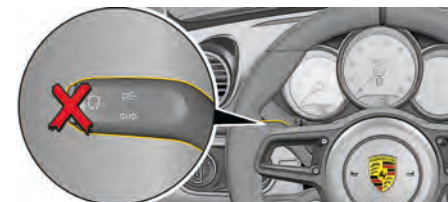
The exhaust system is very hot when the engine is running and for a period after the engine is stopped.

- ▶ To avoid injury, remember where your vehicle's exhaust system is located. Do not get too close to the hot exhaust system. A hot exhaust system can cause serious burns.
- ▶ Pay careful attention to children that are close to the vehicle and make sure that children do not burn themselves on the exhaust system.

### Just in case: Safety in the event of a breakdown and emergency

If you have break down, pay attention to this information for your own safety!

#### Do not use voice control in case of an emergency event





In an emergency event, your voice can change so much due to stress that voice control does not recognize your input.

- ▶ Do **not** use voice control in an emergency event.

## Removing the fire extinguisher

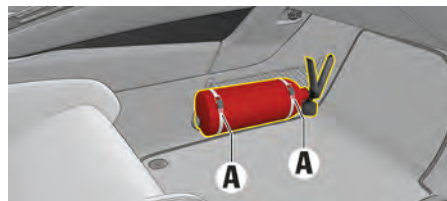
### Vehicles without Clubsport package



In vehicles with fire extinguisher, this will be located under the passenger seat.

- ▶ Hold the fire extinguisher with one hand and press the button **(PRESS)** on the fire extinguisher holder with the other hand.

### Vehicles with Clubsport package



On vehicles with Clubsport package, the fire extinguisher is installed in the passenger footwell.

- ▶ Hold the fire extinguisher with one hand and release the two latches **A** on the fire extinguisher holder with the other hand.

To ensure correct, safe operation of the fire extinguisher, observe the following points:

- ▶ Observe the inspection intervals for the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the inspection interval has expired, functionality is no longer guaranteed.
- ▶ Observe the operating instructions on the fire extinguisher.
- ▶ Observe the safety instructions on the leaflet supplied by the fire extinguisher manufacturer on the extinguisher handle.
- ▶ Have the fire extinguisher checked by an authorized Porsche dealer every 1–2 years.
- ▶ Have the fire extinguisher refilled after use.

## Caution when working on the vehicle



### ⚠ WARNING

Hot engine parts and hot coolant

The engine, adjacent components, exhaust system and coolant become very hot when the engine is running. The coolant reservoir is pressurized. Opening the coolant reservoir without due care may cause a sudden escape of hot coolant.

In addition, the fans may start automatically, even if the engine has been switched off and the ignition key removed.

- Stop the engine and allow it cool down, if possible.
- Keep body parts, articles of clothing, long hair and jewelry away from all moving parts (fans, drive belts, etc.).
- Exercise caution when working near hot vehicle components, especially the engine and the exhaust system.
- Wear protective gloves that protect against hot parts.
- Only top up coolant when the engine has stopped and the ignition is switched off.
- Do not open the cap of the coolant reservoir when the engine is hot. Wait until the coolant temperature gage indicates a temperature lower than 140 °F/60 °C.
- You should only attempt the work described in the instructions if you are completely familiar with repair and maintenance procedures. Visit an Authorized Porsche Dealer – they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools. Protective equipment (such as protective gloves that protect against cuts) are required to perform certain work on the vehicle.

▶ Refer to chapter “Coolant” on page 204.



Protective equipment must be worn when performing certain operations on the vehicle, e.g., gloves to prevent cuts.

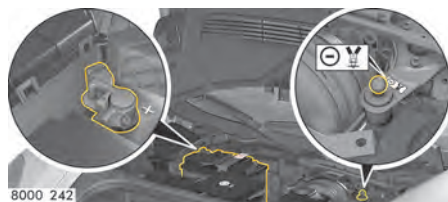
- ▶ Have all service work and modifications to the vehicle performed exclusively by an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

✓ 718 Cayman GT4 RS

For vehicles with the club sport package, the engine cover can be scratched due to careless removal.

- ▶ Use caution when removing the cover. When working on the engine, there is a risk of injury from pinching or crushing parts of the body..
- ▶ Only work on the fan when the ignition is switched off.

### Jump starting



Unsuitable jumper cables and an incorrectly performed jumper can cause a short circuit and cause a fire.

In the case of jump starting, the battery can generate highly explosive gas.

In addition, there are risks of injury in the engine compartment due to automatically starting parts, e.g., Radiator fan.

- ▶ Before you give or receive start emergency:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Jump starting" on page 196.

### Towing

Danger of significant damage to the vehicle through tow-starting and push-starting.

- ▶ **Never** tow-start or push-start the vehicle.
- ▶ Before towing your vehicle or having your vehicle towed:
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Towing and tow-starting" on page 198.

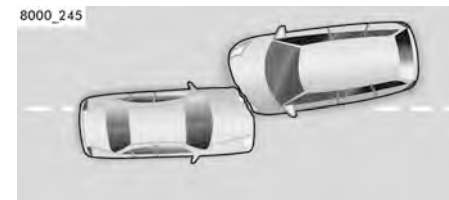
### Flat Tire



Depending on your speed, it may no longer be possible to steer the vehicle safely when tires are damaged.

- ▶ **Never** continue to drive with a flat tire.
- ▶ Parking vehicle safely and repair the damage.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Flat Tire" on page 237.

### After a collision



The safety systems (e.g. seat-belt pretensioners and airbags) may not be operational after a collision. The safety systems can then no longer protect you.

- ▶ Have safety systems checked even if they were not triggered.
- ▶ Have triggered safety systems replaced. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

### Carrying emergency equipment



It is always advisable to carry emergency equipment in the vehicle.

## Before driving: Important information regarding your Porsche

### Make yourself comfortable in the driver seat



- ▶ Check the function of the horn.
- ▶ Adjust the seat so that you can easily reach the foot pedals and controls. To reduce the probability of injury when deploying airbags, you should sit as far away from the steering wheel as possible without impairing vehicle control.
- ▶ Adjust the interior and exterior mirrors.
- ▶ Check the function of the footbrake and electric parking brake.
- ▶ Never leave a running vehicle unattended.
- ▶ Lock the doors from inside (especially if there are children in the vehicle) to prevent doors from being accidentally opened from inside or outside.
- ▶ Drive with doors locked.

### Running in the vehicle



The moving parts of a new vehicle must be run in. The parts require the first 930 miles (1,500 km) for this purpose. The oil and fuel consumption may be somewhat higher than normal during this period.

The multifunction display shows "Observe run-in program".

During the running-in period, drive as follows:

- ▶ Preferably take long trips. Avoid frequent cold starts with short distances as much as possible.
- ▶ Do not participate in motorsport events, sports driving training or similar events
- ▶ Avoid high engine speeds of 7,000 rpm or more. Drive at low engine speeds when the engine is cold.

### Running in new brake pads



New brake pads and brake disks have to be "bedded in" and therefore only attain optimal braking action after several hundred miles.

The somewhat reduced braking action requires more force when pressing the brake pedal. This is also the case after brake pad or brake disk replacement.

### Observing the ground clearance



The vehicle may touch the ground as a result of the low ground clearance.

- ▶ Avoid steep ramps.
- ▶ Drive carefully in the following situations:
  - Steep up and down slopes, e.g. in parking garages
  - Curbs
  - Uneven road surfaces
  - Lifting platforms
- ▶ When driving through water, the underside of the body must not be immersed.

### Driving on race tracks



Compared to normal road use, when driving on race tracks the vehicle is subjected to disproportionately higher stress loads. In pure racing vehicles these loads are factored into consideration by frequent regular maintenance and component reconditioning intervals. These cover checks and the replacement

of individual components where necessary after each use on the race track, as well as the reconditioning of entire assemblies after certain periods of use.

- ▶ Always make inquiries about the current stipulations before driving on race tracks: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

Following race track sessions, "cooling laps" must be performed to control the temperature reduction of chassis components which are subjected to particularly strong thermal load. Stopping the vehicle immediately would cause a further rise in component temperature due to stationary heat build-up. This can irreparably damage individual components.

### Brake system

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air over time. This absorption of water lowers the boiling point and can considerably impair braking efficiency at high temperatures. Brake pads and brake disks are subjected to very high stress when driving on a race track.

- ▶ If the brake fluid is more than 12 months old: Replace brake fluid before driving on a race track.
- ▶ Have the brake pads and brake disks checked for wear before and after driving on race tracks.

### Tires

The tires are also subjected to very high stresses when driving on a race track.

- ▶ Have the tires checked for wear before and after driving on race tracks.
- ▶ Do not fit racing tires. Racing tires are not approved by Porsche.

### Engine oil

- ▶ Check the engine oil level before and after driving on race tracks.

▶ Refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 206.

## Before driving abroad



The legal regulations in the United States and Canada state that automobiles must meet certain exhaust gas regulations and safety standards. For this reason, vehicles built for the USA and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you intend to take your Porsche across the borders of the United States or Canada, you should take into account the following:

- Unleaded fuel may not be available.
- The octane number of unleaded fuel can be considerably lower. This could result in excessive engine noise and serious damage to the engine and catalytic converter.
- Service may not be sufficient because there is a lack of suitable workshop equipment, tools or diagnostic equipment.
- Spare parts may not be available or may be very difficult to obtain.
- The Porsche dealer may not be able to carry out all repair work.
- Technical adjustments must be made to the vehicle.
- In some countries, it is mandatory to carry additional tools and special spare parts (find out before traveling abroad).

**Porsche assumes no responsibility for mechanical damage that may result from insufficient service or lack of spare parts availability.**

If you have taken your Porsche abroad and would like to transfer it to your home country, you should always find out about transport and transport regulations and the current import and customs regulations.

## Data processing in the vehicle



Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Some of these are required for the operational safety of your vehicle, while others provide assistance while driving (driver assistance systems). In addition, your vehicle has comfort or entertainment functions which are also controlled by electronic control units.

### Storing technical data in the vehicle

Electronic control units have data memories that can temporarily or permanently store technical information about vehicle status, component load, servicing requirements, events or faults. Generally, this technical information documents component, module, system or environment status, such as:

- The operating conditions of system components (e.g. fill levels)
- Status messages about the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. wheel rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)

- Malfunctions and faults in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- Information about events that can damage the vehicle
- The vehicle response in special driving situations (e.g. triggering an airbag, activation of the stability control system)
- Ambient conditions (e.g. temperature)

As well as providing the actual vehicle function, this data is used to detect and correct faults and enables the manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions. Most of this data is volatile and is only processed in the vehicle itself. Only a small amount of the data is stored in event or error memories. In addition, your vehicle has comfort or entertainment functions which are also controlled by electronic control units.

### Reading technical data

If you use services, the technical data from the vehicle can be read out from the vehicle by employees in the service network (e.g. repair shops, breakdown services, manufacturers). Services may include repair services, service processes, warranty claims and quality assurance measures. The data is read using a legally prescribed OBD (On-board diagnostics) connection in the vehicle. The data is collected, processed and used by the relevant service network personnel and may be sent to Porsche in order, for example, to comply with product monitoring obligations or to improve quality. The error and event memories in the vehicle can be reset by a repair workshop during other repair or service work.

### Using functions in the vehicle

Depending on the selected equipment, you can add information yourself, such as multimedia and address book data or navigation destinations, as well as other comfort and infotainment function settings in the vehicle. This data may be stored locally in the vehicle or on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. phone, USB stick or MP3 player). If this data is stored in the vehicle, you can delete it at any time. This data is only sent to third parties at your request and, in particular, based on your chosen settings when using online services.

If your vehicle is so equipped, you can operate your connected phone or other mobile device using the controls integrated in the vehicle. Pictures and sound from your phone can be output via the multimedia system. At the same time, certain information can also be transferred to your phone. This includes general vehicle information or position data, depending on the type of integration. This allows optimal use of selected cellphone apps, e.g. navigation or music playback. The phone cannot be used to actively access vehicle data. The provider of the app being used determines how the data is further processed. Whether and which settings you can configure depend on the app and your phone's operating system.

### Using online services

If your vehicle has a wireless network connection, this can be used to exchange data between your vehicle, its surroundings and other systems. The radio network is connected via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver or your own mobile devices (e.g. smartphones). Online functions can be used via this wireless network connection. These include online services and apps available to you through Porsche or other providers.

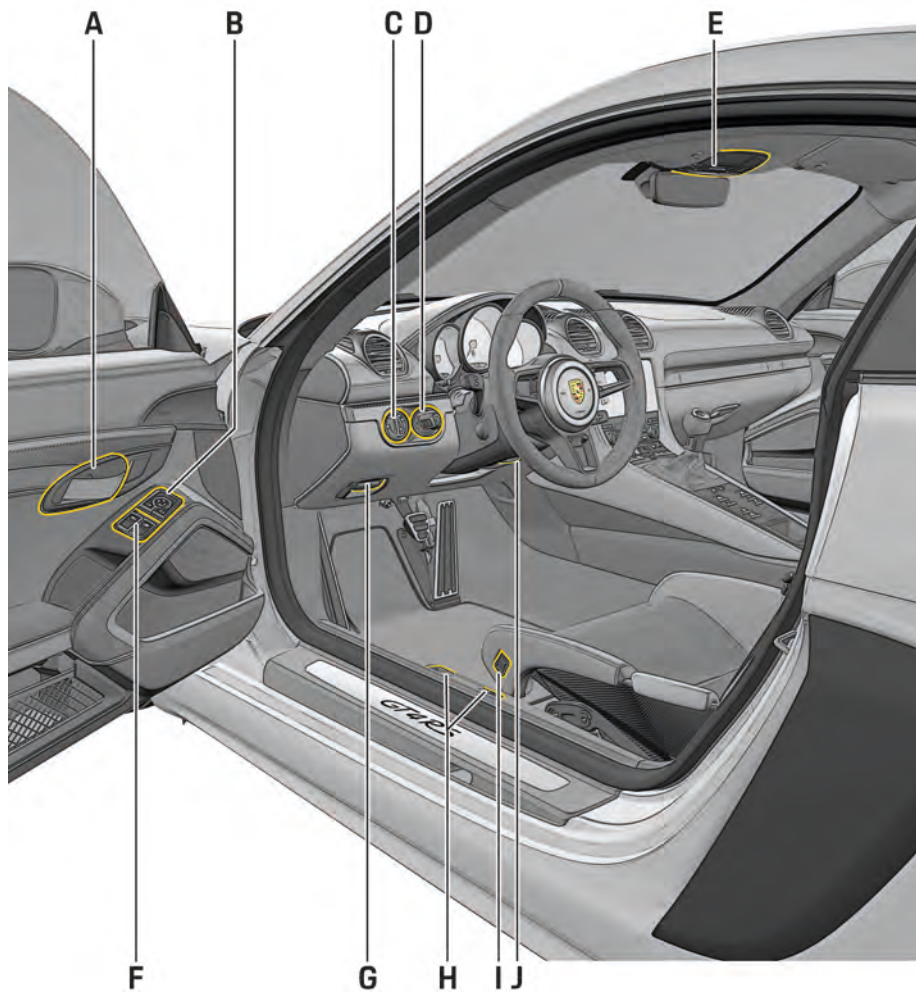
The features of Porsche online services and the associated data protection information can be found in a suitable location (e.g. the Porsche Connect website). Personal data may be used for the provision of online services. Data is exchanged via a secure connection, e.g. with the provided Porsche IT systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for purposes other than the provision of services take place only when permitted by law or with your consent.

Usually, the (often fee-based) services and functions and in some cases, even the entire data connection in the vehicle can be enabled or disabled. Legally required functions and services are specifically excluded.

If there is the option to use online services from other providers, these are the responsibility of the respective provider and are subject to the data protection requirements and terms of use of that provider. Porsche is not liable for data exchanged in these cases. For this reason, please contact the relevant service provider to find out about the type, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data for third-party services.

## Overview graphics

On the following pages, you will find overview illustrations of selected areas of the vehicle, with a brief explanation. Further information can be found on the specified pages.



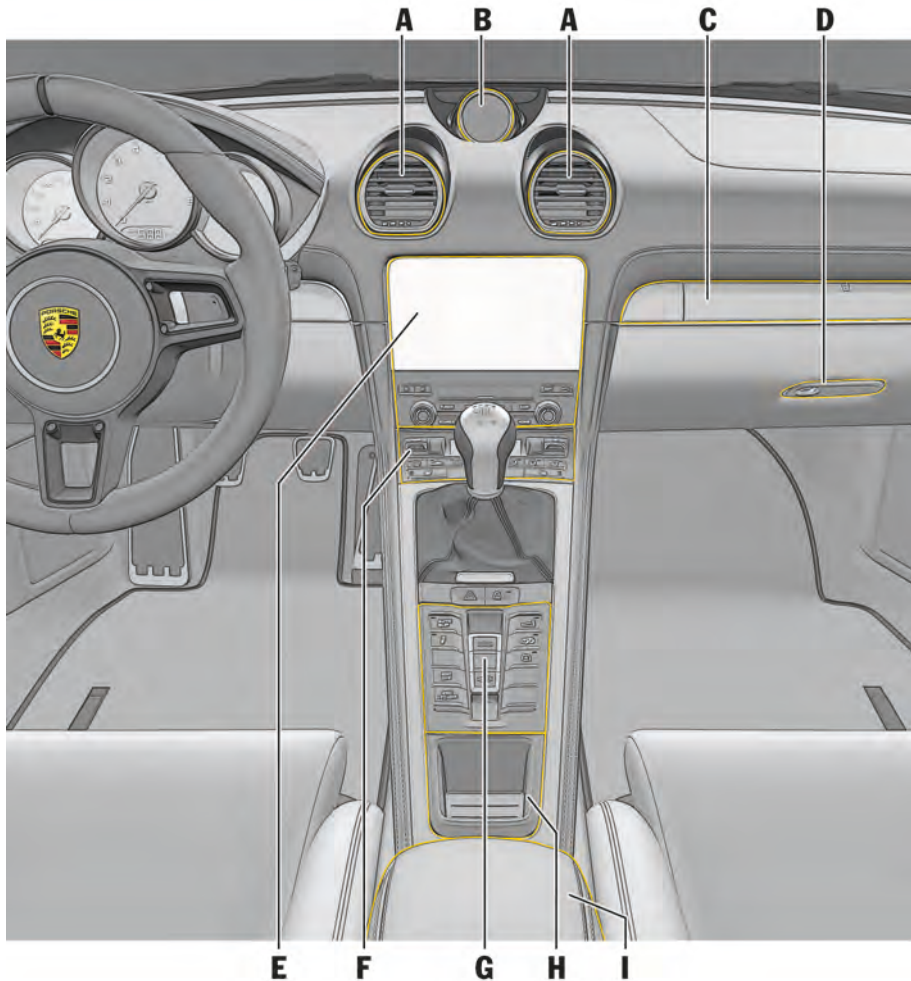
## Driver's Cockpit

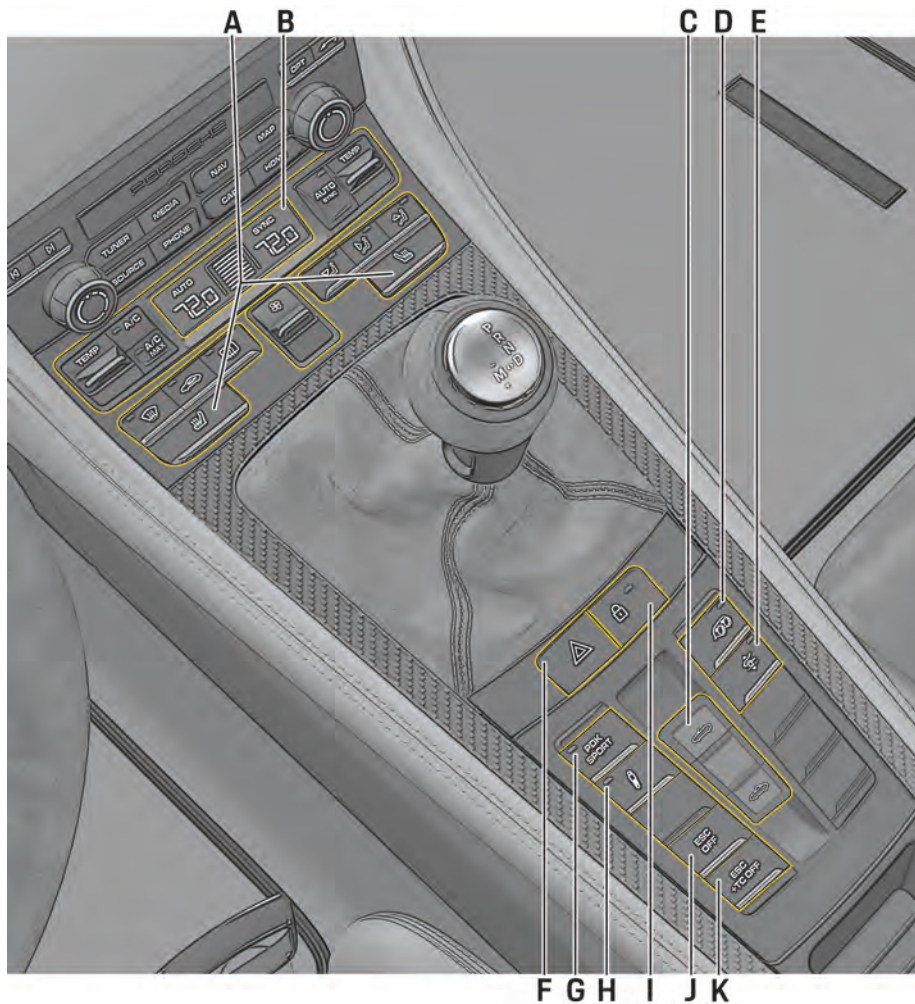
- A Door opener ▷ p. 49
- B Door mirror adjustment ▷ p. 73
- C Light switch ▷ p. 86
- D Ignition lock ▷ p. 78
- E Overhead console ▷ p. 28
- F Power windows ▷ p. 33
- G Electric parking brake ▷ p. 77
- H Trunk lid release ▷ p. 34
- I Seat adjustment ▷ p. 70
- J Steering wheel adjustment ▷ p. 68



## Center Console

- A** Air vents ▷ p. 64
- B** Chrono Stopwatch ▷ p. 161
- C** Drink/cup holder ▷ p. 187
- D** Glove compartment ▷ p. 186
- E** Porsche Communication Management (PCM) ▷ p. 110
- F** Air conditioning control panel ▷ p. 62
- G** Control panel ▷ p. 22
- H** Ashtray, cigarette lighter ▷ p. 191
- I** Storage compartment ▷ p. 186



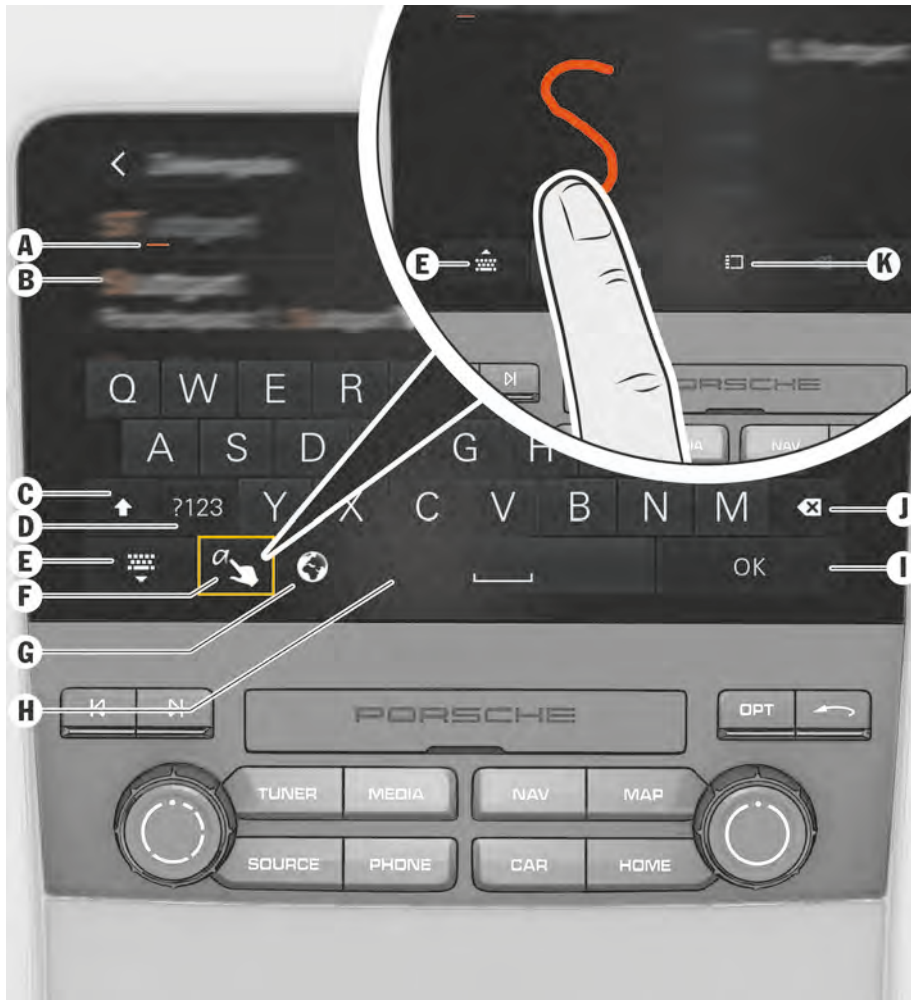


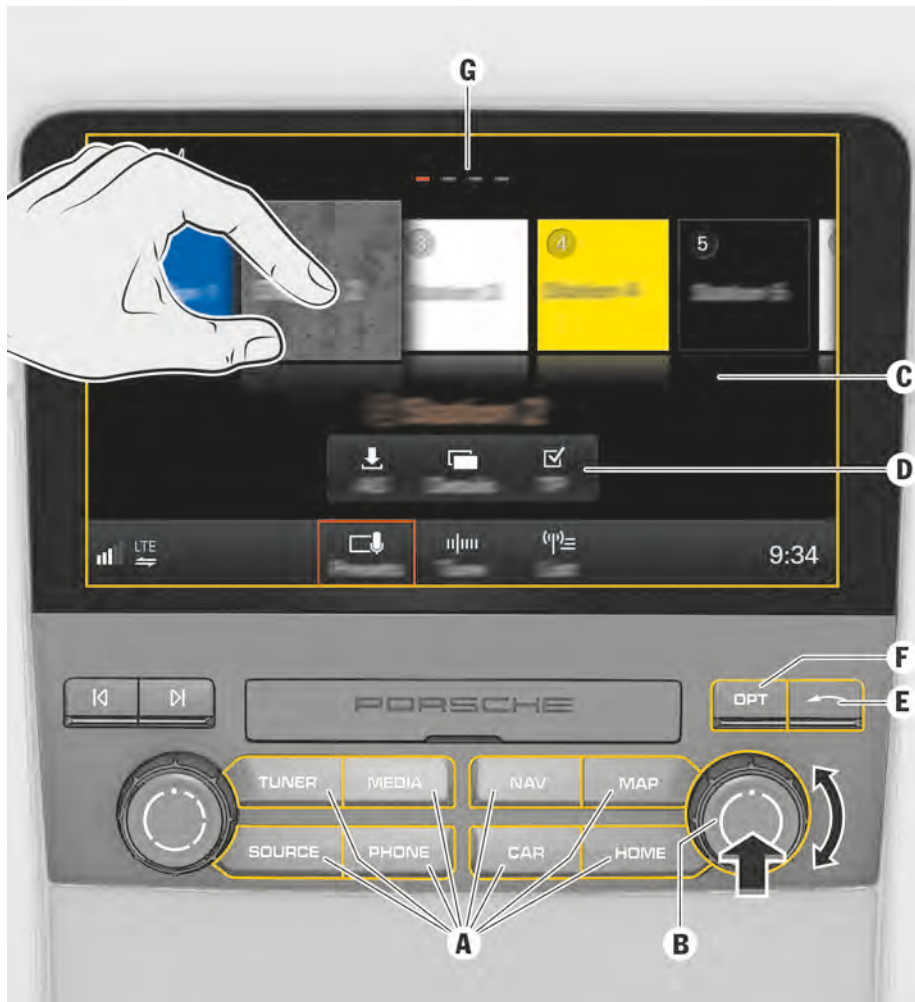
## Control panel

- A** Seat heating ▷ p. 72
- B** Air conditioning system control panel ▷ p. 62
- C** Convertible top control panel ▷ p. 39
- D** Sport exhaust system ▷ p. 80
- E** Front axle lift system ▷ p. 90
- F** Emergency flasher ▷ p. 88
- G** PDK SPORT mode ▷ p. 80
- H** Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) ▷ p. 92
- I** Central locking ▷ p. 48
- J** Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ▷ p. 93
- K** Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control (TC) ▷ p. 93

## PCM Text and character Input

- A** Current cursor position ▷ p. 112
- B** List of suggestions ▷ p. 112
- C** Switch between upper and lower case (availability dependent on country) ▷ p. 112
- D** Switch between letters, numbers and symbols ▷ p. 112
- E** Show or hide keyboard ▷ p. 112
- F** Freehand entry (enter letters or characters using the touchscreen) ▷ p. 112
- G** Adapt keyboard (country-dependent availability) ▷ p. 112
- H** Insert a space (handwriting recognition: move your finger across the touchscreen from left to right) ▷ p. 112
- I** Confirm entry ▷ p. 112
- J** Delete entry (handwriting recognition: move your finger across the touchscreen from right to left) ▷ p. 112
- K** Handwriting recognition: Show or hide alternative letters or characters ▷ p. 112





## PCM Operating Principle

- A** Open the main menu
- ▶ Press button (e.g. **TUNER**)  
– or –
  - Select the function you want in the main menu **HOME**
- B** Operating PCM with the rotary push button ▶ p. 112
- ▶ Turn the rotary push button **B** to select the function.
  - ▶ Press the rotary push button **B** to confirm the selection.
- C** Operating PCM using the touchscreen ▶ p. 112
- ▶ Tap (touch lightly with your finger)
  - ▶ Long press (press and hold with your finger)
  - ▶ Scroll (swipe vertically)
  - ▶ Swipe (swipe horizontally)
  - ▶ Drag & Drop (touch objects, drag them to where you want them and release)
  - ▶ Zoom (move two fingers further apart or closer together)
- D** Open the controller functions (by holding your hand close to PCM, if the proximity sensors are active) ▶ p. 112
- E** Back button: Undo an operation, cancel a selection or move up a level in the relevant menu
- F** Settings per main menu and sound settings

- G Show more pages: Display more pages through horizontal swiping





### PCM Drives

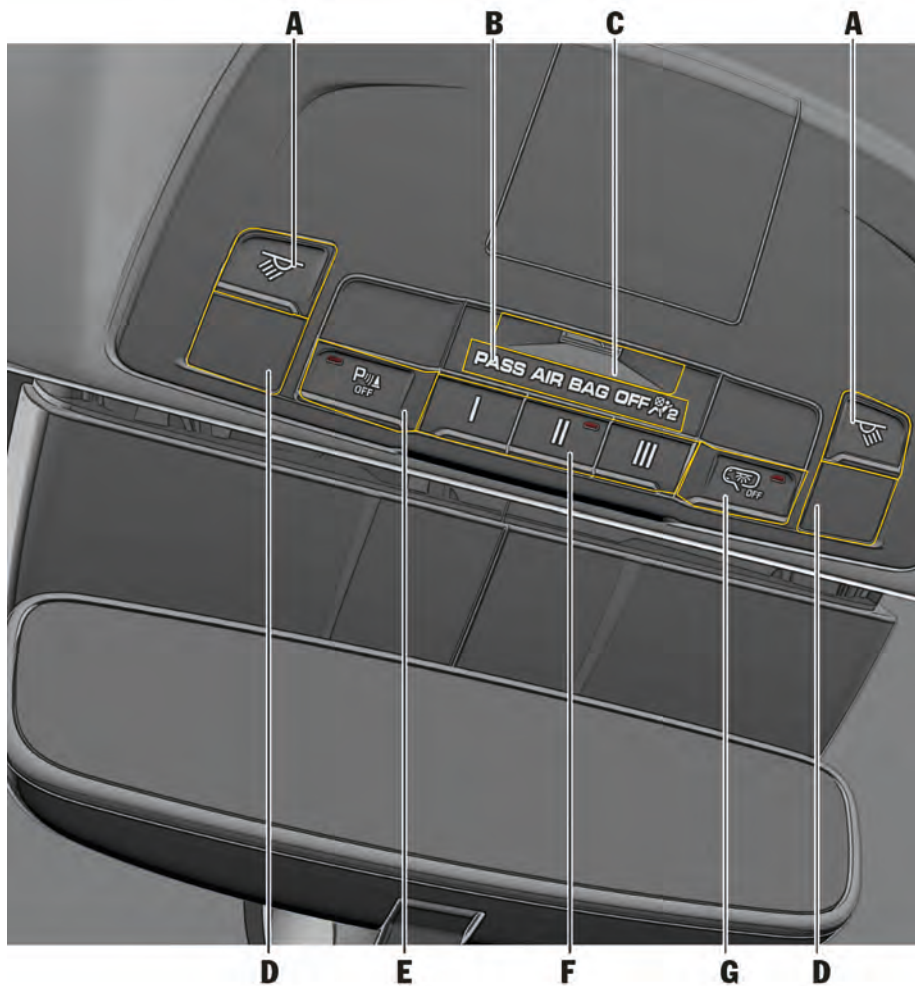
- A SD card reader 1 ▷ p. 147
- B SIM card reader ▷ p. 147
- C SD card reader 2 ▷ p. 147



## PCM control panel

- A** Set volume, switch PCM on and off ▷ p. 112
- B** Radio ▷ p. 149
- C** Media and radio sources ▷ p. 149
- D** Music ▷ p. 149
- E** Telephone, messages and e-mails ▷ p. 165
- F** Navigation ▷ p. 154
- G** Vehicle and system settings ▷ p. 141
- H** Map and traffic notices ▷ p. 155
- I** Main menus, sound settings ▷ p. 110  
Porsche Connect Services ▷ p. 175  
Apple CarPlay ▷ p. 179  
MyScreen ▷ p. 148
- J** Rotary push button (for operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)) ▷ p. 112
- K** Back button: Undo an operation, cancel a selection or move up a level in the relevant menu
- L** Settings dependent on main menu and sound settings
- M** Setting time ▷ p. 112
- N** Touchscreen (for operating PCM) ▷ p. 112
- O** Device manager (connect phone, set up wireless Internet access, connect Bluetooth® devices, view Apple CarPlay and app connection status (availability of certain functions dependent on country)) ▷ p. 145
- P** Skip buttons (set track/station)





## Overhead console

- A** Button for interior/reading light      ▷ p. 56
- B** PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF warning light      ▷ p. 53
- C** Interior light      ▷ p. 56
- D** Reading lights      ▷ p. 56
- E** ParkAssist      ▷ p. 91
- F** Garage door opener (HomeLink®)      ▷ p. 36
- G** Automatic interior lighting      ▷ p. 56

## Opening and Locking

### Alarm System

#### Functionality

The alarm system monitors the following alarm contacts:

- alarm contacts in doors, trunk lids, convertible top latch and headlights.
- Interior monitoring system: movement in the interior when the vehicle is locked, e.g. attempted theft by smashing a side window.
- inclination sensor (country-specific equipment: vehicle inclination (e.g. during towing attempt)).

If one of these alarm contacts is triggered, the horn sounds for approx. 30 seconds and the emergency flasher blinks.

After a 5 second interval, the acoustic alarm is triggered again. This cycle is repeated up to ten times (country-dependent).

#### Information

Depending on the country, the alarm system is automatically activated 30 seconds after the last door or the luggage compartment lid is closed, if the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition lock. Even if the vehicle has not been locked.

The interior monitoring system and the inclination sensor are switched off. If a door or the luggage compartment lid are opened, the alarm is triggered.

- ▶ Always lock the vehicle on exit.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.
- ▶ To deactivate the triggered alarm system:  
Unlock the vehicle **or** switch on the ignition.

### Alarm system function display

The locking status is indicated by the central locking button flashing at different frequencies.

#### Alarm system is activated

The warning lights flash rapidly then normally during locking.

#### The alarm system is activated and the interior monitoring system and inclination sensor are deactivated

The warning lights flash rapidly during locking, stop for 10 seconds and then flash as normal.

#### Faults in the central locking system and alarm system

The warning lights light up for 10 seconds, then flash 2 times in quick succession for 20 seconds, and then flash normally.

#### Turning the alarm system on/off

- ▶ The alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked.
- ▶ The alarm system is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

#### Information

If you unlock the vehicle with the emergency key in the door lock, you must switch the ignition on within 15 seconds of opening the door in order to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.

triggered. The time taken to trigger the alarm system differs dependent on the country.

### Switching off the alarm system when the alarm has been triggered

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle.  
- or -  
Switch on ignition.

### Turning off interior monitoring system and inclination sensor

If people or animals are remaining in the locked vehicle or the vehicle is being transported by train or ship, for example, the interior monitoring system and inclination sensor must be switched off temporarily.


▶ Refer to chapter "Central Locking" on page 48.

- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

#### Information

The interior monitoring system and inclination sensor remain off if the vehicle automatically locks 30 seconds after being unlocked, as none of the doors have been opened.

#### Using the vehicle key

- ▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key twice (within approx. 2 seconds).
  - ➔ The emergency flasher emits one long flash. The doors are locked but can be opened from the inside by pulling the door opener.

## Preventing theft

Before leaving the vehicle, always:

- ▶ Close the side windows
- ▶ Close the convertible top.
- ▶ Activate electric parking brake.
- ▶ Remove vehicle key.
- ▶ Close the glove compartment.
- ▶ Close all storage compartments.
- ▶ Remove valuables, vehicle papers, phone and house keys from the vehicle.
- ▶ Close the luggage compartment lids.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

## Immobilizer

Every vehicle key contains a transponder (electronic component) with a stored code.

The ignition lock queries the code before switching on the ignition.

The immobilizer can only be deactivated and the engine can only be started using an authorized vehicle key.

## Vehicle Key

### Using vehicle key

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the vehicle key

- ▶ Protect the vehicle key from moisture.
- ▶ Keep the vehicle key away from dirt, dust and sharp objects.

#### Information

- ▶ Only use the vehicle key when the vehicle is in sight.



Fig. 2: Vehicle key

- A** Unlock vehicle
- B** Lock vehicle
- C** Unlock front luggage compartment lid and doors
- D** Unlock rear luggage compartment lid and doors

**E** Emergency key

**F** Panic button

An emergency key is integrated in every vehicle key. The vehicle keys can be used to operate all of the vehicle locks.

- ▶ Take care of your vehicle keys: do not part with them except under exceptional circumstances.
- ▶ Even when leaving the vehicle for only a short time, always remove the vehicle key and take it with you.
- ▶ Never leave the vehicle key in the vehicle.

## Using panic button

In dangerous situations or when your own safety is threatened, you can draw attention to the situation by triggering an alarm.

### Triggering the alarm

- ▶ Press the red **F** button once.
- ➡ The horn sounds and the emergency flasher blinks.

### Switching off the alarm

- ▶ Press the red **F** button again.
- ➡ The horn stops and the emergency flasher goes out.

## Replacing vehicle key battery

### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of internal burns or death from swallowing the lithium coin cell (button battery)

The vehicle key contains a lithium coin cell (battery). Swallowing the battery can cause internal burns within two hours and this can result in death.

- ▶ Keep removed or new batteries out of children's reach.
- ▶ Keep vehicle keys out of children's reach. Children could open the vehicle key and remove the battery.
- ▶ If the battery is swallowed or inserted into a body orifice, seek medical attention from a doctor immediately.

If the vehicle key battery is too weak and needs to be replaced, a message appears on the multifunction display.

### **i** Information

- ▶ Follow battery disposal instructions.



Fig. 3: Replace battery

### Replace battery (CR 2032, 3 V)

1. Remove emergency key.
2. Pry cover off back of vehicle key housing using a suitable tool (e.g. emergency key).
3. Replace battery (observe polarity).
4. Replace cover and press together firmly.
5. Insert emergency key.

### Perform emergency unlocking of vehicle key

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle key can only be removed using the emergency release.

9000\_232



Fig. 4: Removing the metal hook

1. Grasp the fuse box cover on the driver's side by the handle and detach.
2. Unclip the metal hook **A** on the inside of the fuse box cover.

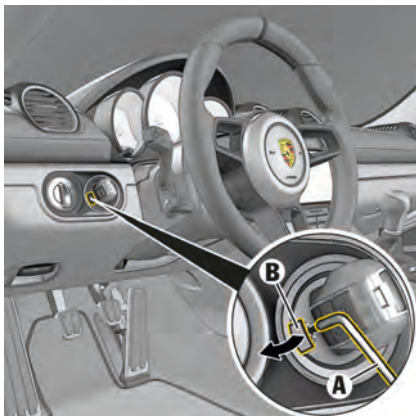


Fig. 5: Removing the plastic cover of the ignition lock

3. Use metal hook **A** to remove the plastic cover **B** from the ignition lock.
4. Take care not to lose plastic cover **B**.

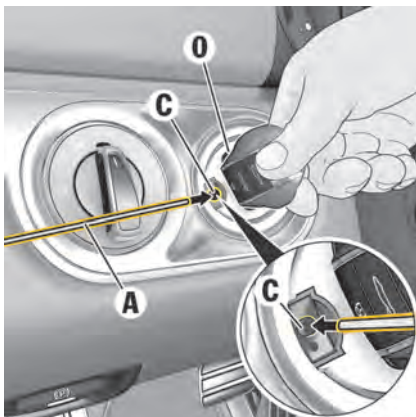


Fig. 6: Performing emergency unlocking of doors

5. Turn vehicle key to ignition lock position **O** (initial position).
6. Press metal hook **A** into opening **C**.
  - ➔ Audible unlocking of vehicle key.
7. Remove vehicle key from initial position **O**.
8. Re-fit the plastic cover **B**.

## Using emergency key

### Remove emergency key

8000\_199



Fig. 7: Remove emergency key

1. Push release button to the side.
2. Pull out emergency key toward the rear.

### Insert emergency key

- ▶ Push emergency key into vehicle key until release button engages audibly.

## Ordering a replacement key and keeping it in a safe place

Vehicle keys can only be ordered from an authorized Porsche dealer. Procurement may take a long time.

- ▶ Always have a replacement key available.
- ▶ Keep the replacement key in a safe place, but under no circumstances in or on the vehicle.

To teach new vehicle keys on the vehicle:

- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Teach all vehicle keys belonging to the vehicle again.

### **i** Information

A total of eight vehicle keys can be taught.

### **i** Information

- ▶ If a vehicle key is lost or stolen, have an authorized Porsche dealer disable this vehicle key in the vehicle and change the mechanical locks if necessary.
- ▶ You should notify your insurance company of the loss or theft of vehicle keys or of the production of additional or replacement keys.



## Windows

### Opening and closing the windows

#### ⚠ WARNING

Opening and closing windows

When opening or closing the side windows, particularly in automatic mode, body parts can become trapped between the moving side window and stationary vehicle parts.

- ▶ When opening and closing the side windows, make sure that no parts of the body can become trapped between the moving side windows and stationary vehicle parts.
- ▶ Always switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle. People who are unfamiliar with the vehicle could injure themselves with the power windows.
- ▶ In the event of danger: Release the power window button immediately.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Closing side window manually

If one-touch mode was deactivated after a side window was obstructed, the side window will close with its full force when closed manually.

- ▶ Make sure that no one is pinched or crushed when closing the side windows.

#### ⓘ Information

If a side window is obstructed by an object during closing, it will stop and open again by several centimeters. If the side window is blocked a second time within approx. 10 seconds, the automatic mechanism for this side window is locked. The side window can be closed manually. One-touch operation is enabled again once the side window has been closed completely using the manual closing function.

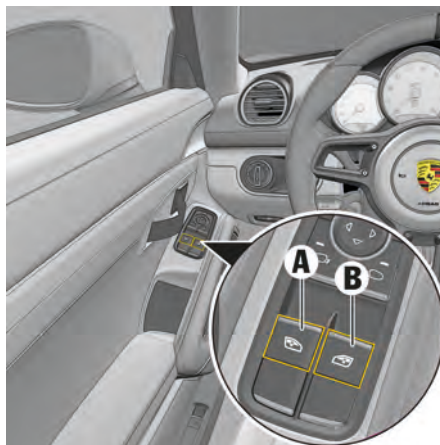


Fig. 8: Buttons for driver's door power window

- A Button for left power window
- B Button for right power window

✓ Ignition on.

– or –

Ignition not switched off for more than 10 minutes and driver or passenger door not yet open.

#### Opening the side window

- Press the switch for the relevant window until the side window has reached the required position.

#### Closing the side window

- Pull the rocker switch for the respective side window until it has reached the required position.

The switches feature a **two-stage** function. When the switch is actuated, both stages can be clearly felt due to resistance when pushed or pulled.

#### Stage one – Manual operation

- ▶ Push or pull the relevant button to the first stage.
  - ➔ The window is opened or closed manually. The process stops when the button is released.

#### Stage two – One-touch mode

- ✓ Ignition on.
- ▶ Push or pull the respective switch fully to the second position.
  - ➔ The side window is completely opened or closed.
- ▶ Actuating the button again stops the side window in the desired position.

#### Storing final position of side windows

The windows' final position settings are lost if the battery is disconnected and reconnected. One-touch operation of the side windows is disabled.

## Perform the following steps for all side windows:

1. Close the side window completely at once by pulling the switch to the second setting.
2. When the window is completely closed, briefly pull the rocker button again 3 times to the second stage.
3. Completely open the side window once by pressing the switch.

## Trunk lid

### Opening and closing the trunk lid

#### Opening front luggage compartment lid using button in vehicle interior

##### NOTE

Risk of damage to the trunk lid and windshield wipers.

- ▶ Make sure that the windshield wipers are not folded forward when opening the trunk lid.
- ▶ Always switch off windshield wipers before opening the trunk lid (wiper lever in position **0**). Risk of collision! If the wiper arms are not in their end position, turn the wiper system on and off briefly so that the wipers move to their end position.

▶ Refer to chapter "Windshield wipers" on page 96.

#### Information

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the front luggage compartment lid can be opened only by connecting an external electrical power source.

▶ Refer to chapter "Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid" on page 35.

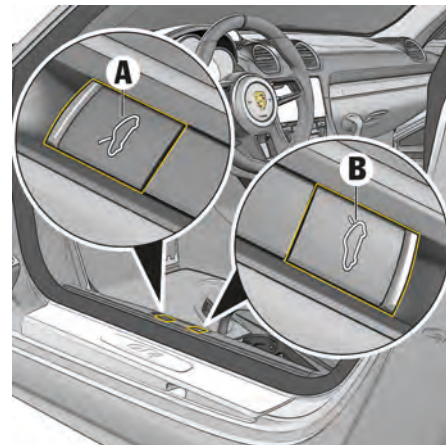


Fig. 9: Unlocking trunk lid

- A** Front luggage compartment lid button
- B** Rear luggage compartment lid button

## Opening the trunk lid at the front

1. Pull button A▶ (Fig. 9).  
➔ The lid is unlocked.




Fig. 10: Unlocking the front luggage compartment lid

2. Lift the lid slightly and open the lid safety catch (arrow).
3. Open the lid completely.

## Opening rear luggage compartment lid using button in vehicle interior


### **i** Information


**718 Spyder RS:** When the convertible top is closed, button B in the passenger compartment and the button  on the vehicle key are blocked.

- ▶ Unhook fins from the fin tensioners.

▶ Refer to chapter "Removing and installing convertible top" on page 40.

### **i** Information

**718 Spyder RS:** If the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened using button B in the interior or the button  on the vehicle key:

- ▶ Open the vehicle door or unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key.
- ▶ Press button B in the interior or button  on the vehicle key.

1. Pull button B.  
➔ The lid is unlocked.
2. Lift the lid up slightly and open fully.

## Closing the trunk lid

1. Lower the relevant lid and let it fall into the lock. Press the lid closed with the flat of your hand over the lock area.
2. Check that the lid has correctly engaged in the lock.
3. If a lid is not closed properly, a message appears on the multifunction display when driving.

## Trunk lock

**DANGER**

Unsecured luggage

The luggage compartment could be opened by unsecured luggage.

- ▶ When loading the luggage compartment, make sure that objects cannot come into contact with the release button.

### **i** Information

The trunk lid can only be opened from the inside when the vehicle battery is full.

The hood can be opened from inside.

1. Press the release button.
2. Open the lid safety catch.

The light indicator on the release button lights up for approx. 60 minutes after the hood lid is closed.

## Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid

If the battery is discharged, the front trunk lid can only be unlocked with the aid of a third-party battery.

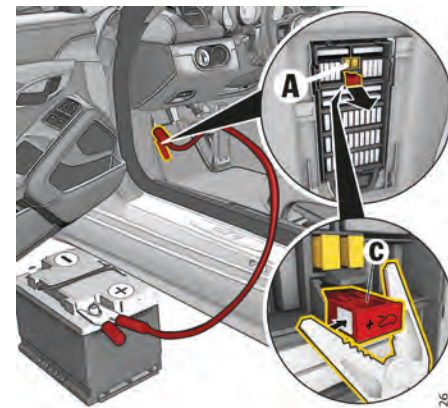


Fig. 11: Emergency release of the trunk lid – connect positive terminal

- A Plastic gripper
- C Positive terminal (red)

8000\_26

1. Unlock the vehicle at the door lock using the emergency key.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Using emergency key" on page 32.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Emergency operation of doors" on page 50.
2. Remove the plastic cover of the left-hand fuse box.
3. Remove the positive terminal **C** (red) from the fuse box using the plastic gripper **A**.
4. Use the red jumper cable to connect the positive terminal of the external battery to the positive terminal **C** in the fuse box.

### Information

If the vehicle was locked, the alarm system signal will sound when the negative terminal is connected.

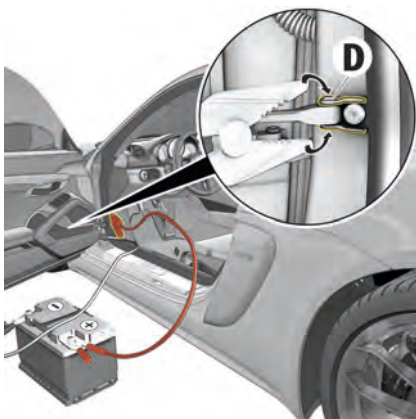



Fig. 12: Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid – connecting the negative terminal

5. Use the black jumper cable to connect the negative terminal of the external battery to the joint of door arrester **D**.
6. Press and hold the button  of the vehicle key for 2 seconds.
  - The front luggage compartment lid is unlocked and the alarm system is deactivated.
7. First disconnect the negative cable, then the positive cable.
8. Insert positive terminal **C** (Fig. 11) in the fuse box and attach the plastic cover of the fuse box.

## Garage door opener / (HomeLink®)

### General safety instructions



#### WARNING

Pinching, crushing or impact through operated equipment

If persons or animals are in the range of movement of operated equipment, there is a risk of injury while the Garage Door Opener is being operated or programmed.

- ▶ Make sure there are no persons, animals or objects in the range of movement of operated equipment while the HomeLink® system is being operated or programmed.
- ▶ Observe the safety instructions for the original remote control.

### Functionality

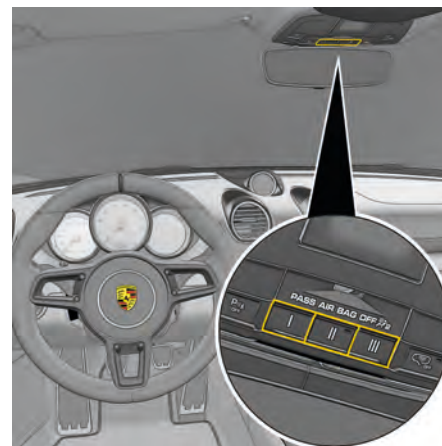


Fig. 13: HomeLink® system buttons

The HomeLink® system can be used to activate radio-controlled equipment (e.g. garage doors/property gates, security systems, house lighting) from inside the vehicle.

The HomeLink® system can replace up to three different original remote controls. A remote control signal can be assigned to one of the three memory buttons on the overhead console.

The respective equipment can then be operated using the programmed button.

- ▶ Observe the instructions for the original remote control.

### **i** Information

Check whether the vehicle's HomeLink®™ system is compatible with the original remote control:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▶ Visit [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or call the toll-free HomeLink® hotline on 1-800-355-3515.

### **i** Information

- ▶ Before selling your vehicle, remember to delete the stored Garage door opener signals.

## Programming garage door opener

The HomeLink® system is programmed on the overhead console and in the direct vicinity of the front of the vehicle.

- ✓ Ignition on.
- ✓ Turn signals switched off.
- ✓ Engine is not running.
- ✓ The vehicle faces the receiver and is within the receiver range (signal is transmitted in the direction of travel).



Fig. 14: Programming garage door opener

## Deleting saved signals from the buttons

This procedure deletes the entire HomeLink® programming. It is not possible to delete all the programmed buttons simultaneously.

- ▶ Do not repeat this procedure if additional signals are to be stored on the buttons.
1. Press and hold the two outer buttons I and III on the overhead console for around 20 seconds until light indicator A flashes rapidly.
  2. Release the buttons.
    - ➔ The assignment of the HomeLink® buttons is deleted.

The HomeLink® buttons can be reprogrammed.

## Store garage door opener signal on the button – fixed code system

### 1. On the roof control unit

▶ Refer to chapter "Deleting saved signals from the buttons" on page 37.

### 2. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead console until light indicator A flashes slowly.

➔ The button is now ready to learn for 5 minutes.



Fig. 15: Position the original remote control in front of the vehicle

### 3. Stand in front of the vehicle with the original remote control for the system you wish to program.

## 4. In front of the vehicle

- ➔ The fact that the vehicle turn signals light up three times and that light indicator **A** flashes rapidly confirms that the new signal has been successfully assigned.

You may need several attempts at different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control.

On some systems you will need to press the transmit button of the original remote control again if the light indicator on the original remote control goes out.

5. The vehicle turn signals flash once to indicate that the 5-minute learning readiness period is over: repeat steps 2 to 4.
6. To assign other signals on the remaining buttons:  
repeat steps 2 to 4.

## Storing the garage door opener signal on the button – rolling code system

Some systems also require a rolling code to be programmed for the HomeLink® system. Help from a second person makes programming easier.

### Identifying a rolling code

- ▶ Press the already programmed HomeLink® button again and hold it down. If light indicator **A** first flashes rapidly and then lights up continuously after approx. 2 seconds, the equipment operates using a rolling code system.
- ▶ Information on synchronization is also contained in the manual for the device you wish to program.

## Saving a garage door opener signal on a button

### 1. On the overhead console

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Deleting saved signals from the buttons” on page 37.

2. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead console until light indicator **A** flashes slowly.

- ➔ The button is now ready to learn for 5 minutes.

3. Stand in front of the vehicle with the original remote control for the system you wish to program.

### 4. In front of the vehicle

- ➔ The fact that the vehicle turn signals light up three times and that light indicator **A** flashes rapidly confirms that the new signal has been successfully assigned.

You may need several attempts at different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control.

On some systems you will need to press the transmit button of the original remote control again if the light indicator on the original remote control goes out.

5. The vehicle turn signals flash once to indicate that the 5-minute learning readiness period is over:  
repeat steps 2 to 4.
6. To assign other signals on the remaining buttons:  
repeat steps 2 to 4.
7. Locate the programming button on the receiver of the system to be programmed, e. g., on the motor unit of the garage door opener.

## 8. Synchronizing the system

After this you should normally perform the next step within approx. 30 seconds (depending on the system) (a setting light indicator is usually activated on the motor unit).

9. Press the button on the overhead console selected in step 2 three times (on some systems the button needs to be pressed several times to end the setting).
  - ▶ To assign more signals to the buttons, repeat steps 2 to 9.

After programming, the system should detect the HomeLink® signal and start as soon as the memory button is pressed.

## Reprogramming a single button on the control panel

A HomeLink® button can be reprogrammed individually without deleting the remaining button assignments.

### 1. On the overhead console

- ➔ The button is now ready to learn for 5 minutes.

2. Stand in front of the vehicle with the original remote control for the system you wish to program.



### 3. In front of the vehicle

- ➔ The fact that the vehicle turn signals light up three times and that light indicator **A** flashes rapidly confirms that the new signal has been successfully assigned.

You may need several attempts at different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control.

On some systems you will need to press the transmit button of the original remote control again if the light indicator on the original remote control goes out.

4. The vehicle turn signals flash once to indicate that the 5-minute learning readiness period is over:

repeat steps 2 to 3.

5. To assign other signals on the remaining buttons:

repeat steps 2 to 3.

#### Information

If the signals cannot be saved on the buttons despite having carefully read this chapter and the operating instructions for the original remote control:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▶ Make sure that there is a new battery in the remote control of the Garage Door Opener. Insufficient battery power can cause malfunctions in signal transmission. The system in the vehicle then learns an incorrect code, which cannot be reliably recognized.

## Using Garage Door Opener

- ✓ Ignition on.
- ✓ Vehicle facing receiver and within receiver range (signal is transmitted in the direction of travel).
- ▶ Press and hold the relevant HomeLink® button on the overhead console.
  - ➔ While the signal is being transmitted, the indicator lamp **A** on key **II**(Fig. 14) lights up green.

## Convertible top

### General safety instructions



**CAUTION**

Risk of injury from hot surfaces

The surfaces of the convertible top's components may become hot in strong sunlight.

- ▶ Handle components carefully and wear suitable gloves if necessary.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the convertible top.

- ▶ Do not remove and install convertible top:
  - At temperatures below 32°F (0 °C)
  - When one side of the vehicle is on a curb, a lifting platform or a jack.
- ▶ Do not stow objects in the convertible top storage box.
- ▶ Make sure that there are no objects behind or on the roll-over bars.
- ▶ Only drive with the convertible top fully installed or fully removed.
- ▶ To prevent mildew stains and abrasion damage, remove the convertible top only when it is dry and clean.
- ▶ Park the vehicle in the shade if possible, since continuous exposure to the sun attacks textiles, rubber and paint.

#### NOTE

From a speed of approx. 124 mph (200 km/h), the convertible top may inflate.

- ▶ Do not drive faster than 124 mph (200 km/h) if the convertible top is installed.

## NOTE

If the convertible top latch is released, the convertible top can fall.

- ▶ Only unlock the convertible top latch when the convertible top is supported.

## Information

Pulling the release tabs triggers the alarm system when the vehicle is locked.

- ▶ Before removing or installing the convertible top, unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key.

## Information

The convertible top can be installed without the weather barrier to drive the vehicle only with the sunsail.

## Information

The QR code on the sticker next to the convertible top release tab leads to a video showing the removal and installation of the convertible top.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Car Care" on page 209.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

## Removing and installing convertible top

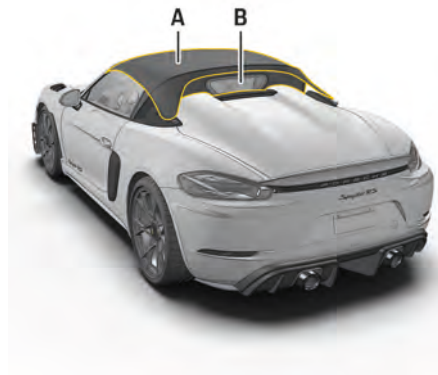


Fig. 16: Overview of convertible top components

- A Sunsail
- B Weather barrier

### Slackening convertible top fins

- ✓ Tailgate closed
- ✓ Vehicle unlocked



Fig. 17: Pull release tabs

1. Pull release tabs **A** on the driver and passenger sides.

➔ Fin tensioners extend independently.

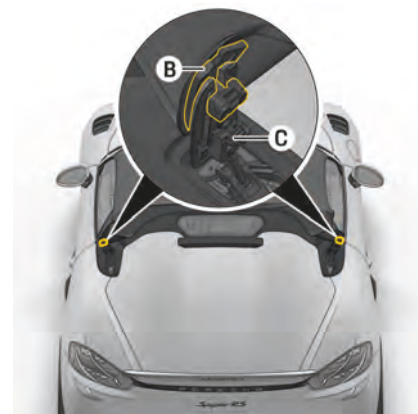


Fig. 18: Removing convertible top fins

2. Pull convertible top fins **B** on the driver and passenger sides out of fin tensioners **C**.
3. Fold fin tensioners **C** down on the driver and passenger sides until they engage perceptibly.

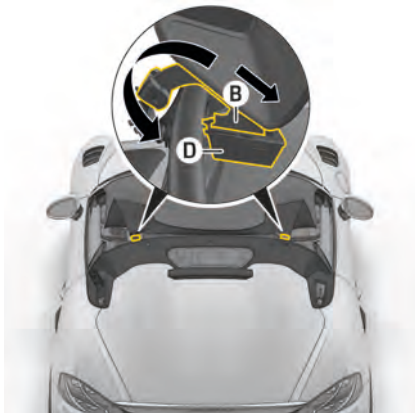


Fig. 19: Insert convertible top fins in brackets

4. Lightly press convertible top fins **B** on the driver and passenger sides into the brackets **D** and fold down until they engage.

### Removing weather barrier

- ✓ Convertible top fins slackened

1. Open tailgate and doors.

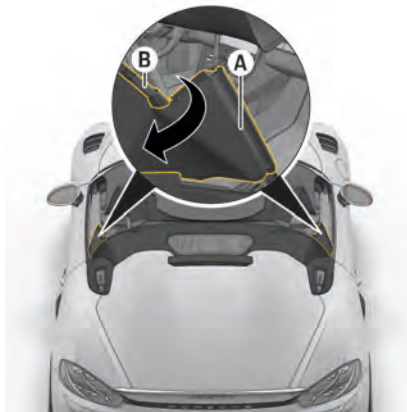


Fig. 20: Remove side parts

2. Pull the driver and passenger side parts **A** out of the upper retaining clip on the convertible top rod **B**, remove upwards and place on the rear shelf.

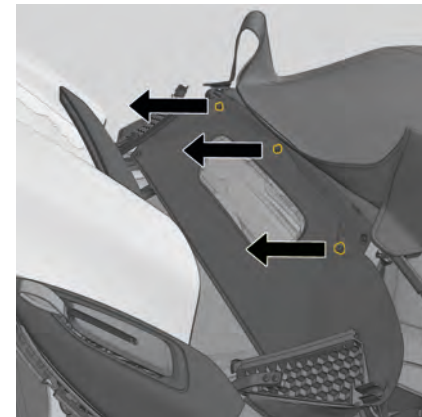


Fig. 21: Detach fastening buttons

3. Detach fastening buttons.
4. Spread the weather barrier straight on the rear shelf.
5. Fold the left side of the weather barrier over to the right until the crease rests on the left side of the window glass.
6. Fold the weather barrier in half again to the left so the left side part is at the left edge of the window glass, but does not protrude beyond it.
7. Repeat steps **5** and **6** on the right side.

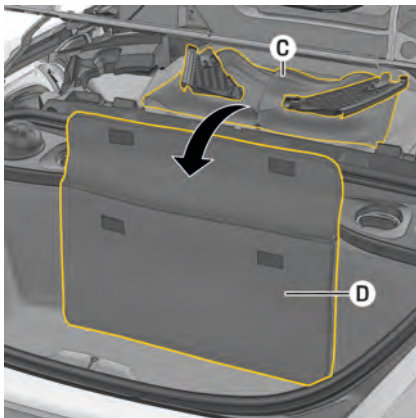


Fig. 22: Stowing weather barrier in bag

8. Stow weather barrier **C** in bag **D**.
9. Close tailgate and doors and tension convertible top fins.

▷ Refer to chapter "Tension convertible top fins" on page 46.

– or –

Continue with removing the sunsail.

## Removing sunsail

- ✓ Convertible top fins slackened
- ✓ Tailgate and doors open
- ✓ Weather barrier removed

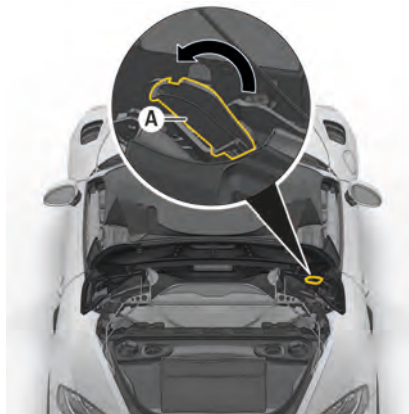


Fig. 23: Slacken tensioning cable

1. Squeeze tensioner **A** on the passenger side and move to the center of the vehicle.
  - ➔ The tensioning cable is slackened.

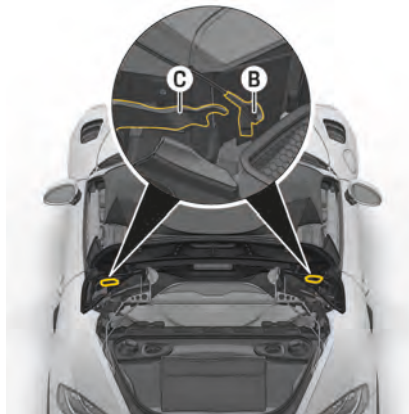


Fig. 24: Unhooking tensioning cable

2. Guide tensioning cable **B** out of the hooks **C** on the driver and passenger sides.

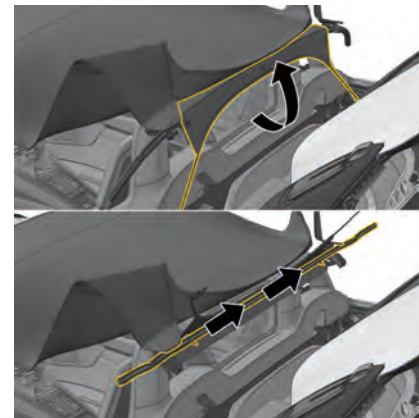


Fig. 25: Removing convertible top rod

3. Fold tensioning cable guide up and pull convertible top rod out of the roll-over brackets.



Fig. 26: Rolling up convertible top

4. Keep the convertible top slightly tensioned and roll it up in the direction of travel.

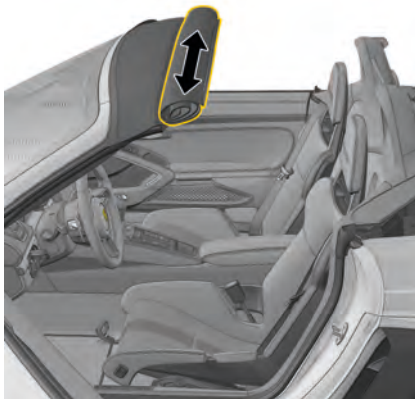


Fig. 27: Removing creases

5. Place convertible top in the recess and remove creases by pushing the convertible top rod slightly.

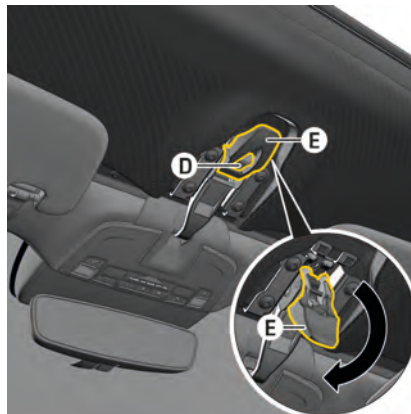


Fig. 28: Folding convertible top latch in direction of travel

6. Support convertible top, press lock **D** and fold convertible latch **E** in direction of travel.

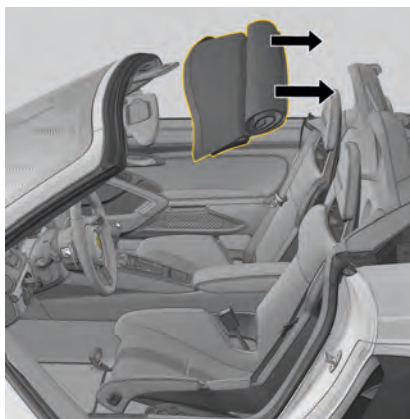


Fig. 29: Removing convertible top

7. Removing convertible top

8. Close convertible top latch.

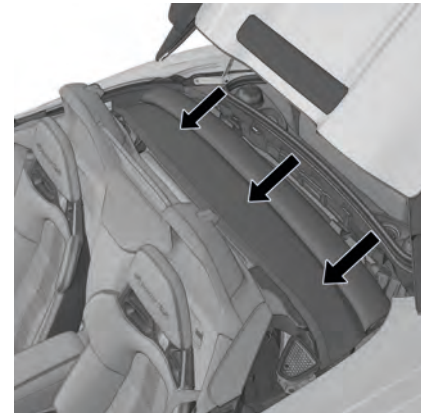


Fig. 30: Placing convertible top on shelf

9. Stow the convertible top on the rear shelf, making sure it is positioned correctly.
10. Close tailgate and doors.



## Installing sunsail

1. Open tailgate and doors.

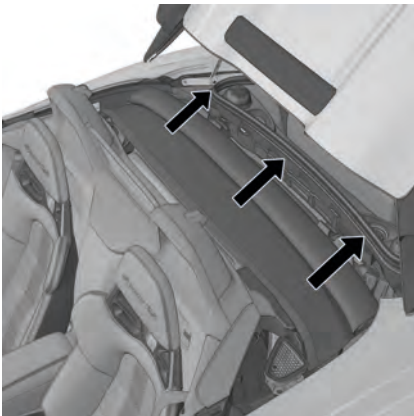


Fig. 31: Removing convertible top

2. Remove convertible top from shelf.
3. Unlock and open convertible top latch.

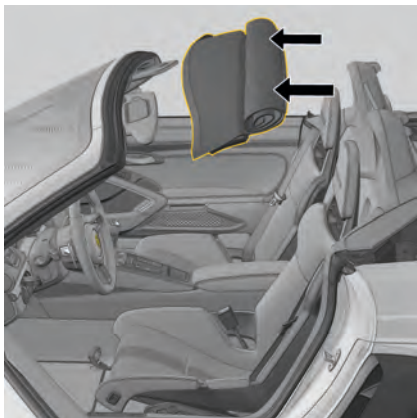


Fig. 32: Attaching convertible top to roof frame

4. Attaching convertible top to roof frame



Fig. 33: Locking convertible top latch

5. Turn the convertible top latch up until it engages perceptibly.

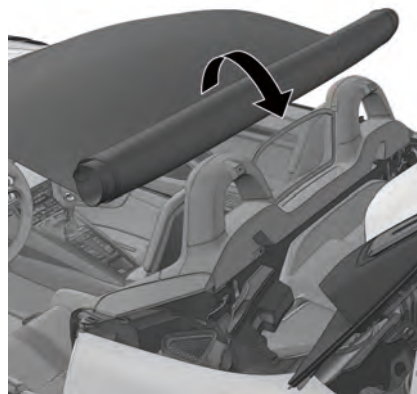


Fig. 34: Unrolling convertible top

6. Unroll convertible top.

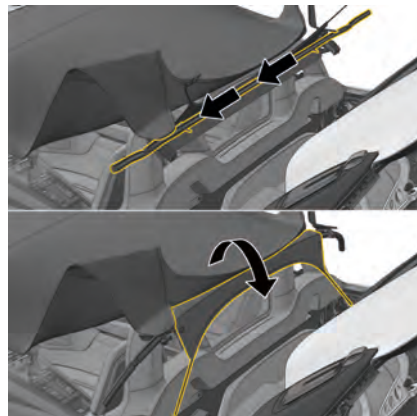


Fig. 35: Installing convertible top rod

7. Insert the convertible top rod into the roll-over brackets and fold down the tensioning cable guide.



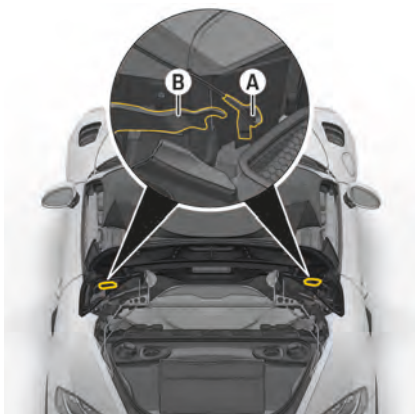


Fig. 36: Engaging tensioning cable

8. Engage tensioning cable **A** on the driver and passenger sides in hooks **B**.

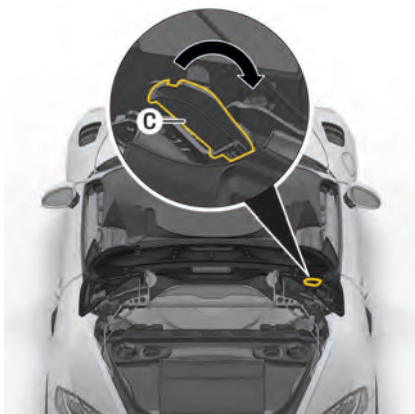


Fig. 37: Tensioning the cable

9. Pull tensioner **C** towards the passenger side.

10. Close tailgate and doors and tension convertible top fins.

► Refer to chapter "Tension convertible top fins" on page 46.

– or –

Continue with installation of the weather barrier.

### Installing the weather barrier

- ✓ Convertible top fins slackened
- ✓ Tailgate and doors open

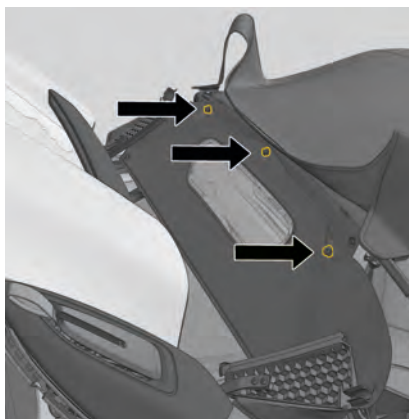


Fig. 38: Attaching the weather barrier centrally

1. Remove the weather barrier from bag and fasten convertible top snap buttons.

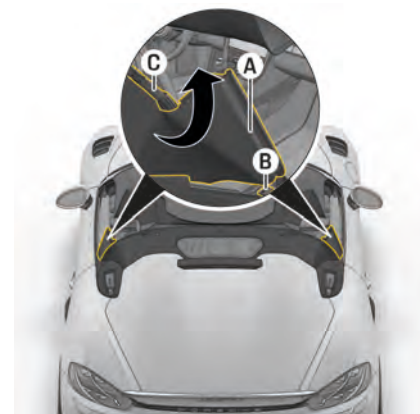


Fig. 39: Attaching the weather barrier on the side

2. Insert side part **A** on the driver and passenger sides at the bottom of guide **B** and clip above into the convertible top rod **C**.
3. Close tailgate.



Fig. 40: Checking rubber seal for correct seating

4. Check that the rubber seals on the driver and passenger sides are seated correctly.
5. Close doors and tailgate.
6. Tension convertible top fins.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Tension convertible top fins" on page 46.

## Tension convertible top fins

- ✓ Tailgate closed



Fig. 41: Removing convertible top fins from bracket

1. Lightly press convertible top fins **A** on the driver and passenger sides with your thumb in direction of travel, fold up and remove from the brackets **B**.

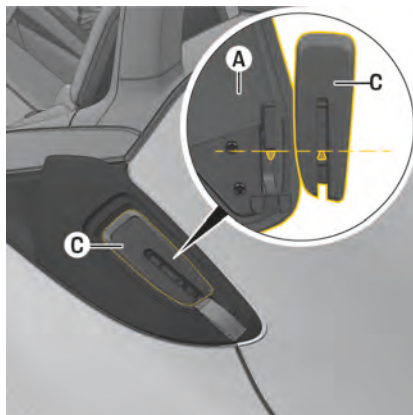


Fig. 42: Positioning convertible top fins in fin tensioner

2. Place convertible top fins **A** on the driver and passenger sides in the fin tensioner groove **C** in line with the triangle symbol.



Fig. 43: Inserting and tensioning convertible top fins

3. Push convertible top fins **A** on the driver and passenger sides into the fin tensioner **C** as far as they go.
4. Press the fin tensioner **C** down on the driver and passenger sides until it engages perceptibly.

## Removing and installing wind deflector

### NOTE

- ▶ Make sure that the wind deflector is properly and securely fastened, particularly when driving with the convertible top open.

### Installing wind deflector

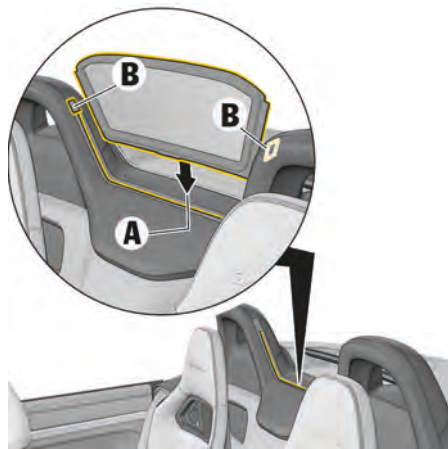


Fig. 44: Installing wind deflector

- ▶ Insert wind deflector from above into the mounting **A** (Fig. 44) and then push successively downward until the wind deflector engages audibly into place at the locking points **B** (Fig. 44).

### Removing wind deflector

- ▶ Press one of the locking points **B** (Fig. 44) and pull the wind deflector upward out of the mounting **A** (Fig. 44).

#### **i** Information

It is advantageous to remove the wind deflector to ensure good ventilation in the vehicle interior or for the rear window when the convertible top is closed. This applies in particular when the weather is wet and cold.




## Central Locking


### Brief overview – Opening and closing doors from outside

This brief overview is not a substitute for the detailed descriptions in the "Central Locking" chapter. In particular, the brief overview is no substitute for safety messages and warnings.



Fig. 45: Vehicle key

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	What happens?	Where?
<b>Unlocking</b>	▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key.	The emergency flasher emits one flash. The driver's door can be opened. –or– The doors and tailgate can be opened.	▶ p. 49
<b>Locking</b>	▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key.	The emergency flasher emits two flashes. The doors are locked.	▶ p. 49
<b>Lock when persons/animals are remaining in the vehicle:</b>	▶ Press  button on the vehicle key twice (within approx. 2 seconds).	The emergency flasher emits one long flash. The doors are locked but can be opened from the inside by pulling the door opener.	▶ p. 49
▶ Turn off interior monitoring of the alarm system			

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	What happens?	Where?
<b>Switch off the alarm system's alarm sound</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key.</li> <li style="text-align: center;">– or –</li> <li>▶ Switch on ignition.</li> </ul>	The alarm sound is switched off.	▶ p. 29

## Using the central lock

### Information

- ▶ Only use the vehicle key when the vehicle is in sight.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the vehicle key.

- ▶ Use the buttons on the vehicle key.

Unlocking or locking affects:

- Doors
- Filler flap

### Information

This chapter describes the vehicle's factory settings.

For information on adjusting the release and locking settings:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.

## Unlocking and locking doors


### Information

The doors of the 718 Spyder RS cannot be locked while the engine is running.

## Unlocking doors with the vehicle key



Fig. 46: Unlocking doors with the vehicle key

1. Press the  button.
  - ➔ The emergency flasher emits one flash.

The doors are unlocked.
2. Pull the door handle.

### Information

The vehicle is locked automatically after 30 seconds if a door or the luggage compartment lid is not opened. The alarm system is activated. Interior monitoring is not activated (limited theft protection).

This means that the doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door opener.

- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.


If the vehicle is locked again, the passenger compartment monitoring system is switched on again.

### Information

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the doors are unlocked automatically to facilitate fast access for helpers. The emergency flasher is also activated automatically.


## Locking doors

### Locking the doors with the vehicle key

1. Close the door.
2. Press button  once.
  - ➔ The emergency flasher emits two flashes. The doors are locked.

– or –

### If persons or animals remain in the vehicle

- Press the  button twice within 2 seconds. The emergency flasher emits 2 short flashes and then 1 long flash. The doors are locked but can be opened from the inside by pulling the door opener.
- Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

### Information

The vehicle cannot be completely locked if the doors or trunk lid are not fully closed. A warning signal sounds, a warning message appears on the multifunction display and the emergency flasher does not flash.

When locking the vehicle with only the driver's door closed, the vehicle will be pre-locked.


- ▶ Make sure that the vehicle key is outside the vehicle when closing remaining open doors or the trunk lid. If the vehicle key is still in the vehicle, the vehicle can only be unlocked with a second key.

## Setting door unlock

Depending on the settings, only the driver's door or also the passenger's door is unlocked.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display" on page 141.

Both doors can be unlocked irrespective of the selected setting:

- ▶ Press  button on the vehicle key twice within 5 seconds.

## Emergency operation of doors

If the vehicle key remote control does not work, the doors can also be opened and locked without remote control.


The remote control may not work for the following reasons:

- The transmission is disrupted by radio waves. Ensure that the vehicle key is not stored together with activated electronic devices (e.g. phone, notebook, charging cable). Change the storage location for the vehicle key if necessary.
- The remote control may fail due to a fault.
- The battery in the vehicle key may be empty.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Replacing vehicle key battery" on page 31.

## Performing emergency unlocking of doors



Fig. 47: Emergency unlocking with faulty remote control

- ▶ Place the vehicle key on the outer edge of the windshield on the **passenger side** and press the key  at the same time (Fig. 47).



If the vehicle still cannot be unlocked:

1. Remove the emergency key from the vehicle key.
  - Refer to chapter "Using emergency key" on page 32.



Fig. 48: Door lock cylinder

2. Unlock the driver's door with the emergency key and open: lift the door handle and hold it. Insert the emergency key in the door lock, turn 90° in the direction of travel and remove the emergency key again (Fig. 48).
3. Release the door handle and open the door by pulling the door handle again.
4. Activate the ignition within 10 seconds to prevent the alarm system from triggering.

## Performing emergency locking of the doors

### **i** Information

Only emergency lock the doors when the vehicle is parked.

- Unlock doors before starting to drive.

1. Remove the emergency key from the vehicle key.
  - Refer to chapter "Using emergency key" on page 32.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Lift the door handle on the driver's door (Fig. 48).
  - Insert the emergency key in the door lock, turn 90° against the direction of travel and remove the emergency key again.

Successful locking is indicated by two flashes of the emergency flasher.

4. Release the door handle and close the door.
  - ➔ The doors are locked.

### **i** Information

In the event of a central lock fault, all functional locks in the central lock system can be locked via the driver's door lock.

- Have faults in the central lock system repaired.
- Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Emergency locking of the passenger door if the central locking system has failed

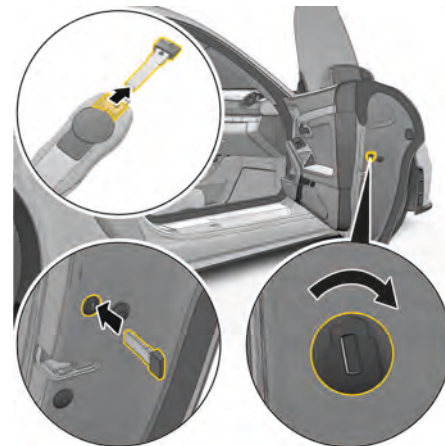


Fig. 49: Emergency locking of the passenger's door

1. Open door.
2. Remove the emergency key from the vehicle key.
3. Turn the safety catch outward as far as it goes with the emergency key.
4. Close the door.
5. Check that all doors are locked.
  - ➔ The doors can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

## Installation position of the radio antennas



### WARNING

Radio waves can adversely affect medical devices

The vehicle's antennas emit radio waves and can adversely affect the functioning of medical devices such as pacemakers or defibrillators.

- ▶ Ensure a distance from the antennas of approx. 22 cm.
- ▶ Notify a doctor or the manufacturer of any adverse effects.



Fig. 50: Installation position of the radio antennas

Depending on equipment, the number of radio antennas **A** (Fig. 50) can vary.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 248.

# Air Conditioning and Ergonomics

## Airbag Systems

### General safety instructions

Both front seats of the vehicle are equipped with airbags and lap/shoulder belts. At these seat positions, the airbags function as an additional restraint system.

The combination of airbags and seat belts results in a safety system that provides the driver and passenger with the greatest possible protection in the event of accidents.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the **seat belts must always be fastened** because the triggering of the front and side airbags depends on the force and angle of the impact.

Below the triggering threshold of the airbag system and for types of impact that do not trigger the airbags, the seat belts provide the occupants with the primary protection if they are fitted correctly. **For this reason, all persons in the vehicle must be fastened with a seat belt** at all times so that the risk of serious or even fatal injuries during an accident is as low as possible. In many countries, the use of seat belts is required by law.

▷ Refer to chapter "Seat Belts" on page 68.

The **front airbags** are located under the center trim of the steering wheel on the driver's side or in the dashboard on the passenger's side

The **side airbags** of the front seats are installed in the side of the seat backrests.

The **side head airbags** are located in the side roof railing (Cayman models only). If the vehicle rolls over, they help prevent occupants from being ejected from the vehicle.

The **head airbags** are installed in the door trim panels (Boxster models only).

The **knee airbags** for the front seats are located in the knee area of the driver and front passenger side.

### DANGER

Seat belts and seating position

Airbags are most effective when the occupants fasten their seat belts and adopt the correct seating position. For optimal protection of the occupants, the airbags must deploy at very high speed. If you do not wear your seat belt or if you are too close to the airbag when it is deployed, this can lead to serious or even fatal injuries.

- ▶ **Always wear the seat belts.**
- ▶ Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects between the driver/passenger and the area into which the airbag deploys.
- ▶ Sit as far from the dashboard or steering wheel as you can without impairing control of the vehicle.
- ▶ Always grip the steering wheel by the outer edge. Never rest your hands on the center of the steering wheel where the airbag module is located.
- ▶ Always keep your feet in the footwell when driving. Do not place your feet on the dashboard or on the seat.
- ▶ Do not lean against the inside of the door or lean out the window while the vehicle is in motion.

### DANGER

Safe storage of objects

Objects and items of luggage must be stowed safely so that they do not cause injuries.

- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects on or in front of the passenger seat. They could impair the function of the airbags, seat belts and occupant sensing.
- ▶ Do not hang any objects (jackets, coats, hangers, etc.) over the seat backrest.
- ▶ Objects must not protrude out of the door storage compartment.
- ▶ Do not attach any additional trims or stickers to the steering wheel or in the area of the passenger airbag, side airbag, knee airbag or head airbag. Otherwise, the function of the airbag system may be significantly impaired or occupants may be injured if the airbag system is triggered.
- ▶ Objects should not be placed above or next to the dashboard airbag as such objects could cause damage if the vehicle is involved in an accident severe enough to cause the airbag to deploy.
- ▶ Share all of the information in this chapter with your passenger.

**⚠ DANGER**

Modification of the airbag system

A modified airbag system cannot provide protection. Triggering may not take place at all or only in an uncontrolled manner. The uncontrolled triggering of the airbag system can result in serious injuries or death.

- ▶ Do not make any modifications to the seat covers, as such changes could block the side airbag installed in the seat. Do not attach any additional bolsters, covers or cushions to the seat. Do not attach any objects to the seat or cover it with other materials. Do not cover the back of the seat backrest. Do not make any modifications to the seat, seat cushion, foam or seat frame.
- ▶ Do not make any modifications to the wiring or components of the airbag system.
- ▶ Do not install cables for additional electrical equipment near the airbag wiring harnesses. Otherwise, the airbag system may be deactivated or unintentional deployment may occur.
- ▶ If the airbag warning light on the instrument cluster lights up, the airbag system must be repaired by your authorized Porsche dealer immediately.
- ▶ The use of accessories that have not been approved by Porsche can impair occupant sensing.
- ▶ Do not squeeze any objects (fire extinguisher, first aid kit, etc.) under the seat.
- ▶ Have seats removed and installed only by an authorized Porsche dealer so that the components of the occupant sensing are not damaged.

**i Information**

Airbag components (steering wheel, seats, etc.) may only be disassembled by a Porsche dealer. Our safety instructions must be observed when disposing of used airbag units. These instructions are available from every Porsche dealer.

**Function of the airbag systems**

Airbags are a supplementary safety system. The primary protection is provided by the seat belts. The front airbags and head airbags are deployed with sufficient force and direction in the event of a frontal impact.

In the event of a side impact with adequate force, the side airbags on the side of impact are deployed. During deployment, as much gas is generated in fractions of a second as is required to fill the airbags with the correct pressure. Airbags help protect the head and body and, in the event of a frontal or side impact, slow down the movement of the driver and passenger in the direction of the impact.

In order to provide protection for airbags in serious accidents, which can lead to death and serious injuries, deployment must take place extremely quickly. The development at such a high speed has the negative but unavoidable side effect that it can cause injuries and does so. These include abrasions on the face and arms as well as bruising and broken bones. You can help to limit such injuries by always wearing seat belts. There are many types of accidents in which the airbags should not unfold. These include accidents in which the airbags would provide little or no benefit, such as rear-end collisions. Other accidents in which the airbag system is not designed to deploy are those in which the risk of injury from airbag deployment may outweigh the protective ef-

fect, such as low-speed accidents or higher-speed accidents in which the vehicle decelerates gradually over an extended period of time.

Since the airbags do not unfold in every accident, it is all the more important that you and the other occupants are always fastened with a seat belt. Your Porsche vehicle is equipped with electronically controlled systems that help to ensure that your vehicle functions correctly. These systems monitor the function of various systems and store data that support service technicians in the diagnosis and repair of these systems.

**Your vehicle is equipped with diagnostics for accident detection, which can record data in the event of an accident – for example, whether airbags and belt tensioners were triggered and whether the seat belt was fastened.**

Special devices are required to retrieve this information. Access to the vehicle or component in which the data is stored is also required. Some countries or states only allow access to such information in certain circumstances. These include the following cases:

- in response to a request from the police or another state authority
- with the consent of the registered vehicle owner or (for leased vehicles) of the lessee
- in the context of a judicial investigation or where otherwise legally permissible or prescribed

Your rights with respect to the information discussed above may vary depending on the country. Find out about the legal regulations in your country.

## Expanded airbag system

In accordance with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, your vehicle is equipped with a seat occupancy detection system for the passenger seat.

Depending on the weight, posture and body shape acting on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag is automatically switched on and off.

Depending on the impact angle and strength, the active passenger airbag is triggered in the event of an impact.

Prerequisite for switching the passenger airbag on and off depending on weight, body position and body shape:

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.

### ⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable passenger seating position

Improper use of the passenger seat can inadvertently impair the function of the occupant sensing system for the passenger airbag.

If the electrical capacity of an adult in the passenger seat is not properly maintained, the front passenger airbag may be switched off.

- ▶ Maintain an upright seating position, do not lean on the armrests or the center console, or lean out of the window while driving.
- ▶ Always keep your feet on the floor in the footwell when driving. Do not place your feet on the dashboard or on the seat.

## Adjusting the passenger seat

### ⚠ WARNING

Passenger seat backrest with tilt function

Seat belts only provide protection if the seat backrest is upright and the belts are properly positioned on the body.

- ▶ Do not drive the vehicle if the driver or passenger seat backrest is tilted too far.

## Modifying the vehicle for people with disabilities

Since modifications to your vehicle may impair the function of the expanded airbag system, please contact Porsche at 1-800-PORSCHE before modifying.

## Automatic passenger airbag deactivation

### ⚠ DANGER

Child restraint system on front seat

To reduce the risk of injury due to accidental airbag deployment, Porsche strongly recommends:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Expanded airbag system" on page 55.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 58.
- 
- If a **child up to one year old** is in the child restraint system on the front seat, the passenger-side airbag is automatically deactivated.
  - When an adult sits in the passenger seat, the front airbag is activated automatically.



Fig. 51: PASS AIR BAG OFF/ON indicator

### i Information

Depending on the weight, posture and shape, the passenger airbag may activate for heavier children. The passenger airbag may also deactivate with very light adults and younger persons. The status of the passenger airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the overhead console.

### PASS AIR BAG OFF display lights up

Passenger airbag is off  
**PASS AIR BAG OFF display does not light up**

The passenger airbag is activated and ready for operation.

### i Information

After the vehicle is switched on, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display lights up for a few seconds to verify.

**⚠ DANGER**


Fault in child seat detection

When the vehicle is switched on and a child up to one year of age is in the child restraint system on the passenger seat, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display must light up.

If the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display does not light up, this may indicate a system fault. Furthermore, the airbag can deploy in the event of a collision, posing a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child. In this case:

- ▶ Do not install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ Have the fault rectified at your nearest Porsche dealer.

## Recognizing faults

Faults are indicated by the red **airbag warning light**  on the instrument cluster.

The air bag warning light comes on when the electronic monitoring of the air bag system detects a malfunction of the sensors, seat belt system, seat occupancy sensor, **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator light, or associated cables, air bag modules, or control units.

- ▶ In the following cases, you should immediately visit a Porsche dealer to make sure that the air-bag system is working correctly:
  - The warning light does not light up when the vehicle is switched on.
    - or –
    - If the warning light does not go out after the vehicle is switched on.
    - or –
    - If the warning light comes on when driving.

## **i** Information

For further information, see the stickers attached to the sun visors and all airbag components. Special recommendations for using child restraint systems:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)” on page 58.

## Instrument and Interior Lighting

### Switching interior lighting on and off

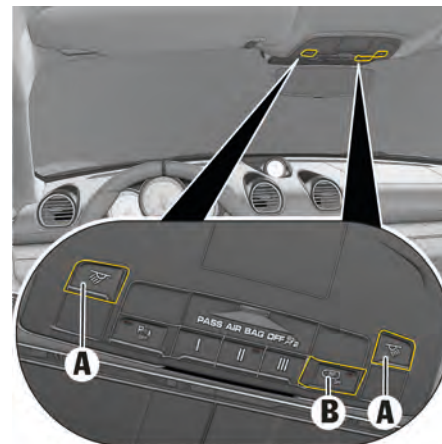


Fig. 52: Buttons for interior/reading lights

- A** Button for interior/reading lights
- B** Switching automatic interior lighting on and off automatically

### Switching the interior/reading light on and off

- ▶ Press the **A** button.

### Adjusting the brightness (dimming)

- ▶ Press and hold button **A** for at least one second until the desired brightness is reached.



## Switching automatic interior lighting on and off

Depending on equipment, the automatic interior lighting can be switched on and off with **Button B** or in the **multifunction display** menu.

### With button B:

- ▶ Press button **B**.
  - ➔ When interior lighting is switched off, the indicator on the button lights up.

If the interior lighting is switched on and darkness falls, the interior lighting is

- **switched on:** when a door is unlocked or opened or when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock.
- **switched off:** after a delay of around 120 seconds after both doors are closed. The off-delay time can be adjusted in the multifunction display. The interior lighting goes out as soon as the ignition is switched on or the vehicle is locked.

### In the multifunction display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display" on page 141.

## Switching off interior lighting to conserve the battery

In darkness, the interior lighting is switched off automatically after approx. 15 minutes if the engine is switched off in order to conserve the vehicle battery. During daylight hours, manually activated interior lights are automatically switched off after approx. 1 minute.

## Orientation lighting

Lights in the overhead console and on the ignition lock act as orientation when darkness falls and make it easier to find important controls in the vehicle. The lights are switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and are automatically switched off again when the vehicle is locked.

The brightness (dimming) for the orientation lighting is controlled in the multifunction display.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display" on page 141.

## Ambient lighting

When darkness falls, the interior of the vehicle is illuminated by a gentle diffuse light while driving. After the vehicle is locked, the ambient lighting goes out automatically.

## Adjusting interior lighting

### Adjusting brightness of instrument lighting



Fig. 53: Adjustment button

The lighting is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness by light sensors. In addition, instrument and switch brightness can be manually adjusted when the vehicle lighting system switched on.

- ▶ Turn and hold adjustment button **A** in the appropriate direction until the desired brightness is reached.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting the brightness while driving

Adjusting the brightness while driving could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes while driving.

## Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)

### General safety instructions

Porsche recommends that children and infants always be fastened into child restraint systems while the vehicle is in motion, in compliance with the applicable regulations.

If possible, use only child restraint systems recommended by Porsche. These restraint systems have been tested and adapted to suit the interior of Porsche vehicles and the appropriate child weight classes. Other systems have not been tested and could pose an increased risk of injury.

The use of child and infant restraint systems is required by law in all 50 U.S. states and in the Canadian provinces. The child restraint system must meet the U.S. and Canadian motor vehicle safety standards and be secured with the lap belt end of a lap-shoulder seat belt.

All child restraint systems are designed to be fastened to the vehicle seat using a lap belt or the lap belt end of a lap-shoulder seat belt.

- ▶ Always follow the separate installation instructions for your child seat.



Improper use of child restraint systems

Children whose child restraint systems are not properly secured in the vehicle may be at risk in an accident.

- ▶ Make sure that all child restraint systems are secured correctly.

A declaration of conformity of the child restraint system with regard to compliance with US/Canadian standards is provided on the information label on the child restraint system and in the instructions supplied with the child restraint system.



Child restraint system on the passenger seat

If a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat, there is a danger of serious or fatal injury if the airbag is triggered.

To reduce the risk of injury resulting from airbag deployment in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Expanded airbag system" on page 55.

- ▶ Always follow the separate child restraint operating instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer when it comes to installation and use and proper child restraint fastening.
- ▶ Infants and young children must never be held on the lap or share a seat belt with another occupant while the vehicle is in motion.
- ▶ Children who are too big for a child restraint system must use regular seat belts. A shoulder strap can be used if it does not run over the child's face or neck.
- ▶ Select child restraint systems that match the weight of the child.
- ▶ Child restraint systems that are damaged or have been heavily strained in an accident must be replaced immediately.

- ▶ Children whose child restraint systems are not properly secured in the vehicle may be at risk in an accident.
- ▶ Do not attach objects to child restraint systems or cover them with other materials.

### Installation of child restraint systems

#### Children in Groups 0 and 0+: Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)

Children in this weight group must be transported in a **rear-facing** child restraint system.

#### Children in Group I: 20 to 40 lbs. (9 to 18 kg)

Children in this weight group are to be transported in **forward-facing** child restraint systems.

#### Children in Group II: 33 to 55 lbs. (15 to 25 kg)

Children in this weight group are to be transported in **forward-facing** child restraint systems.

#### Children in Group III: 49 to 80 lbs. (22 to 36 kg)

Children in this weight group are to be transported in **forward-facing** child restraint systems.

- ▶ Adjust passenger seat to the upright position.

### Using child restraint systems on the passenger seat

- ▶ Do not use child restraint systems on **full bucket seats** (full bucket seats can be recognized by the fact that their seat backrest cannot be folded forward).

**⚠ DANGER**

Child restraint system on the passenger seat

Using a child restraint system on the passenger seat can result in serious injury or death of the child if airbags deploy.

To reduce the risk of injury due to airbag deployment in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends: ▶ Refer to chapter "Expanded airbag system" on page 55., ▶ Refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 58.

### Child restraint system for children up to one year old

If a **child up to one year old** is sitting in the child restraint system, the front airbag on the passenger side is automatically deactivated.

- ▶ Ensure that the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display lights up.
- ▶ Adjust the passenger seat so that the distance from the airbag and adjacent parts of the vehicle body is as great as possible.

**⚠ DANGER**

Fault in child seat detection

When the vehicle is switched on and a child up to one year of age is in the child restraint system on the passenger seat, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display must light up.

If the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display does not light up, this may indicate a system fault or that the child seat does not fit. In addition, the airbag could deploy in a collision, with risk of serious or fatal injury to the child. In this case:

- ▶ Do not install the child restraint system on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Have the fault rectified at your nearest Porsche dealer.

### Child restraint system for children over one year old

According to the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, your vehicle is equipped with a seat occupancy detection system for the passenger seat. Depending on the weight, posture and body shape acting on the passenger seat, the passenger airbag is automatically switched on or off.

#### Small adult passenger

- The **PASS AIR BAG OFF** display does not light up.

**⚠ DANGER**

Use of the passenger seat by adults

If the ignition is switched on and a short adult is sitting in the passenger seat, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator must go out.

If the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator lights up, this may indicate a fault in the system. In this case:

- ▶ Have the fault rectified by your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

### Installing child restraint systems

#### Installing child restraint systems on different seat versions





Fig. 54: Full bucket seat

Child restraint systems may not be used with full bucket seats.

Full bucket seats can be recognized by the fact that their seat backrest cannot be folded forward.

► Refer to chapter "Seats" on page 70.

The recommended child restraint systems may be used for all other seat versions.

## Automatic retractor

The seat belts for the passenger seat and the rear seats are equipped with automatic retractors that allow child restraint systems to be fastened. When activated, the retractor allows you to securely fasten the child restraint system so that it cannot move accidentally.

Before transporting a child on the passenger seat:

### **⚠ DANGER**

Adjustment of child restraint systems after fastening

Adjusting the seat can cause the seat belt to no longer fit correctly on the child seat, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator goes out and the airbag system is activated.

- ▶ Never adjust the seat in any direction after you have fastened the child restraint system.
- ▶ Check the passenger airbag system status indicated by the light in the overhead console.



Fig. 55: Display PASS AIR BAG OFF

## Activation of the automatic retractor

1. If a child restraint system must be mounted on the passenger seat, adjust the seat so that the distance from the airbag is as great as possible.
2. Position the child seat in accordance with the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer and observe all instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing it on the vehicle seat.
3. Pull out the seatbelt completely. The locking mechanism is activated at this point.
4. Insert the latch into the belt buckle and make sure that it engages correctly. Do not adjust the seat any further.
5. Let the seat belt retract until it restrains tightly against the child restraint system. You can tighten the belt further by pulling on it so that more belt strap is rolled up. If you can pull out the shoulder strap, the automatic retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt out fully and repeat steps 4 and 5.
6. Make sure that you do not move the passenger seat after installing the child seat and activating the automatic retractor. Otherwise, the seat belt system or the child seat may be damaged by the tightly fastened seat belt.

## Unfastening the seat belt

1. Press the belt buckle button.
2. Then make sure that the belt has been fully extended. The automatic lock is released at this point.
3. Ask your Porsche dealer about the possibility of installing a Porsche child restraint system.

## Installation of tether straps



**DANGER**

Improper use of child restraint systems

- ▶ Do not use child restraint systems on **full bucket seats** (the backrest of a full bucket seat cannot be folded down).
- ▶ Observe all instructions and warnings in this manual relating to child restraint systems.

Child safety seats with tether straps are the best option for installing a child safety seat in your Porsche.

The aforementioned child seats with tether straps must be installed using the vehicle's seat belt system to ensure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the passenger seat. The tightened tether provides additional stability to the child restraint system. Only use child restraint systems with tether anchors recommended by Porsche. These restraint systems have been tested and adapted to suit the interior of Porsche vehicles and the appropriate child weight classes.

Other systems have not been tested and could pose an increased risk of injury.

- ▶ Please contact your Porsche dealer for correct installation.
- ▶ Always follow the separate installation instructions for your child seat.

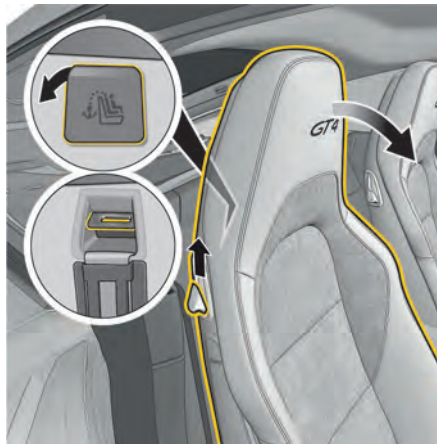


Fig. 56: Anchoring point of the tether strap



**WARNING**

Improper use of child seat anchorages

Due to their design, child seat anchorages can only withstand such loads as are to be expected with properly secured child seats. Under no circumstances should they be used on adult seat belts or harnesses.

- ▶ Do not use the child seat anchorages for any other purpose.
- ▶ Always attach only **one** child seat top tether per anchorage.
- ▶ The child seat anchorages are not designed to withstand the loading caused by adults.

When using child restraint systems with tether strap, the anchoring point behind the passenger seat is used to fasten the tether.

1. Secure the child restraint system using the vehicle seat belt.
2. Fasten the tether strap to the anchor point behind the passenger seat and tighten the tether to prevent the belt from slacking.

## Air conditioning system

### Brief overview of air conditioning system

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions provided in the "Air Conditioning System (2-Zone Automatic Air Conditioning)" chapter. In particular, the brief overview is no substitute for safety messages and warnings.

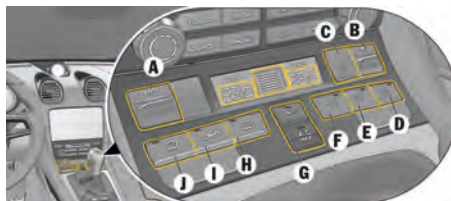


Fig. 57: Automatic air conditioning

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
<b>Activate automatic air conditioning</b>	▶ Press button <b>C</b> .	▶ p. 63
<b>Setting temperature</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Left side of vehicle: Press button <b>A</b> up (warmer) or down (cooler).</li> <li>▶ Right side of vehicle: Press button <b>B</b> up (warmer) or down (cooler).</li> </ul>	▶ p. 64
<b>Set air flow manually</b>	▶ Press button <b>G</b> up (increase) or down (decrease).	▶ p. 64
<b>Adjusting air distribution manually</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Air flow to the windshield and side windows: Press the button <b>D</b>.</li> <li>▶ Air to central and side vents: Press the <b>E</b> button.</li> <li>▶ Air to footwell: Press button <b>F</b>.</li> </ul>	▶ p. 64
<b>Defrosting the windshield</b>	▶ Press button <b>J</b> .	▶ p. 64
<b>Switching door mirror heating on</b>	▶ Press button <b>H</b> .	▶ p. 67
<b>Activate air-recirculation mode manually</b>	▶ Press button <b>I</b> .	▶ p. 67



## Operating principle

Depending on various factors such as the vehicle interior temperature, sunlight and air quality, in automatic mode the air conditioning system will adjust the temperature, air distribution and air flow fully automatically.

Automatic mode is deactivated as soon as the settings are adjusted manually. In this case, automatic air conditioning continues to regulate the functions that have not been changed manually.

Additional air conditioning settings can be made on the multifunction display:

► Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display" on page 141.

For vehicles with the Memory package, the air conditioning system settings are stored on the respective vehicle key.

The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows closed.

If heat builds up in the vehicle interior:

- Briefly air the interior by opening the windows.

Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation may drip from under the vehicle. This is quite normal and is not a defect.

If the battery voltage is too low, the fresh-air blower and cooling functions of the air conditioning system are initially restricted and then switched off.

The cooling function can switch off briefly to ensure sufficient engine cooling when the engine is operating under extreme load. It switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 35 °F (2 °C) (and cannot be switched on, even manually).

Temporarily setting the temperature to a lower or higher value does not cool or heat the vehicle interior to the desired temperature more quickly.

## 2-zone automatic air conditioning

The temperature can be set individually for the **left** and **right** climate zones. Air flow, air distribution, air conditioning style and footwell temperature control can be set for the entire interior.

## Keeping the sensors clear



Fig. 58: Interior temperature sensor

To avoid impairing the function of the air conditioning system:

- Do not cover or tape over the interior temperature sensor for the air conditioning system.

## Turning air conditioning system on and off

### Turning on automatic mode

The climate zones can be switched to automatic mode.

- Press button **AUTO SYNC** on the air conditioning control panel.
  - ➔ The **AUTO** indicator in the air conditioner display lights up.
    - Temperature, air flow and air distribution are automatically controlled.

If necessary, the automatic system can be controlled manually. The manual setting is retained until the relevant function button is pressed again or until button **AUTO SYNC** is pressed.

### Turning cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dries the air. In automatic mode, the cooling function is activated by default. The cooling output is automatically controlled.

Manual air conditioning: If you wish to cool the interior to a temperature lower than the outside temperature, the cooling function must be activated.



Fig. 59: Turning cooling function on and off

## Turning cooling function on

- ▶ Press the **A/C** button.
  - ➔ The indicator on the button lights up.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.
  - ➔ The cooling function is activated.

## Switching off cooling function

Cooling can be switched off manually, e.g. to conserve fuel.

- ▶ Press the **A/C** button.
    - ➔ The indicator light on the button goes out.
- The cooling function is deactivated.

## Switching maximum cooling on and off — A/C MAX mode

In A/C MAX mode, the vehicle interior is cooled at maximum power.

The interior temperature is not adjusted automatically.



Fig. 60: Setting maximum cooling output

## Activating maximum cooling output

- ▶ Press the **A/C MAX** button.
  - ➔ The indicator on the button lights up.

## Switching off maximum cooling power

- ▶ Press the **A/C MAX** button.
  - ➔ The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.

## Operating the air conditioning system

### Setting the temperature

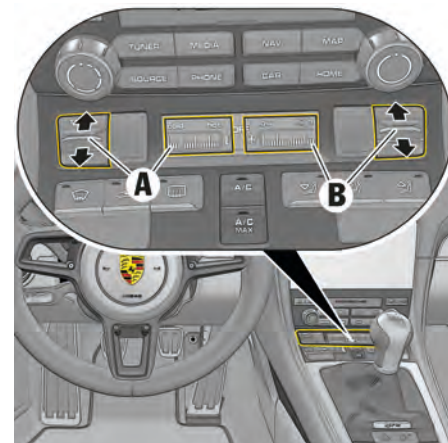


Fig. 61: Setting temperature and air flow

The temperature of each air-conditioning zone can be adjusted individually between 62 and 84 °F (16.5 and 29 °C). Recommendation: 72 °F (22°C).

The selected temperature is shown on the display.

### Increasing and reducing the temperature

- ▶ Press the **TEMP** button upward or downward for the desired air-conditioning zone.


If **LO** or **HI**, appears on the display, the system is operating at maximum cooling or heating power. Automatic mode is switched off.

### **i** Information

If one air-conditioning zone is set to **LO** or **HI** when SYNC mode is activated, the other air-conditioning zone is also set to **LO** or **HI**.

Pressing button **AUTO SYNC** sets the default value of 72 °F (22 °C).

### Setting air flow

The selected air flow is shown in a bar display above the  button. The more bars that are displayed, the more air flows into the vehicle interior.

#### Increasing and reducing the air flow

- ▶ Press button  up or down.


Pressing the **AUTO SYNC** button switches back to automatic mode.

If the air flow was reduced so much that **OFF** appears on the air conditioning system display, the outside air supply is interrupted and the air conditioning system is switched off.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Impaired vision with air flow OFF

If there is a lot of air OFF, the windows can fog up.

- ▶ To increase the air volume again, press the button  up or switching on automatic mode again.

### Adjusting the air vents



Fig. 62: Adjusting the air vents

#### NOTE

The air vent vanes can be damaged if objects are attached to them. These objects can also be damaged.

- ▶ Do not insert objects, e.g. cellphone cradle, air freshener, into the air vents.

#### Opening and closing air vents

- ▶ Turn thumbwheel on the air vent clockwise or counter-clockwise.

#### Changing the air flow direction




- ▶ Swivel the vent vanes in the desired direction.

### Setting the air distribution



Fig. 63: Buttons for air distribution

#### Adjusting air distribution manually

- ✓ Vents open.
- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The air flows toward the windshield and the side windows.
- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The air flows from the center air vent and side vents.
- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The air flows to the footwell.
  - The light indicator on the relevant button lights up.

## Canceling manual air distribution

- ▶ Press the relevant air distribution button again.
  - ➔ The light indicator on the relevant button goes out.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.
  - ➔ Air flow and distribution are automatically controlled.

## Setting the upper ventilation panel



Fig. 64: Upper ventilation panel

The ventilation panel on the top of the dashboard can be activated or deactivated separately. When the ventilation panel is activated, the air flow in the vehicle interior is less direct. The air conditioning system regulates the air flow automatically.

For information on activating or deactivating the upper ventilation panel:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multi-function Display" on page 141.

## Adjusting air flow

Three air flow settings are available in automatic mode.

For information on adjusting the air flow output:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multi-function Display" on page 141.

## Switching air circulation mode on and off



Fig. 65: Air recirculation mode button


### **⚠ WARNING**

Impaired vision in manual air-recirculation mode


In prolonged manual air-recirculation mode, the windows may mist up. As no fresh air is supplied, the driver may get tired and become less attentive.

- ▶ Do not switch on manual air-recirculation mode for an extended period.

## Switching on air recirculation mode manually

- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The light indicator on the button lights up.

## Switching off air circulation mode manually

- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.

## **i** Information

When the cooling function is switched off manually or automatically, air recirculation mode ends after approx. 3 minutes.

## Setting automatic air recirculation mode

In automatic air circulation mode, the outside air supply is regulated depending on the air quality. Air recirculation mode is deactivated automatically at outside temperatures below approx. 41 °F (5 °C) to prevent the side windows from fogging.

## Applying air conditioning settings to the entire vehicle - SYNC mode

The driver's air conditioning settings are applied to the entire vehicle in SYNC mode.

### Activating SYNC mode

- Press and hold the **AUTO SYNC** button until the **SYNC** screen appears in the air conditioning system display.
- Regulate the temperature on the driver's and passenger's side using the **TEMP** button on the driver's side.

### Switching off SYNC mode

- ▶ Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.
- or –
- Press **TEMP** button on the passenger's side.
- ➔ The **SYNC** screen in the air conditioning system display disappears.

### Operating glass and mirror heating

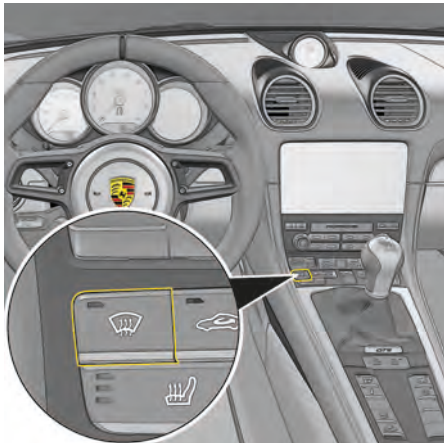




Fig. 66: Defrost windshield button

### Activate defroster mode

- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The light indicator on the button lights up.
- The air flows toward the windshield and the front side windows.
- The windshield is defogged/defrosted as quickly as possible.

### Switch off defroster mode


- ▶ Press the  button.
- ➔ The light indicator on the button goes out.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.

### Door mirror heating




Fig. 67: Door mirror heating button

### Switching on door mirror heating


- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ➔ The light indicator on the button lights up.

Depending on the outside temperature, the door mirror heating switches off automatically after approx. 5 to 20 minutes.

### Activate again

- ▶ Press  button again.
- ➔ The light indicator on the button lights up.

### Switching off door mirror heating

- ▶ Press  button again.
- ➔ The light indicator on the button goes out.

### Information

If the battery voltage is too low, the door mirror heating is initially restricted and then switched off.



## Steering Wheel

### Setting steering wheel

#### ⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel while driving

The steering wheel may move further than desired if adjusted while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not adjust the steering wheel when driving.

### Adjusting the steering wheel manually

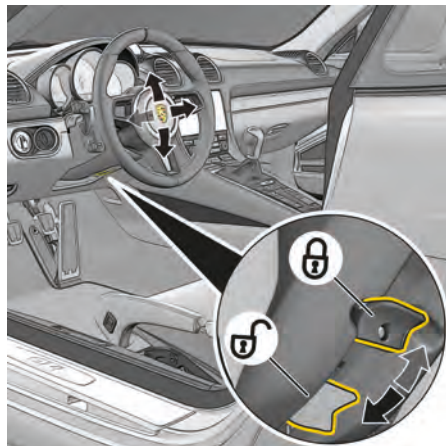


Fig. 68: Locking lever for steering wheel adjustment

1. Fully insert the vehicle key into the ignition lock.
2. Swivel the locking lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel vertically and horizontally to position it in line with the angle of the backrest and the seat position.
4. Turn the lever back to the original position, toward the driver, until you feel it engage.

## Seat Belts

### Correct use of seat belts

#### ⚠ DANGER

Unfastened or incorrectly used seat belts

A seat belt that is not fastened will not provide any protection in the event of an accident. A seat belt that is not fastened correctly can increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Before and during each drive, all occupants must wear seat belts for their own safety.
- ▶ Never allow two people to use the **same** seat belt at the same time.
- ▶ Remove any loose clothing (e.g. jackets), as they can interfere with the correct seat belt position and restrict your freedom of movement.
- ▶ Do not lay seat belts over hard or breakable objects (e.g. glasses, ball-point pens, phones, etc.). Such objects pose an additional risk of injury.
- ▶ Make sure that seat belts are not twisted or loose.
- ▶ Also provide your passengers with all the information in this section.
- ▶ Use suitable child restraint systems for all children.
- ▶ Seat belts must be positioned on the body so that they prevent the upper body and pelvis from sliding forward. Incorrectly positioned seat belts can cause serious injury in the event of an accident.
- ▶ The shoulder strap must always be close to the upper body. The shoulder strap must never be fastened in such a way that it runs behind the back or under the arm.

- ▶ The lap belt should extend far below the lap so that it can achieve its greatest possible effect.
- ▶ Pregnant women should place the seat belt as far below the pelvis as possible. Make sure that it does not press against the abdomen.
- ▶ Seat belts must not rub against sharp-edged objects to prevent damage to the belt strap.

#### ⚠ DANGER

Use of damaged seat belts

Damaged or heavily worn seat belts will not provide adequate protection in the event of an accident.

The seat-belt pretensioner system may only be triggered once; it must then be replaced.

- ▶ Regularly check all seat belts for fabric damage and check that the belt buckle and attachment points are in good working order.
- ▶ The seat belts must be kept clean. Otherwise, the retractors may not function correctly.
- ▶ Protect the belt buckle from dirt and keep it clean, which could prevent it from closing securely.
- ▶ Immediately replace any seat belts that are damaged or have been subjected to heavy strain during an accident, as well as triggered seat-belt pretensioner systems and force limiters.
- ▶ In addition, you should have the anchorage points of the seat belts checked.  
Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ The belt tensioner system can only trigger once. Triggered belt tensioner systems must be replaced.



- ▶ When not in use, ensure that the seat belts are always fully retracted. This will protect them from dirt and damage.
- ▶ Never dye or bleach seat belts.
- ▶ In the event of damage to the belt straps, bindings, buckles or retractors, they should be replaced to ensure safe operation.
- ▶ Do not change or remove the seat belts in your vehicle.
- ▶ Only allow the seat belts to roll up after cleaning when they have dried.

▶ Refer to chapter "Cleaning and caring for vehicle interior" on page 214.

### Belt tensioners

Whether the seat belt pretensioner system is triggered or not depends on the severity of the accident. The seat belt pretensioners can be triggered during:

- Front or rear collisions
- Side impacts
- Vehicle rollover

### **i** Information

Smoke may be released when the seat belt pretensioners are triggered. This does not necessarily mean that the vehicle is on fire.

## Fastening and unfastening seat belt

### Fastening seat belt



Fig. 69: Fastening seat belt

1. Assume a comfortable seating position.
2. Adjust the backrest so that the shoulder belt passes over the center of your shoulder and is positioned on your upper body.

### **i** Information

The seat belt can lock in the following situations:

- Vehicle on an incline.
- Seat belt is pulled out abruptly.
- When accelerating or decelerating, when negotiating bends or on inclines.

3. Grasp the seat belt by the belt latch and pull it slowly and evenly over your chest and hip.

4. Insert the belt latch into the respective seat belt buckle on the inner side of the seat until it locks with an audible click (Fig. 69).
5. Make sure that the seat belt is not trapped or twisted and that it is not rubbing against sharp edges.
6. Ensure that the lap belt fits tautly across the lap. After fastening the seat belt, tension the lap belt by pulling the shoulder belt up.  
For pregnant women: Position the lap belt so that it is as low on the lap as possible and not pressing against the abdomen.
7. During the journey, pull on the shoulder belt occasionally to ensure that the lap belt remains under tension.

### Opening the belt buckle and unfastening a seat belt

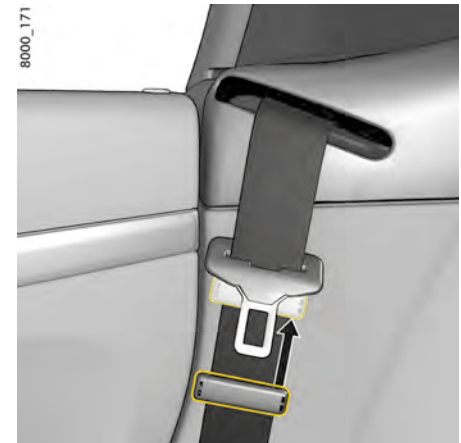


Fig. 70: Unfastening seat belts

1. Hold the belt tongue.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt tongue to approx. 3 inches (7 cm) below the rewinder deflection bracket and lock it with the plastic slider (Fig. 70). The function of the plastic slider is to ensure that the belt latch is easily accessible.

## Seats

### Selecting the correct seat position

A correct sitting position is important to ensure safe and fatigue-free driving.

To individually adjust the position of the driver's seat, proceed as follows:

1. Adjust the seat height to ensure that you have enough headroom and a good overview of the vehicle.
2. Move the seat in the fore-and-aft direction so that you can reach and press the pedals without stretching your legs out completely. Your foot should cover the entire surface of the pedal.
3. Grip the upper part of the steering wheel. Set backrest angle (not full bucket seat) and steering wheel position so that arms are almost outstretched. Your shoulders must still be touching the backrest, however.
4. Correct the fore-and-aft position of the seat if necessary.

### Headrest

The driver seat and the passenger seat are equipped with integrated headrests. The driver seat and passenger seat headrests are not adjustable.

## Setting seat

### WARNING

Adjusting the seat while driving

The seat can move further than intended if adjusted while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

All occupants, including the driver, should only drive the vehicle after the seat backrests have been brought into the correct position to minimize the risk of neck injuries in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- ▶ Adjust the incline of the backrest so that the headrest is upright.
- ▶ The driver and the other occupants should sit upright and in the middle of their seats.

### CAUTION

Seat adjustment

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the seat during adjustment, there is a risk of body parts being trapped or crushed.

- ▶ Ensure that no one is put at risk when adjusting the seat.
- ▶ Do not activate the memory button if there are objects or persons in the way.
- ▶ Stop the automatic adjustment process by pressing any button on the seat adjustment.

### NOTE

Risk of damage to the headrest, roof and sun visor.

- ▶ Adjust the seat so that there is a sufficient distance between the headrest, roof and sun visor.

## Adjusting adaptive sports seat plus

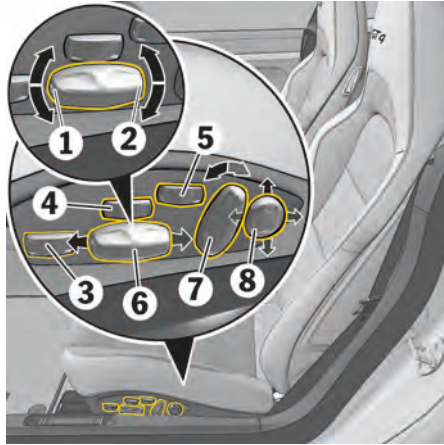


Fig. 71: Adjusting adaptive sports seat plus

- 1 Adjusting seat angle
  - 2 Adjust seat height
  - 3 Adjusting thigh support
  - 4 Adjusting seat side bolsters
  - 5 Adjusting backrest side bolsters
  - 6 Adjusting fore-and-aft position
  - 7 Adjusting seat backrest angle
  - 8 Adjusting lumbar support
- 
- ▶ Press the relevant control in the direction of the arrow until the desired setting or final position is reached.

## Adjusting full bucket seat

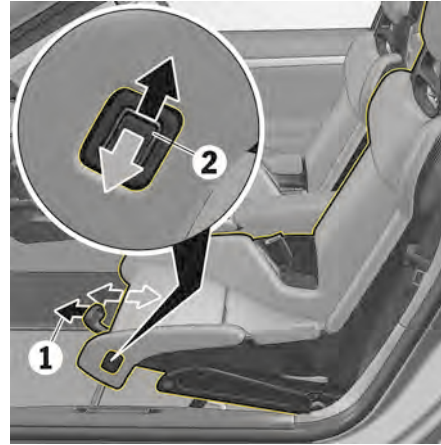


Fig. 72: Adjusting full bucket seat

### **⚠ DANGER**

Use of child restraint systems

Danger of serious or fatal injury resulting from the use of child restraint systems in full bucket seats.

Child restraint systems in full bucket seats do not provide protection in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Do not use child restraint systems in full bucket seats.
- 
- ▶ Lift the locking lever **1**, move the seat to the desired position and then release the lever. Ensure that the seat engages properly.
  - ▶ Press control **2** in the direction of the arrow until the desired setting or final position is reached.

## Folding down the seat backrest



Fig. 73: Folding down the seat backrest

- ▶ Lift the locking lever at the side of the backrest and fold the backrest forward.

## Folding up backrest

### **⚠ WARNING**

Backrest not latched in position

Risk of injury due to backrests that are not properly engaged.

- ▶ When folding back the backrest, check that it is engaged.
- 
- ▶ Fold backrest back and engage.

## Switch seat heating on and off

Seat heating and seat ventilation are operated electrically. The seat heating warms the heating elements in the seat and backrest. The seat ventilation cools and dries the seat. Air is routed through the seat and backrest via the integrated fans.

### ⚠ WARNING

Persons with restricted or no perception of pain

People who suffer from restricted or lack of pain or temperature perception due to taking medicines or illness may burn when using the seat heating system.

- Persons with restricted pain or temperature perception should not use the seat heating.

### The seat heating should not be used under the following conditions:

- The seat is covered with a slipcover.
- A child seat is installed on the seat.
- The seat surface is wet or damp.



Fig. 74: Heated seat button

### Activate seat heating

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press corresponding button (repeatedly).
  - ➔ The number of illuminated light indicators shows the selected level.

### Switch off seat heating

- ▶ Press the corresponding button (repeatedly) until the light indicators go out.

### ⓘ Information

If the battery voltage is too low, the heated seat function is initially restricted and then turned off.

## Sun Visors

### Adjusting sun visors

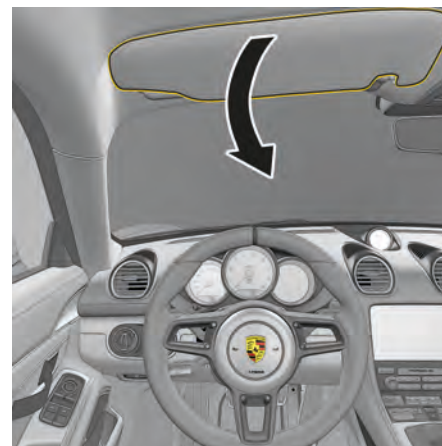


Fig. 75: Adjusting sun visors

- ▶ Swivel the sun visors down to prevent glare from the front.

### Opening vanity mirror

### ⚠ CAUTION

Opened vanity mirror cover

In an accident, the mirror can shatter and glass may enter the passenger compartment if the cover is open.

- ▶ Keep cover closed while driving.



Fig. 76: Opening vanity mirror

- ▶ Open the cover of the vanity mirror on the inside of the sun visor.
  - ➔ The vanity mirror lighting is turned on.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the vanity mirror cover.

- ▶ Do not attempt to push the cover past its end position.

## Mirrors

### Using door mirrors

#### ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect assessment of traffic situation due to distorted representation of surroundings in door mirrors

Vehicles or objects appear smaller in convex mirrors and further away than they are in reality. This may lead to incorrect assessment of the driving situation and an accident.

- ▶ Take distortion into account when estimating the distance to following traffic and when parking.
- ▶ Use the interior mirror as well to estimate distances.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Leaking electrolyte fluid

Electrolyte fluid may escape from a broken mirror. This fluid causes irritation to the skin and eyes.

- ▶ In the event of contact with the skin or eyes, immediately rinse off the electrolyte fluid using clean water.
- ▶ Seek medical attention from a doctor if necessary.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic components and clothing

Electrolyte fluid can only be removed while it is still wet.

- ▶ Clean affected parts with water.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the door mirrors when washing the vehicle in car washes

- ▶ Fold in door mirrors before using the car wash.
- ▶ Do not fold power-operated door mirrors in and out by hand.

### Setting door mirrors

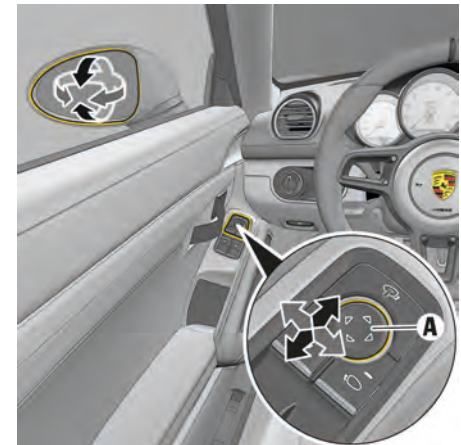


Fig. 77: Setting door mirrors



- ✓ Ignition on.  
– or –

Ignition switched off, driver or passenger door not yet opened (maximum 10 minutes).

1. Press button **A** (Fig. 77) to select the driver's side or press button **B** (Fig. 77) to select the passenger's side.
  - ➔ The light indicator on the selected button lights up.
2. Pressing adjustment button **C** (Fig. 77) to move the door mirror glass to the desired position.

### If the electric function fails

- ▶ Adjust the external mirrors by pressing on the mirror surface.

### Folding door mirrors in and out

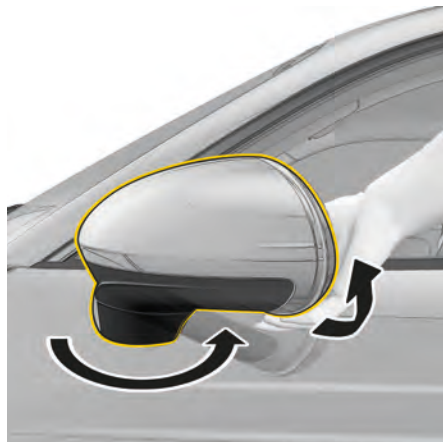


Fig. 78: Folding door mirrors in and out

### Folding in exterior mirrors manually

- ▶ With your hand, swivel the mirror housing diagonally up as far as possible.

### Folding out exterior mirror manually

- ▶ With your hand, swivel the mirror housing diagonally down as far as possible.

### Using automatic dimming function

#### Switching automatic dimming of exterior mirrors on and off

The exterior mirrors are dimmed automatically, along with the interior mirror.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Switching automatic interior mirror dimming on and off" on page 74.

### Dimming interior mirror manually



Fig. 79: Dimming interior mirror manually

When setting the mirror, the dimming lever **A** must point toward the vehicle interior.

- ▶ Initial position – swivel lever toward the vehicle interior.
- ▶ Dimmed position – swivel lever toward the front windshield.

### Switching automatic interior mirror dimming on and off

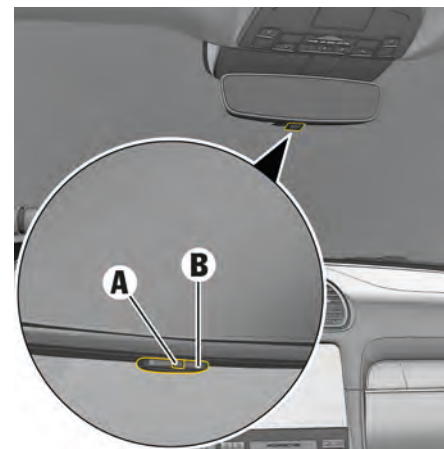


Fig. 80: Automatic interior mirror dimming

#### Switching automatic dimming on

- ▶ Press button (Fig. 80 **B**).
  - ➔ Indicator light (Fig. 80 **A**) lights up.

Depending on the light intensity, the interior mirror automatically dims or returns to the initial position.



**i Information**

The interior mirror does not dim when reverse gear is engaged **or** the interior lighting is switched on.

---

**Switching automatic dimming off**

- ▶ Press button (Fig. 80 B).
  - ➔ Indicator light (Fig. 80 A) goes out.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Leaking electrolyte fluid

Electrolyte fluid may escape from a broken mirror. This fluid causes irritation to the skin and eyes.

- ▶ In the event of contact with the skin or eyes, immediately rinse off the electrolyte fluid using clean water.
  - ▶ Seek medical attention from a doctor if necessary.
- 

**NOTE**

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic components and clothing

Electrolyte fluid can only be removed while it is still wet.

- ▶ Clean affected parts with water.
-

## Driving and Driving Assistance

### Drive-off assistant

#### General safety instructions



**WARNING**

Loss of control over the vehicle

The limits set by the physics of driving cannot be overcome, even with the drive-off assistant. Despite the drive-off assistant, responsibility for stopping and starting on hills lies with the driver.

When stopping and starting on slippery surfaces (e.g. icy or loose substrate), the drive-off assistant cannot be guaranteed to provide assistance. The vehicle can slip in such cases.

If the drive-off assistant is not working, the driver cannot be assisted when hill starting.

- ▶ Always adjust your driving style to the road surface and the vehicle load; use the footbrake if necessary.
- ▶ Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.

### Driving off using drive-off assistant

The Approach Assistant supports the driver when starting uphill.

The vehicle is automatically secured for a short time against rolling back against the desired direction of travel.

✓ Engine is running.

1. Hold the vehicle securely on the gradient using the footbrake.
2. The direction of travel uphill corresponds to gear lever position **D** or **R** or in gear lever position **M** the first gear.
3. Release footbrake
  - ➔ The vehicle is briefly held on the gradient to enable driving off and prevent the vehicle from rolling back.
4. Drive off in the usual way.



#### Information

- If the vehicle is held on the incline with the electric parking brake, it can be started in the usual way.  
The electric parking brake detects the drive-off request and is released automatically.
- If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened, the electric parking brake is automatically activated.

▷ Refer to chapter "Electric parking brake" on page 77.



#### Information

The drive-off assistant does not work in the following cases:

- Selector lever in position **N**
- If the vehicle is not stationary
- Engine is not running
- On gradients of less than 5%
- Vehicle facing downhill
- If the pressure on the brake pedal is insufficient

## Brakes

### General safety instructions



**WARNING**

Obstructed pedals

Unsuitable or incorrectly secured floor mats can inadvertently actuate or block the accelerator pedal and brake pedal.

This can lead to unintentional or more difficult acceleration and braking.

- ▶ Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle.
- ▶ Secure floor mats properly and do not lay them loosely.
- ▶ Do not lay several floor mats on top of each other.
- ▶ Ensure that floor mats are securely fitted again after they have been removed, e.g. for cleaning.



**WARNING**

Absence of brake power assistance

The brake booster is only operative when the drive is running. Consequently, much greater force needs to be applied to the pedal during braking when the drive is switched off or in the event of a faulty brake booster.

- ▶ Vehicles with a defective brake may only be towed on a car transporter or trailer.

▷ Refer to chapter "Towing and tow-starting" on page 198.

**⚠ WARNING**

Water film on brake disks

In heavy rain, when driving through water or after leaving a car wash, braking action may be reduced and increased pressure may be required.

- ▶ Allow a greater braking distance to the vehicle in front and "brake" the brakes dry at intervals. Do not allow following traffic to be affected.

**⚠ WARNING**

Reduced braking action

After a long drive over salted or gritted roads, a coating may form on the brake disks and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore reduces the braking action as well.

The brake disks may start to corrode and cause vibration if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time.

- ▶ To prevent corrosion on brake disks, "brake" the brakes dry before stopping the vehicle (not on vehicles with Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake).
- ▶ If braking comfort is noticeably impaired, a professional brake system inspection is recommended.

Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

- ▶ In order to relieve the brake system on downhill grades, shift to a lower gear (engine braking). If engine braking is not sufficient on downhill grades, apply the footbrake at intervals. Continuous braking overheats the brakes, impairing their effect.

For information on brake fluid and checking the brake fluid level:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Brake Fluid" on page 201.

**Responding to warning messages**

Always heed any warning and information messages displayed in the vehicle.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

When the vehicle is switched on, the braking functions are automatically checked for their state. The warning and indicator lights light up briefly and go out again. A continuous brake warning light indicates a fault.

- ▶ Have the fault corrected immediately. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

If the electric parking brake cannot be fully applied when the vehicle is stationary, the indicator light on the switch and the brake warning light flash.

**Brake pad wear limit**

When the brake pad wear limit is reached, a warning message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.
- ▶ Have the brake pads replaced immediately. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

**Brake pads and brake disks**

Wear on different brake system components (e.g. brake pads and brake disks) depends on driving style and conditions of use and cannot be generally expressed in terms of mileage.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (e.g. temperature and humidity) can cause the brakes to squeal.

The values quoted by Porsche are based on normal use under general traffic conditions. Wear increases significantly if the vehicle is used on race tracks or if a similar driving style is used.

- ▶ Before such driving (e. g. on race tracks), ask an authorized Porsche dealer about current guidelines.
- ▶ Have the brake pads and brake disks checked for wear before and after driving on race tracks.

**Electric parking brake**

The electric parking brake acts on the rear wheels and is used to secure the vehicle when it is stationary.



Fig. 81: Switch for electric parking brake

### Applying the parking brake

- ▶ Press the P button.
  - ➔ The indicator light on the button and the brake warning light up.

For information on warning lights and indicator lights:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

### Activating emergency braking function



**WARNING**

Abrupt deceleration

Emergency braking results in a very high braking force. This can endanger any following traffic and control over the vehicle may be lost.

- ▶ Only activate the emergency braking function in an emergency.

In the event that the conventional brake activation has failed, the vehicle can be braked to a standstill.

- ▶ Press and hold the P button.
  - ➔ The brake warning light and the indicator light on the P-button flash.

To deactivate the emergency brake function:

- ▶ Release button P.

### Applying the parking brake

- ▶ Press the P button.
  - ➔ The indicator light on the button and the brake warning light up.

For information on warning lights and indicator lights:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

### Applying the parking brake

- ▶ Press the P button.
  - ➔ The indicator light on the button and the brake warning light up.

For information on warning lights and indicator lights:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

## Starting, Driving and Stopping the Vehicle

### Ignition lock

The vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock on the left of the steering wheel.

**NOTE**

Risk of damage from extra weight.

If additional weight is attached to the inserted vehicle key, e.g., a heavy keychain and/or keyring, the ignition lock may be damaged.

- ▶ Do not attach a heavy weight to the inserted vehicle key.



Fig. 82: Inserting the vehicle key in the ignition lock

### **i** Information

The vehicle battery is discharged while the vehicle key is inserted.

If the vehicle battery is flat, the vehicle key can only be removed from the ignition lock using the emergency release.

► Refer to chapter "Vehicle Key" on page 30.

The ignition lock has three ignition lock settings:



Fig. 83: Ignition lock settings

- 0** Initial position
- 1** Ignition on
- 2** Starting the engine

### **0 — Ignition off (basic position)**

In ignition lock setting **0** the engine and ignition are off. The vehicle key can be inserted and removed in this position.

### **1 — Ignition on**

All electrical equipment can be switched on. The warning lights in the instrument cluster light up as a lamp check.

### **i** Information

If no electrical equipment is switched on for 10 minutes after the ignition is switched on, the ignition has to be switched on again. The control unit must be turned to the ignition lock position **0** (initial position) first.

The vehicle key cannot be removed while the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

### **2 — Start the engine**

After the engine is started or operational readiness is established, the control unit is automatically turned back from position **2** to position **1**.

## Starting the engine


1. Press brake pedal.
  2. Move gearshift lever into neutral or move selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
  3. Do not press the accelerator pedal.
  4. Turn the vehicle key or control unit to ignition lock position **2**. Do not use the starter for more than approx. 10 seconds.
    - ➔ The starting process is carried out and completed automatically as soon as ignition lock position **2** (start engine) is reached.
- If necessary, repeat the starting procedure after a short pause of approx. 10 seconds. First turn the vehicle key back to ignition lock position **0** (initial position). Do not warm up the engine

when stationary. Drive off immediately. Avoid high engine speeds and full throttle until the engine has reached operating temperature.

## Warm-up phase



Fig. 84: Warm-up phase display

During the warm-up phase, the maximum speed is limited to 7,000 rpm to protect the engine. The symbol is displayed on the multifunction display during this time. The symbol goes out  as soon as the engine oil has reached a temperature of approx. 60 °C.

- Avoid high engine speeds and full throttle until the engine has reached operating temperature.


## Sport exhaust system

### Turning Sport exhaust system on and off



Fig. 85: Sport exhaust system button in center console

The Sport exhaust system can be switched to a sound-optimized mode.

- ✓ Ignition on.
- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ When the Sport exhaust system is switched on, the button's indicator lights up.

## Transmission

### Driving with Porsche Double Clutch (PDK)

The Porsche double clutch transmission (PDK) is a 7-speed transmission with an automatic and a manual shift mode.

Gear changes are automatic in **automatic selection mode** (gear lever position **D**). The shift paddles on the steering wheel can be used to switch temporarily from automatic to manual selection mode.

In **manual selection mode** (gear lever position **M**), you can change gear using the gear lever or the shift paddles on the steering wheel.

When driving, the driver can switch between gear lever positions **D** and **M** as desired.

- ▶ Make sure that the shift paddles on the steering wheel are not accidentally operated in automatic and manual selection mode, triggering unintended gearshifts.



Fig. 86: Switching gear lever position

### Switching gear lever position

When the ignition is switched off, the gear lever is blocked in position **P**.

When the ignition is switched on, the gear lever can only be moved from position **P** and **N** if the release button is pressed and the brake pedal is held down.

#### Release button

The release button (**arrow**) in the gear lever prevents unintentional selections.

To switch to position **R** or **P** press the release button.

### Starting the engine

The engine can only be started if the brake pedal is pressed and the gear lever is in position **P** or **N**.



## Driving off with the vehicle

- ▶ Only select the desired drive setting for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling, and keep the brake pedal pressed.

## Driving off on hills

The Approach Assistant provides support during hill starts. When switching from the brake to the accelerator pedal, the vehicle is held momentarily on the gradient so that it can drive off immediately after the brake is released.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Drive-off assistant" on page 76.

## Stopping the vehicle

- ▶ When stopping briefly, e.g., at a traffic light, leave the selector lever in the drive position and stop the vehicle with the brake pedal.
- ▶ Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on a grade, but use the brake pedal or electric parking brake instead.
- ▶ Before leaving the vehicle, always activate the electric parking brake and move gear lever to position **P**.

## Parking the vehicle

- ▶ Only accelerate a little.



Fig. 87: Gear lever position and engaged gear display

## Reading the gear lever position and engaged gear display

When the engine is running, the gear lever position and the engaged gear are displayed. If the gear lever is between two positions, the relevant gear lever position flashes and a warning appears on the multifunction display.

Action required:

- ▶ Operate the footbrake and engage gear selector properly.

If the gear lever is accidentally moved to a drive position from **P** or **N** without the brake being applied (due to a malfunction or incorrect operation), this drive position flashes and no power transmission is applied.

- ▶ To drive off, press brake and move the gear lever from **P** or **N** to the desired drive position again.

## Gear lever position R or D flashes in the instrument panel

No power transmission takes place.

Effects:

- The gear lever was engaged without applying the footbrake.
- The gear lever was set to **R** above the permissible speed limit.
- It was parked or maneuvered with the driver's door open.

For legal reasons, the power transmission between the engine and transmission is interrupted after 2 seconds without pedal movement (brake and accelerator pedal).

Action required:

- ▶ Apply the footbrake and select the desired gear lever position from **P** or **N**.

## Gear lever positions

### P – Parking lock

- ▶ You should only engage the parking lock when the vehicle is stationary. If gear lever position **P** is flashing, the parking lock is not engaged correctly. The vehicle can roll away. Select gear lever position **P** again from **R**.

The vehicle key can only be removed in gear lever position **P**.

### R – Reverse gear

- ▶ Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the brake is applied.

## N – Neutral (engine idle)

Selector lever position **N** must be engaged, e.g. when the vehicle is being towed or in a car wash.

- ▶ Only engage gear lever position **N** when the engine is idling.
- ▶ Only select the desired drive setting for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling, and keep the brake pedal pressed.

## D – Automatic selection mode

The PDK already has a sporty shift strategy in its basic setting. Gear changes are always fast.

- ▶ Engage operating mode **D** for “normal” driving. The gears are automatically selected according to the accelerator pedal position and vehicle speed. Depending on the driving style, the shift sequences and shift points are adapted or adjusted.



Fig. 88: PDK SPORT mode

## Switching PDK SPORT mode on and off

In PDK SPORT mode, the PDK switches to an even more sporty shift pattern, which is also suitable for the race track. The upshift and downshift points are shifted to higher speeds. The shift sequences and shift points are also adapted in PDK SPORT depending on the driving style.

- ▶ Press the **PDK SPORT** button.

When PDK SPORT mode is switched on, the indicator light on the button lights up and the word **SPORT** appears on the digital speedometer.

### **i** Information

- In gear lever position **D**, PDK SPORT mode is not automatically set to the 7th gear.
- Switching PDK SPORT mode on and off does not affect the PASM mode.

### **i** Information

Shifting gears on the steering wheel allows you to switch temporarily from automatic selection mode **D** to manual selection mode **M**.

For example in the following cases:

- Downshift before curves
- Downshifting when driving downhill (engine braking effect)
- Downshifting for short bursts of speed

### **i** Information

In the gear lever position display on the tachometer, **D** and **M** light up simultaneously. When manual selection mode is switched on in this manner, it remains engaged in the following cases:

- When cornering (depending on lateral acceleration)
- Overrun
- When the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at an intersection
- The manually selected gear is higher than the gear that the shift strategy would select in automatic mode.

### **i** Information

Manual selection mode is deactivated again in the following cases:

- Automatically after around 6 seconds (not when cornering or in overrun)
- After start-up

## M – Manual selection mode

The gearshift paddles on the steering wheel or the gear lever allow the driver to select the seven forward gears comfortably and safely.



Fig. 89: Manual selection mode


- ▶ Press the gear lever from position **D** to **M**.
  - ➔ The currently engaged gear is retained when switching from **D** to **M**.

When shifting from **M** to **D**, the appropriate gearshift map for the present driving style is selected and the corresponding gear is selected.

### **i** Information

In gear lever position **M**, there is no automatic upshift at the upper speed limit.

### **i** Information

During the warm-up phase, the maximum speed is limited to 7,000 rpm to protect the engine. The symbol is  displayed on the multifunction display during this time. When the maximum engine speed is reached, a warning message appears on the multifunction display. An acoustic signal also sounds.

- ▶ When accelerating or overtaking in selector level position **M**, shift up a gear in a timely fashion before the engine speed limit is reached.



Fig. 90: Steering wheel with shift paddles

### **Upshifting with gear lever or right "+" shift paddle**

- ▶ Pull the gear lever or right shift paddle.

### **Downshifting with gear lever or left "-" shift paddle**

- ▶ Press the gear lever forward or pull the left shift paddle.

### **Shift quickly by actuating the gear lever or shift paddles several times**

The corresponding number of gears can be increased or decreased by actuating the gear lever or the shift paddles several times quickly.

Switching operations that would exceed the upper or lower speed limit are not performed.

### **Shifting to N Neutral with the shift paddles**

- ▶ Pull and hold both shift paddles simultaneously.
  - ➔ The transmission shifts to **N** – Neutral.

The vehicle then rolls in neutral with the engine disengaged and without engine braking. The number on the gear display flashes.

When the shift paddles are released, a transmission gear is engaged again.

### **i** Information

- When Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is switched on, the clutch is closed softly.
- When Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and/or Traction Control (TC) is switched off, the clutch closes hard.

This can result in an unstable driving state.



Fig. 91: Upshift indicator A

## Upshift indicator for fuel consumption-optimized driving

- ✓ Gear lever position **M**.

The fuel economy-oriented upshift indicator **A** helps you to develop a fuel-saving driving style.

Depending on the selected gear, engine speed, and accelerator pedal position, the upshift indicator lights up, prompting you to shift to a higher gear.

- ▶ Shift to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator lights up.

## Driving off with Launch Control

Launch Control is used to achieve maximum acceleration from a standstill.

### **i** Information

Optimum function is only guaranteed on dry tracks and when the tires are at operating temperature.

### **⚠** WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle or endangering other road users

In some situations (poor road conditions, driver inattention, etc.) control over the vehicle may be lost or other road users may be endangered as a result.

- ▶ Use Launch Control preferably on race tracks.
- ▶ Only use Launch Control on public roads if the road and traffic conditions permit.
- ▶ Do not endanger other road users when using Launch Control.

### **i** Information

Stresses on components increase significantly when driving off at maximum acceleration compared to normal driving off.

- ✓ Engine is at operating temperature.
- ✓ Traction Control (TC) switched on.

1. Press brake with your left foot.
2. Quickly depress the accelerator pedal fully and hold it down.
  - ➔ The engine speed levels off above approx. 6,300 rpm.  
A message appears on the multifunction display.
3. Release the brake pedal quickly.

### **i** Information

In the case of upshifts immediately after starting with Launch Control, the motor interventions are prevented for a sporty, comfortable shifting operation. The engine is also operated at full power during the shifting process, and as a result, the dynamic torque increase during gear change is increased again.

## Gear lever emergency release

### NOTE

In the event of emergency release of the gear lever, the vehicle is not secured against rolling away and can endanger people or cause material damage.

- ▶ Before emergency release, activate the electric parking brake and secure vehicle against rolling (e.g. place a wedge underneath).
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Electric parking brake" on page 77.

In the event of an electronics failure, emergency release of the gear lever must be performed in order to move the gear lever to position **N** on vehicles with PDK.

## Gear lever emergency release

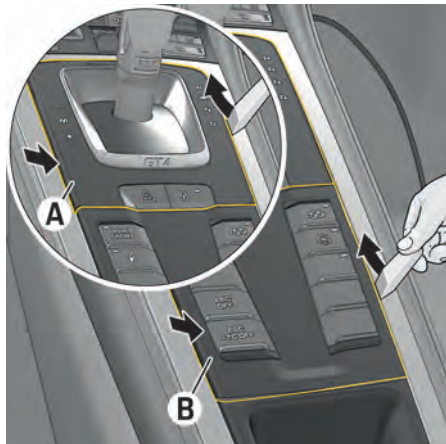


Fig. 92: Removing the gear lever gate and switch module

1. Remove the plastic wedge from the tool box.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.
2. Carefully lever out the gear lever gate **A** in the rear area on both sides (arrows) using the plastic wedge.
3. Lever out the switch module **B** in the front area on both sides (arrows) using the plastic wedge.

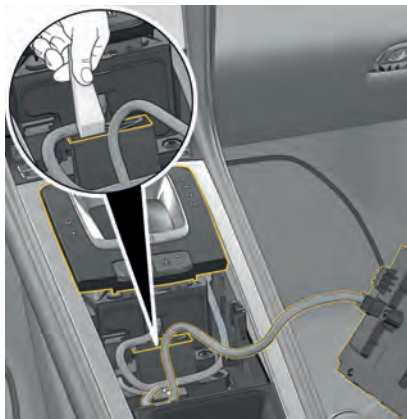


Fig. 93: Releasing gear lever lock

4. Remove the switch module **B** and place to one side. Do not subject the switch module cable to any tension.
5. Press the gear lever lock downward, continue pressing and move the gear lever to the **N** position.

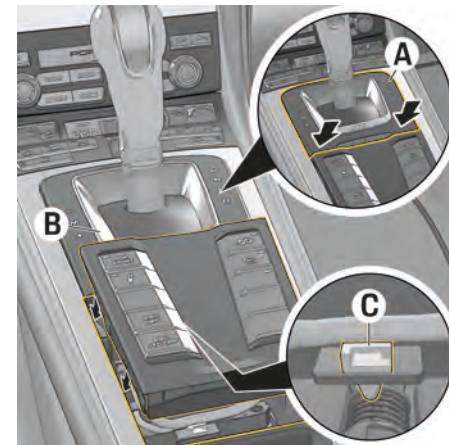


Fig. 94: Installing the switch module and gear lever gate

**Installing the switch module and gear lever gate**

1. Make sure that the cable clip **C** engages correctly in the selector block. Then introduce the switch module **B** into the front guides, insert the module completely and press downward until it audibly engages.
2. Press the gear lever gate **A** downward until it audibly engages.



## Lights

### Setting the light switch

**⚠ WARNING**

Driving without lights

Driving without lights may significantly restrict your visibility and also the ability of other road users to see your vehicle.

- ▶ Carefully monitor the automatic headlights and switch low beam on manually if necessary.
- ▶ Observe country-specific laws for driving with low beam.

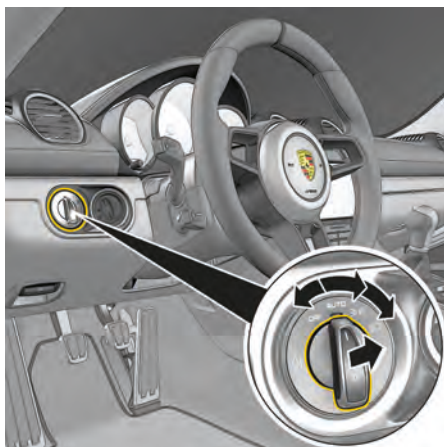


Fig. 95: Light switch

**☀ Light switch**

**OFF Lights off**

When the ignition is switched on, the daytime running lights switch on.

### **AUTO Automatic driving light assistant**

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on in daylight when the ignition is switched on.



#### **Parking lights**

License plate light, instrument lighting and daytime running lights on.



#### **Low beam/driving lights**

Only when ignition on. Fog lights, highway light, daytime running lights and Dynamic high beam are off.



#### **Rear fog lights**

In the low beam position, pull the switch. Indicator lights up.



#### **Information**

- If the vehicle key is removed and the door is opened while the lights are on, an audible signal (gong) warns of possible battery discharge. In some countries, differences are possible due to legal requirements.
- The vehicle exterior lights can fog up due to temperature and humidity. This fogging will dry after a sufficient distance has been driven.


### **Turning automatic headlights/ exterior lights on and off**

#### **Low beams/driving lights**

The low beams are switched on automatically in the light switch position **AUTO** in the following situations:

- Dusk
- Darkness
- Driving through tunnels

- Rain
- Highway driving (vehicles with Porsche Dynamic Light System PDLS)

When the low beam is switched on, the light indicator  in the speedometer lights up.



#### **Information**

Fog is not detected.

- ▶ In the event of fog, switch on driving lights manually.

#### **Rain function**

The driving lights are switched on automatically after 5 seconds of continuous wiper operation. If the wipers have not been used for approx. 4 minutes, the driving lights are switched off, outside conditions permitting.

### **Activate Automatic Coming Home lights**

- ▶ Set light switch to **AUTO**.

The following vehicle lights remain switched on for a certain period to allow the occupants to get in and out of their vehicle with improved visibility and safety in darkness:

- Daytime running lights
- Front door lights in the folded-out exterior mirrors (on vehicles with comfort memory or Light Comfort Package)
- Rear side marker lights
- License plate lights



## Coming Home function (off-delay)

After removing the vehicle key (without Entry & Drive) or after opening the driver's door (with Entry & Drive), the lights remain on for the duration of the off-delay set in the multifunction display.

For information on adjusting the off-delay of the exterior lights on the multifunction display:

▷ Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.

## Entry function/Exit function

When the vehicle is unlocked, the area around the vehicle is illuminated for the duration of the off-delay preset on the multifunction display.

The lights are switched off in the following cases:

- Turning on the ignition
- When the light switch position **AUTO** is changed

For information on adjusting the off-delay of the exterior lights on the multifunction display:

▷ Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.

## Using lights function

### Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS)



**WARNING**

Lack of attention

Responsibility while driving, e.g. manually adjusting the high beam to the light, visibility and traffic conditions, always lies with the driver. The system does not replace the driver's attentiveness.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the vehicle surroundings.
- ▶ If necessary, manually adjust the high beam to the light, visibility and traffic conditions.

Manual intervention may be necessary in the following situations:

- in unfavorable weather conditions, such as rain, fog, snow, ice, heavy spray
- on roads where oncoming traffic is partly hidden, e.g. highways
- where there are poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists
- on narrow bends, steep crests or hollows
- in poorly lit built-up areas
- when encountering strong reflectors, e.g. road signs

▷ Refer to chapter "Car Care" on page 209.

Activating the dynamic cornering light and the highway function in darkness:

- ▶ Turn light switch to setting **AUTO**.

### Dynamic cornering light

From a speed of approx. 8 km/h (5mp/h), the low beam and high beam are swiveled in the direction of the curve to better illuminate the road - depending

on the speed at which you are driving and the size of the steering wheel. In case of a fault in the dynamic cornering light, the PDLS warning light in the instrument panel blinks.

▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Highway function in darkness

The distribution characteristics of the driving lights change when driving in darkness at vehicle speeds above approx. 80 mph (130 km/h).

The light beam becomes longer and the range of vision increases.

### Fog lights

The distribution characteristics of the low beam changes when the rear fog light is switched on at a speed below approx. 43 mph (70 km/h).

The light beam becomes wider and reflected glare is reduced.

### Operating turn signal and high beam lever

The lever can be used to operate the parking lights and flasher as well as the turn signals and high beam.

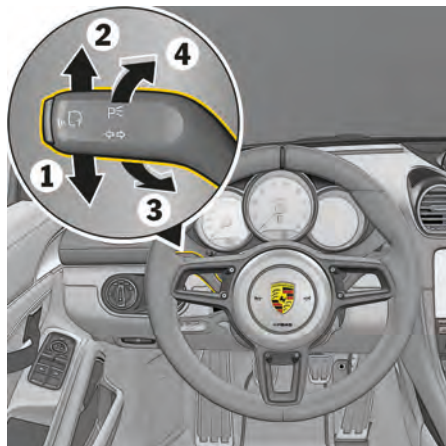


Fig. 96: Turn signal and high beam lever


- 1 Left turn signal
- 2 Right turn signal
- 3 High beam
- 4 Flasher

### Activating turn signals


1. Press the lever past the lower or upper pressure point **1** or **2**.
  - ➔ The turn signal remains active until the lever is returned to the home position either manually or automatically when the steering wheel is turned.
2. Press the lever once to the upper or lower pressure point **1** or **2**.
  - ➔ The turn signal lights blink three times.

### Activating high beam

#### Switching high beam on and off

- ▶ **Activating:** Press the lever once to front pressure point **3**.
  - ➔ Indicator  lights up.
- ▶ **Switching off:** Press the lever once to rear pressure point **4**.

#### Activating flasher

- ▶ Press the lever once to rear pressure point **4**.
  - ➔ Light indicator  comes on briefly.

#### Switching parking light on and off

- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ▶ Press the lever up to **2** or down to **1** to switch on the right or left parking light respectively.

If the parking light is on, a message will appear in the multifunction display after the ignition is switched off and the door is opened.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Turning emergency flasher on and off

**⚠ DANGER** Risk of collision

There is a risk of collision when stopping at a dangerous place.

- ▶ Park the vehicle safely.
- ▶ Leave the vehicle
- ▶ Switch on the emergency flasher, and set up the warning triangle.



Fig. 97: Emergency flasher button in the center console

The emergency flasher also works when the ignition is switched off.

#### Turning emergency flasher on and off

- ▶ Press the emergency flasher switch in the center console.
  - ➔ All turn signal lights and the indicator in the button flash.

#### Deactivating the emergency flasher after emergency braking

If the vehicle is braked to a full standstill from a speed of more than approx. 45 mph (70 km/h), e.g. if suddenly approaching the end of a traffic jam, the emergency flasher is activated automatically and the brake light pulsates during braking.

- ▶ Press the emergency flasher switch on the center console to deactivate the emergency flasher. The emergency flasher is deactivated automatically when the vehicle begins to move again.

## Deactivate hazard warning lights after an accident

In an accident, the emergency flasher is activated automatically.

- ▶ To deactivate the emergency flasher, switch the ignition off and then on again.

## Headlights

### NOTE

The headlights can be damaged as a result of abrasion and excessive temperatures.

- ▶ Do not install any coverings (e.g. stone guards or films) in the headlight area.

### **i** Information

The headlights can fog up due to temperature and humidity. This fogging will disappear after you have driven a sufficient distance.

- ▶ To ensure optimum ventilation, do not cover the gap between the headlight and body.

## Adjusting headlights

- ▶ Adjusting the headlights should only be carried out by an authorized Porsche dealer, using a suitable adjustment tool.

Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Converting headlights with dynamic cornering light for left or right-hand traffic

- ✓ Vehicles with Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus).

When crossing into a country where the traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights must be adjusted in the multifunction display. The low beam will then light the road symmetrically and oncoming drivers will not be blinded.

▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.

### **i** Information

Following adjustment, a message will appear in the multifunction display every time the ignition is switched on.

- ▶ Readjust headlights for the return journey.

### **i** Information

Bi-Xenon main headlights without dynamic cornering light (PDLS) cannot be converted to left or right-hand driving. The light distribution of this headlight type is homogeneous on both sides of the road, which prevents blinding the oncoming drivers.

## Changing LEDs and long-life bulbs

Daytime running lights, front parking lights, turn signal lights, gas discharge lamps for Bi-Xenon headlights, tailgate lights, license plate lights and additional brake light and interior lights are equipped with LEDs or long-life bulbs. The LEDs cannot be changed individually.

Changing long-life bulbs involves a great deal of effort.

- ▶ Have faulty LEDs and bulbs replaced at an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Front axle lift system

### Function

The front axle lift system enables the front end of the vehicle to be raised by approximately 40 mm (leading edge of the front spoiler). This helps prevent damage to the body, such as when entering underground parking garages or driving over speed humps.

### Operational readiness and behavior

- The front axle lift system is ready for operation when the engine is running at standstill or traveling within a system limit of up approx. 37 mph (60 km/h).
- When the vehicle speed is above the system limits, it automatically lowers to normal level again.
- When the vehicle is raised, the damping characteristics on the front axle change and noises can be heard coming from the front axle springs when turning the steering wheel.
- At temperatures below approx. 14°F/-10°C it may take longer to fully raise the front end of the vehicle. In addition, noise levels can be higher.

### Malfunctions in the lift system

Lift system malfunctions are displayed on the multifunction display.

## Raising and lowering front end

### Raising the front end

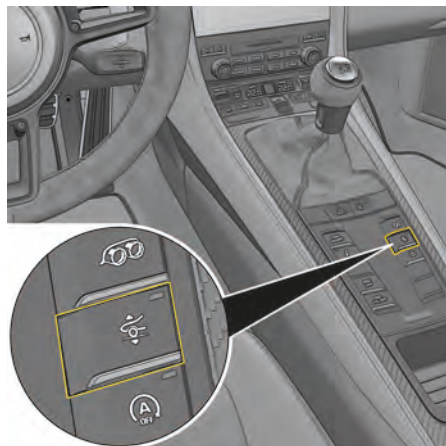



Fig. 98: Lift system button

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ➔ Front end is raised

The light indicator on the button flashes and a message appears on the multifunction display.

When the front end is fully raised:

- The light indicator on the button lights up.
- A notice appears on the multifunction display.
- The word **LIFT** appears on the digital speedometer.


#### NOTE

Risk of damage from unintentional lowering of the front end.

When the engine is idle, the system will lower the front end automatically after a certain time.

- ▶ The vehicle must always be lowered before it is switched off.

### Lowering the front end

- ✓ Doors are closed.
- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ➔ Front end is being lowered

The light indicator on the button flashes and a message appears on the multifunction display.

When the front end is fully lowered:

- The light indicator on the button goes out.
- A notice appears on the multifunction display.
- The word **LIFT** goes out on the digital speedometer.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage if the vehicle hits an obstacle.

- ▶ Only lower the vehicle if there is sufficient ground clearance.

## ParkAssist

### General safety instructions

#### ⚠ WARNING

Inattentive maneuvering or parking

The increased comfort offered by ParkAssist should not induce you to risk your safety. Despite ParkAssist, responsibility for parking and for assessing obstacles lies with the driver. The system cannot replace the driver's attentiveness.

- ▶ Make sure that no persons, animals, or obstacles are within maneuvering range of the vehicle.



#### Information

In the event of a malfunction or fault, the camera image cannot be displayed in PCM. In this case, a black or white screen or a settings display appears when the camera image fades out.

- ▶ Carefully finish parking.
- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

### Operating principle

ParkAssist visually and audibly indicates to the driver the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle during parking and maneuvering (with the corresponding vehicle equipment).

The image of the reversing camera (with the relevant vehicle equipment) is displayed on the PCM.

## Distance measurement



Fig. 99: Ultrasound sensors for distance measurement

The ultrasound sensors **A** in the rear bumpers (if vehicle is fitted with relevant equipment) measure the distance to the nearest obstacle. A detected obstacle is reported through an **intermittent tone**. The intervals shorten as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 12 in. (30 cm), a **continuous tone sounds**.

In the sensor blind spots (above and beneath the sensors, e. g. in the case of objects that are overhanging or close to the ground), obstacles may not be detected.

The warning tone volume can be adjusted in the multifunction display:

▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.

## Activating and deactivating ParkAssist

### Activating ParkAssist

**Automatic activation (up to a speed of approx. 9 mp (15 km/h))**

- ✓ Ignition on.
- ✓ Reverse gear engaged.
  - or –
  - Backwards rolling detected.

### Activating manually

▶ Button **CAR** ▶ Assist ▶ Display ParkAssist

### Deactivating ParkAssist

#### Deactivating manually

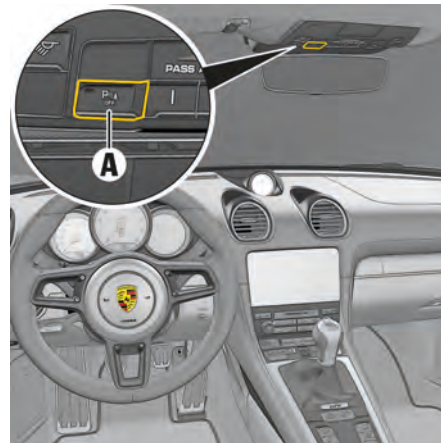


Fig. 100: Button on overhead console

- ▶ Press button **A** in the overhead console.
  - ➔ The light indicator on the button lights up.

There is a blank line on the PCM. Manual reactivation of the display on the PCM is not possible.

### Exceptions

Depending on the model type, ParkAssist cannot recognize the following things:

- Sound-absorbing obstacles (e.g. winter conditions, powder snow, fabric, hide or fur clothing).
- Sound-reflecting obstacles (e.g. glass or smooth painted surfaces).
- Very thin obstacles (e.g. thin posts).

In addition, other ultrasonic sources (e.g. air brakes of other vehicles, sweeping machines and jack hammers) may interfere with obstacle detection.

### Information on maintenance

- ▶ Always keep the sensors free of dirt, ice and snow to ensure that they are always fully functional.
- ▶ Do not damage the sensors by scouring or scratching them.
- ▶ Maintain a sufficient distance when using a high-pressure cleaner. Too much pressure will damage the sensors.
- ▶ Structural vehicle modifications, e.g. license plate/temporary license plate holder, or bent or poorly fitted license plates, can impair operation of the system.

## Rear view camera

### Activating the rear view camera

Automatically

- ✓ Reverse gear engaged and the ignition on.
  - or –
  - Backwards rolling detected.

## Manually

- ▶ Button **CAR** ▶ Assist ▶ Display ParkAssist

## Deactivating the rear view camera

Gear lever in **P** position

## Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)

### General safety instructions

#### Responding to warning messages

Always heed any warning and information messages displayed in the vehicle.

Malfunctions in PASM are shown on the multifunction display. For information on warning messages on the multifunction display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Functionality

Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) is a system for the active adjustment of shock absorbers. Depending on the driving situation and the selected driving program, the required damping forces are provided individually for each wheel. Driving safety, agility, and comfort are maximized.

The following suspension modes can be selected using the PASM button:

- "Normal" suspension: In this mode, the suspension is in a sporty, comfortable configuration.
- "Sport" suspension: In this mode, the chassis setup is optimized for sporty driving on public roads and race tracks.

## Selecting suspension mode

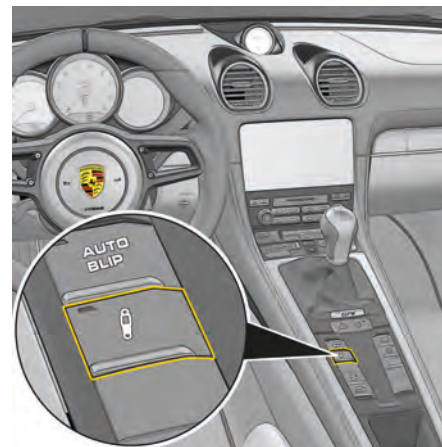


Fig. 101: PASM button in center console

### Select suspension mode with PASM button

- ✓ Ready for operation.
- ▶ Press button (Fig. 101) repeatedly.
  - The button (Fig. 101) **does not light up**: "Normal" suspension (default setting).
  - The button (Fig. 101) **lights up**: "Sport" suspension selection.

The selected suspension mode is also shown briefly in the multifunction display.

### **i** Information

The last selected suspension mode setting is retained even after the ignition is switched off.



## Porsche Stability Management (PSM)

### General safety instructions

#### WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

Despite the advantages of PSM, the driver remains responsible for adapting driving style and maneuvers to the road and weather conditions, as well as to the traffic situation.

The increased safety provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits defined by driving physics cannot be overcome, even with PSM.

PSM does not reduce the risk of accidents due to inappropriate speed.

### Responding to warning messages

Always heed any warning and information messages displayed in the vehicle.

► p. 121

For information on PSM warning lights :

► Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Operating principle

PSM is an active control system for stabilizing the vehicle in the dynamic driving limit range.

The PSM includes the anti-lock braking system (ABS), engine drag torque control (MSR), traction control (TC) and the driving stability controller (ESC), as well as the functions of hydraulic brake assist (HBA) and automatic brake differential (ABD).

- Always leave PSM switched on during "normal" driving operation. This is especially true when the road is wet.

PSM control operations inform the driver of the following attendant symptoms:

- PSM warning light on the instrument panel flashes.
- Hydraulic noise can be heard.
- Vehicle deceleration and a change in steering wheel forces through targeted brake intervention.
- Engine power is reduced.
- Pulsing brake pedal and changes in brake pedal position when braking.

To achieve full vehicle deceleration, the foot pressure must be increased after the brake pedal starts to pulse.

#### Automatic brake differential (ABD)

If one wheel on a driven axle starts to spin, it is braked so that the other wheel on the same axle can be driven.

#### Traction control (TC)

Traction control prevents wheelspin by selectively adjusting engine output, thus ensuring good lane keeping and stable handling.

#### Engine drag torque control (EDTC)

In the event of excessive slip, engine drag torque control prevents all the driven wheels from locking up during overrun. This also applies to downshifts on slippery road surfaces.

## Operating PSM

### Switch off PSM

PSM can be switched off in two stages:

- Stage 1 **ESC OFF**:  
Switch off Electronic Stability Control (ESC).
- Stage 2 **ESC+TC OFF**:  
Also switch off Traction Control (TC).

#### WARNING

No PSM support

There are no stabilizing brake interventions available in both switch-off stages (even when the brakes are actuated).

- Always leave PSM switched on during "normal" driving operation. This is especially true when the road is wet.

However, in exceptional situations it can be advantageous to temporarily switch off:

- On loose ground and deep snow.
- When rocking the vehicle free

## Switch off Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

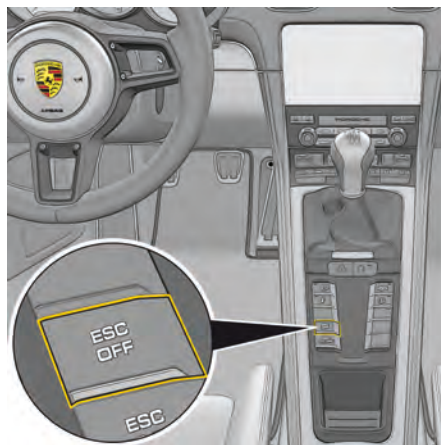


Fig. 102: ESC OFF button in the center console

- ✓ Indicator light for ESC+TC OFF button off.
- ▶ Press and hold the button  $\text{ESC OFF}$  for approx. 1 second.
  - ➔ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is switched off.

The light indicator on the button and the PSM OFF warning light in the instrument panel come on.

A message stating that Electronic Stability Control is switched off appears on the multifunction display. A beeping tone also sounds.

## **i** Information

- When Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is switched off, a more sports-oriented Traction Control (TC) is activated.
- Brake interventions are deactivated.
- ABS remains switched on.

## Activate Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

- ▶ Press the  $\text{ESC OFF}$  button.
  - ➔ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is active immediately.

The indicator light on the button and the PSM OFF warning light on the instrument panel go out.

A message appears on the multifunction display indicating that Electronic Stability Control is switched on.

## Switch off Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control (TC)



Fig. 103: ESC+TC OFF button in the center console

- ▶ Press and hold the button  $\text{ESC +TC OFF}$  for approx. 1 second.
  - ➔ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control (TC) are switched off completely.

The key indicator light, the PSM OFF and the TC OFF warning lights in the instrument panel light up.


A message stating that Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are switched off appears on the multifunction display. A gong also sounds.

### Information

- All PSM functions are deactivated.
- ABS remains switched on.
- If the PSM is deactivated directly using the ESC+TC OFF button, the light indicator on the ESC OFF button also lights up.



## Activate Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control (TC)

### Activate Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

- ▶ Press the  button.
  - ➔ The PSM is immediately active.
    - The key indicator light, PSM OFF and TC OFF warning lights in the instrument panel go out.
    - A message stating that Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are switched on appears on the multifunction display.

### Information

When PSM is switched off, Traction Control (TC) can be switched on separately:

- ▶ Press the  button.
  - Traction Control (TC) is immediately active.
  - The light indicator on the button  and the TC OFF warning light on the instrument panel go out.
  - Electronic Stability Control (ESC) remains switched off.

## Responding to warning messages

For information on the PSM warning light :

▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

## ABS brake system (anti-lock braking system)

### WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

Despite the advantages of ABS, the driver remains responsible for suiting driving style and maneuvers to the road and weather conditions as well as to the traffic situation.

The increased safety provided should not encourage you to take greater risks with your safety. The laws of physics cannot be overridden, even with ABS.

ABS cannot reduce the risk of accidents owing to an inappropriate driving speed.

ABS guarantees:

- Full steering control: Vehicle remains steerable.
- Good driving stability: No skidding due to locked wheels.
- Optimal braking distance: Shortening of braking distance in most cases.
- Prevention of wheel locking: No flat spots on the tires.

## Function

The decisive advantage of ABS lies in the driving stability and maneuverability of the vehicle in danger moments.

The ABS prevents the wheels from locking during full braking in almost all road conditions up to shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill.

ABS begins to take control as soon as one wheel shows a tendency to lock.

The controlled braking process is comparable to cadence braking in very rapid succession.

The driver is warned to adapt the driving speed to the road conditions by a pulsing brake pedal and a "juddering noise".

If full braking is necessary:

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal during the entire braking operation, despite the pulsing pedal. Do not reduce the braking pressure.

## Responding to warning messages

For information on the ABS warning light :

▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

## Windshield wipers

### Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions provided in the "Windshield wipers" section.

In particular, the brief overview is no substitute for safety messages and warnings.

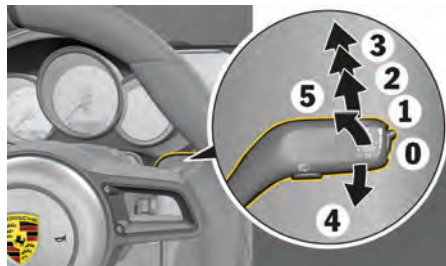


Fig. 104: Windshield wiper lever

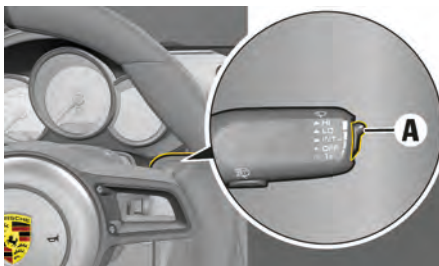


Fig. 105: Switch for rain sensor/intermittent operation sensitivity A

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
<b>Automatic wiping (rain sensor/intermittent mode)</b>	▶ Press the lever to position <b>1</b> .	▶ p. 97
<b>Setting the sensitivity for rain sensor/intermittent mode</b>	▶ Adjust switch <b>A</b> on the right of the lever upward (wipe more often) or downward (wipe less often).	▶ p. 97
<b>Wipe</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Slow: Press the lever to position <b>2</b>.</li> <li>▶ Fast: Press the lever to position <b>3</b>.</li> <li>▶ Once: Push lever to position <b>4</b> (holding lever in position <b>4</b> accelerates wiping action).</li> </ul>	▶ p. 97
<b>Spray and wipe</b>	▶ Pull and hold the lever toward steering wheel to position <b>5</b> .	▶ p. 97
<b>Folding out windshield wipers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Switch off ignition and press wiper lever downward once <b>4</b>.</li> <li>▶ Windshield wipers move upward to approx. 45°.</li> </ul>	▶ p. 97

## General safety instructions

### ⚠ WARNING

Unintentional wiping

Risk of injury when cleaning the windshield. In rain sensor mode, the windshield wipers wipe automatically when water is detected on the windshield.

- ▶ Switch off the windshield wipers before cleaning the windshield.

### NOTE

Risk of damage to the luggage compartment lid, windshield and wiper system.

- ▶ Only wipe the windshield when sufficiently wet, otherwise it could become scratched.
- ▶ Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the windshield by hand before driving.
- ▶ Do not operate a frozen headlight cleaning system.
- ▶ Always switch off windshield wipers in car washes to prevent them from wiping unintentionally (rain sensor mode).
- ▶ Do not operate the headlight cleaning system in car washes.
- ▶ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing wiper blades.
- ▶ Pay attention to the varying length of wiper blades when replacing them.

## Operating windshield wipers

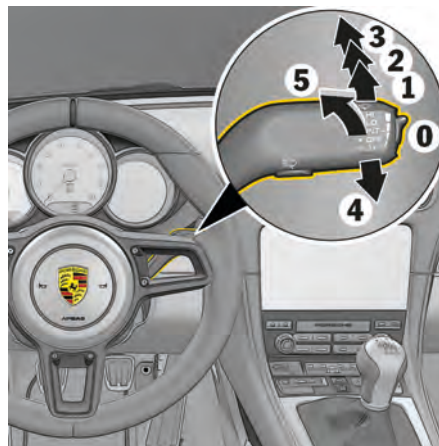


Fig. 106: Windshield wiper lever

### 0 Windshield wipers off

When the windshield wipers or operational readiness are switched off, the wipers move up slightly from their rest position so that the wiping edges are aligned correctly.

### 1 Rain sensor/intermittent operation, windshield wipers

- ▶ Windshield wipers
- ▶ Move wiper lever up to the first stop.

### 2 Windshield wipers slow

- ▶ Press wiper lever up to the second stop.

### 3 Windshield wipers fast

- ▶ Press wiper lever up to the third stop.

### 4 Windshield wipers - one-touch operation

- ▶ Move wiper lever downward. The windshield wipers carry out one wiping cycle.

### 5 Windshield wiper and washer system

- ▶ Pull wiper lever towards the steering wheel. The washer system wipes and sprays while the lever is pulled toward the steering wheel. When the wiper lever is released, a few drying wipes are performed. After every 10 wipes of the windshield, the headlights are cleaned automatically.

### ⓘ Information

Windshield wiper blades in perfect condition are vital for ensuring a clear view.

- ▶ If extremely soiled, repeat the cleaning process.
- ▶ Persistent dirt (e.g. insect remains) should be removed regularly.

For information on car care:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Wiper blades" on page 98.

For information on car care:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Car Care" on page 209.

### Attaching windshield snow covers or sun shades or replacing wiper blades

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and press the wiper lever downward once **4**.
  - ➔ The windshield wipers move upward through approx. 45°.

## Set wiping interval

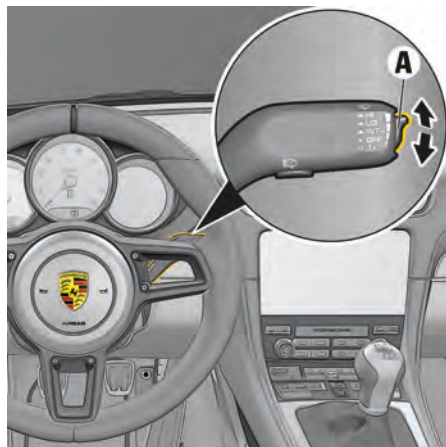


Fig. 107: Switch for rain sensor/intermittent operation sensitivity

In vehicles without a rain sensor, the windshield wipers can be set in four intervals:

### Shortening wiper interval

- ▶ Move switch **A** upward.
  - ➔ The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.

### Lengthening wipe interval

- ▶ Move switch **A** downward.

## Setting rain sensor operation

The amount of rain on the windshield is measured in vehicles featuring a rain sensor. The wiper speed is automatically adjusted accordingly.

At a driving speed below approx. 2.5 mph (4 km/h), rain sensor operation is activated automatically when the windshield wipers are switched on.

If a speed of approx. 5 mph (8km/h) is exceeded, the system switches to the preselected wiper speed.

### **i** Information

- If the wiper lever is already in position **1** when the ignition is switched on, the rain sensor remains activated at speeds above approx. 2.5 mph (4 km/h).
- If the wiper lever is already in position **2** or **3** when the ignition is switched on, the windshield wiper remains switched off until the wiper lever is moved.

### **i** Information

Opening the luggage compartment lid stops the wiper.

- ▶ To switch on the wiper again, press the windshield wiper lever upward/downward.

## Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity manually

The wiper speed can be adjusted manually:

### High sensitivity

- ▶ Move switch **A** upward.
  - ➔ The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.

### Low sensitivity

- ▶ Move switch **A** downward.

## Wiper blades

### NOTE

Accidental swinging back of the wiper arm can damage the windshield.

- ▶ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing wiper blades.

### NOTE

The wiper blades can freeze at low temperatures.

- ▶ Thaw frozen wiper blades and free them from the windshield.

### NOTE

The graphite coating on the wiper blades can be damaged if they are not cleaned properly.

- ▶ Make sure that the cleaning jet of a high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner does not strike the wiper blades.
- ▶ Do not clean wiper blades with a cloth or sponge.
- ▶ Clean wiper blades with clean water **only**.

### NOTE

If the wiper blades are not changed properly, they can become detached when driving.

- ▶ The wiper blades must engage properly in the wiper arm.
- ▶ Check that the wiper blades are seated securely.



## Replacing wiper blades

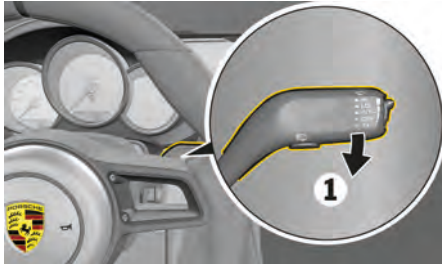


Fig. 108: Wiper lever

The wiper blades should be replaced twice a year (before and after the cold season), if wiper performance deteriorates or if they are damaged.

✓ Ignition switched off.

1. Press the wiper lever downward once (p. 99 , 1).
  - ➡ The wipers move upward to approx. 45°.
2. Change the wiper blades according to the separate manufacturer's installation instructions. Pay attention to the differing lengths of the wiper blades.

### **i** Information

If necessary, visit an authorized Porsche dealer to have this work carried out.

Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Rear spoiler

### General safety instructions

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the rear spoiler.

- ▶ Never pull or push.

## Cruise

### General safety instructions

#### **⚠** WARNING

Unsafe traffic situations and unfavorable road conditions

Using cruise control can lead to an accident if the prevailing traffic situation does not allow you to drive at a sufficient distance and constant speed.

- ▶ Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on winding stretches of road or in unfavorable road conditions (e.g. wintery conditions, wet roads, varying road surfaces).

### Functionality

Cruise control maintains the selected speed constant in the range of approx. 19 mph–149 mph (30 km/h – 240 km/h) without the accelerator pedal having to be depressed.

## Control lever

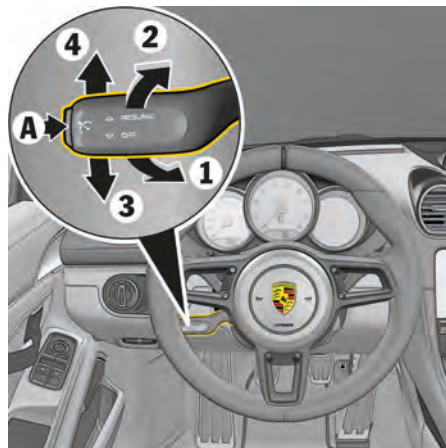


Fig. 109: Cruise control control lever

**A** Switch Adaptive Cruise Control on/off

- 1** Set/increase desired speed
- 2** Reduce desired speed
- 3** Interrupt cruise control operation (OFF)
- 4** Resume stored speed (RESUME)

## Switching cruise control readiness on and off

### Switching on cruise control readiness

- ▶ Press button **A** on the control lever.



#### Cruise control readiness

The gray symbol in the multifunction display indicates readiness. There is no speed stored.

## Switching off cruise control readiness

- ▶ Press button **A** on the control lever.
  - ➔ The memory is cleared and the readiness symbol disappears.

### **i** Information

Switching off the ignition deletes the stored speed.

## Operating cruise control

### Maintain and store speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press the control lever on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).



#### Desired speed

The current speed is displayed under the cruise control symbol, which is now orange, and automatically maintained.

## Changing speed

- ▶ To increase speed, press the control lever on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).
  - Short tap = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
  - Press and hold = 6 mph (10 km/h)
- ▶ To reduce speed, pull the control lever toward the steering wheel (position **2**).
  - Short pull = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
  - Pull and hold = 6 mph (10 km/h)
- ➔ The new set speed is shown on the multifunction display.

### **i** Information

The speed can be increased as usual using the gas pedal. This does not change the stored speed. The stored speed is set again when the gas pedal is released.

## Interrupt cruise control operation – OFF

The maximum speed before the interruption remains stored in memory and can be reactivated by pressing the control lever.

- ▶ Press the control lever down (position **3**)
  - or –
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - or –
  - Move the selector lever to position **N**.

### Cruise control operation is interrupted automatically:

- The vehicle speed is above or below the set speed for a certain time.
- Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is in control mode.

## Resuming the stored speed – RESUME

- ▶ Press the control lever up (position **4**).
- ➔ Cruise control accelerates the vehicle to the stored speed.

# Display and input

## Instrument cluster

### Instrument Panel



Fig. 110: Displays in the instrument panel

#### A – Speedometer

#### B – Tachometer

The start of the red area on the tachometer scale is an optical warning sign for the highest permitted engine speed.

#### C – Multifunction display

▷ Refer to chapter “Multifunction Display” on page 102.

#### D – Reset button for trip distance display and brightness setting, instrument lighting and PCM

▷ Refer to chapter “Instrument and Interior Lighting” on page 56.

## E – Display of total distance and trip distance

The upper display counts the total mileage, the lower display shows individual trips.

The trip mileage display returns to "0" after exceeding 6,213 miles or 9,999 kilometers.

### Manually resetting trip mileage display:

- ▶ Press and hold trip display reset button **D**
  - ▷ (Fig. 110) for approx. 1 second.
- ➔ The trip mileage display is reset to "0".

## F – Digital speedometer

### G – Display upshift prompt

Depending on the selected gear, engine speed and gas pedal position, the fuel economy-oriented upshift indicator lights up, prompting a shift to a higher gear. On vehicles with PDC, the upshifting is only prompted in manual gear select mode.

- ▶ Shift to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator lights up.

## H – Display gear lever position and engaged gear

### I – Location mark of filler flap

The arrow points toward the side of the vehicle on which the filler flap is located.

## J – Fuel gauge

**NOTE**

A lack of fuel can damage the emission control system.

- ▶ Never drive the tank dry.
- ▶ If the warning indicator lights up or the remaining range warning message appears, do not drive around curves at high speed.

The fuel gauge displays the contents of the tank when the ignition is on.

If the vehicle's inclination changes (e.g. driving uphill or downhill), minor deviations may occur on the fuel gauge.

### Fuel reserve warning

If the remaining range falls below a defined level, a warning message is displayed.

- ▶ Refuel at the next opportunity.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Refueling" on page 244.

### **i** Information

The remaining range display is based on the previous fuel consumption and shows the remaining range with consistent handling and driving profile. Modified driving style, steep gradients and operation on urban short distances or with a cold engine can have a significant influence on the achievable remaining range.

## Multifunction Display

Not all functions are explained in detail in this manual. The examples will help you quickly understand the functions and the menu structure.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Setting and operating while driving

Setting and operating the multifunction display, multifunction steering wheel, radio, navigation system, phone, etc. while driving can distract you from the traffic situation and cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Only operate these components while driving if the traffic situation allows.
- ▶ Only perform extensive operations and settings while the vehicle is stationary.



Fig. 111: Location of the multifunction display

### **i** Information

The multifunction display is only usable when the ignition is on.

For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

## Operating multifunction display



Fig. 112: Functions of the steering column control lever

### Selecting menus and functions/options (scroll)

- ▶ Press the control lever down **3** or up **4**.

### Confirm selection (Enter)

- ▶ Press the control lever forward **1**.

### Skipping back one or more selection levels

- ▶ Pull the control lever one or more times toward the steering wheel **2**.

### Skipping directly to the first letter of the desired entry in long phone and audio lists

1. Press and hold the control lever down **3** or up **4**.
  - ➔ A selection of letters is displayed
2. Select the desired first letter.
  - ➔ The cursor skips to the first list entry with the selected first letter.

## Areas on the multifunction display

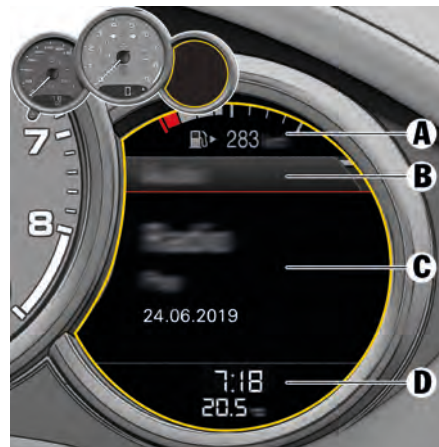


Fig. 113: Areas on the multifunction display

### A / D – Upper and lower status area

Standard information, e.g. compass, time and temperature, is continuously displayed in the upper and lower status areas.

The upper and lower status area displays can be adjusted individually.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display” on page 141.

### B – Heading area with menu indicator

The selected menu item is displayed in the heading area.

The right menu indicator (gray bar) indicates the position of the current menu item in the general menu and indicates how many other items there are at this menu level.

The broader the menu indicator, the fewer menu items are in the current menu.

### C – Information area

The information area displays either the currently available menu items or, if an item is selected, the corresponding information from this item and other selection options.

### Select options and activate functions

An icon precedes whether an option is selected or a function is activated.

#### Select one of several options

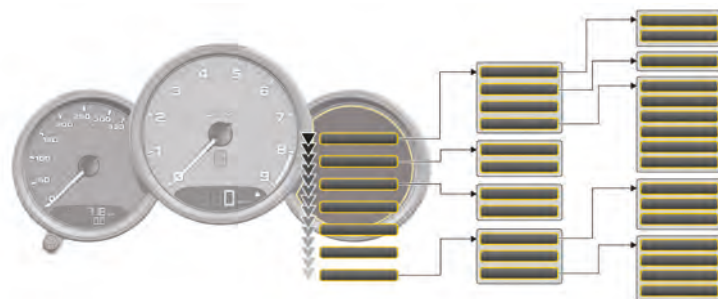
- Option is selected.
- Option is not selected.

#### Activate and deactivate function

- Function is activated.
- Function is deactivated.

## Menu overview

Depending on equipment, the multifunction display can be used to e.g. display vehicle information, control the audio source (radio, iPod®, etc.), measure the oil level, check the tire pressure, use the stopwatch, or operate the navigation system. In addition, numerous vehicle settings can be changed. Certain menus can only be opened when the vehicle is stationary, e.g. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) settings.



Menu	How can I help?	Where?
<b>Vehicle ▶ Info</b>	Display vehicle information (messages, service intervals)	
<b>Vehicle ▶ Oil level</b>	Measuring and displaying engine oil level	▷ p. 206
<b>Vehicle ▶ Limits</b>	Set a speed limit	
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Indicator</b>	Adjusting the multifunction display format	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date &amp; time</b>	Adjust the date and time	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light &amp; visibility</b>	Adjust the exterior and interior lighting, visual reversing aids and wipers	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Steering wheel operation ▶ ◊ button</b>	◊ button on the multifunction steering wheel	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Lock</b>	Adjust the locking and unlocking settings	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning</b>	Adjust the air conditioning settings	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Volume</b>	Adjust the volume of warning signals and ParkAssist	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Units</b>	Adjust the units for the vehicle displays	▷ p. 141



Menu	How can I help?	Where?
<b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Language</b>	Setting language	▷ p. 141
<b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Reset</b>	Reset the vehicle to factory settings	▷ p. 141
<b>Audio</b>	Select the radio station or track from the active audio source	
<b>Phone</b>	Operate the phone	▷ p. 168
<b>Map</b>	Display and adjust the map display	▷ p. 155
<b>Navigation</b>	Use the navigation system	▷ p. 155
<b>Trip</b>	Display and reset the trip data	
<b>Tire pressure</b>	Display tire pressure and perform tire settings	▷ p. 218
<b>Chrono</b>	Measure times with the stopwatch	▷ p. 162
<b>Gear shift assist</b>	Use gear shift assist	
<b>G-Force</b>	Display longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces	

## Display vehicle information.

### Display messages

#### ▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **Info** ▶ **Messages**

- ➔ Existing alerts or vehicle messages are displayed.

The warning symbol in the lower status area provides information about the number of existing warnings.

If more than one warning exists, the driver can browse the message list.

### Displaying service intervals

The display contains information about when the next service is due.

1. **Vehicle** ▶ **Info** ▶ **Service interval**
2. Select the desired service interval.

### Set a speed limit

If a speed limit is set and activated, a warning message appears when the limit is exceeded. For example, a speed limit can be used as a reminder of the maximum permitted speed for a particular type of tire that has been fitted.

1. **Vehicle** ▶ **Limits** ▶ **Limit 1** or ▶ **Limit 2**
2. Select the required limit.
  - **Current speed**.: Set the current driving speed.
  - **Manual**: Set the value for the desired speed.
  - **Active**:
    - Speed limit activated.
    - Speed limit deactivated.

## Drive with gear shift assist



Fig. 114: Example of the next gear

When all the segments are filled in red, a + sign appears next to the engaged gear in the display as a prompt to shift to the next-higher gear.

- ✓ Gear lever position **M** selected.
- ▶ Select the **Gear shift assistant** menu.

### **Information**

The display only appears at higher speeds.

## G-Force display



Fig. 115: Example of acceleration forces

- ▶ Select the **G-Force** menu.
  - ➔ The current longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces are displayed in graphic form as a pie chart.

### Displaying the maximum longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces achieved

- ▶ **G-Force** ▶ **Maximum G-force**

### Resetting the maximum longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces achieved

- ▶ **G-Force** ▶ **Maximum G-force** ▶ **Reset**

## Performance menu



Fig. 116: Example torque

- ▶ **Performance** ▶ **Power or torque**
  - ➔ The current power or torque is displayed graphically as a function of speed.

## Trip Information Display

In the Trip menu, a variety of trip data can be displayed, e.g. journey time, distance traveled, average speed or average fuel consumption.

For information on operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

For information on using the multifunction display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.


## Displaying trip information on the multi-function display

1. Select the **Trip** menu.
  2. Select an entry from the list:
- **Since:** Trip data since the last time the vehicle was started. The driving data is reset automatically once the vehicle has remained stationary for 2 hours (with the ignition switched off).  
**Total:** The trip data is continuously added together until it is reset. The driving data is retained even if the vehicle is parked for an extended period (with the ignition switched off).  
**To destination:** When route guidance is active, the trip data is calculated and displayed until the navigation destination is reached.

## Resetting trip information via the multifunction display

1. **Trip ▶ Reset**
  2. Select an entry from the list:
- **since**
  - **total**
  - **all:** Reset the **Since** and **Total** trip data.

## Displaying and resetting trip data in PCM


1. **Button CAR ▶ Trip** 
2. Scroll (swipe) to the desired display level:

- **Personal trip:** The trip data can be compiled individually in four data fields.
- **Trip since:** Trip data since the last time the vehicle was started. The driving data is reset automatically once the vehicle has remained stationary for 2 hours (with the ignition switched off).
- **Total trip:** The trip data is continuously added together until it is reset. The driving data is retained even if the vehicle is parked for an extended period (with the ignition switched off).

3. Select **Reset** to reset the desired trip data.

## Adjusting content of the personal display in PCM

The content of the individual data fields can be combined in the **Personal trip** menu. It is possible to choose between general information, such as date, time or outside temperature and different data fields from the navigation area, such as arrival times, average speeds or consumption data and a number of vehicle parameters.

1. **Button CAR ▶ Trip**  **▶ Personal trip ▶ Config**
2. Select the data field to be changed.
3. Select the desired contents for the data field.

### Information

If the menu item **Distance to next gas station** is assigned to the data field, briefly pressing the symbol displayed on the touchscreen starts route calculation to this service station.

Select to start route guidance to this gas station.

## Warning lights and light indicators

### NOTE

When the ignition is switched on, all warning lights and some light indicators light up briefly. Faults are indicated by the warning lights.

Consult an authorized Porsche dealer in the following cases:

- ▶ The warning light lights up or flashes while the engine is running or while driving.

Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

### Information

The relevant warning light goes out only when the cause of the fault has been rectified.



### Airbag warning light

The airbag system may be faulty

- ▶ Have the fault rectified immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer..<sup>1</sup>
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Airbag Systems" on page 53.

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.



## Seat belt warning light

The seat belt is incorrectly fastened or not fastened.

- ▶ Fasten the seat belt correctly.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Seat Belts" on page 68.



## Brake system warning light (Canada)

Warning light **flashes**: Parking brake is faulty.

- ▶ If the fault occurs repeatedly or continuously, have it remedied as soon as possible by a qualified specialist repair shop.<sup>1</sup>
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 76.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Brake Fluid" on page 201.



## Electric parking brake warning light

The warning light **lights up** continuously: Parking brake is faulty.

- ▶ If the fault occurs repeatedly or continuously, have it remedied as soon as possible by a qualified specialist repair shop.<sup>1</sup>
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Stability Management (PSM)" on page 93.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 76.



## Anti-lock brake system warning light (Canada)

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) or Porsche Stability Management (PSM) has failed. The power brakes may be faulty.

Continued driving possible with restriction/adjustment.

- ▶ Avoid abrupt braking where possible. Allow a longer braking distance.
- ▶ Have the fault remedied as soon as possible by a qualified specialist repair shop.<sup>1</sup>
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Stability Management (PSM)" on page 93.

## **BRAKE** Brake system warning light (USA)



## Brake system warning light (Canada)

The warning light **lights up** continuously: The parking brake is applied or the brake system is faulty.

If the brake system is faulty:

- ▶ Immediately park vehicle safely.
- ▶ Do not continue driving, stop when it is safe to do so, switch off the engine.
- ▶ Call a roadside assistance service and have the vehicle towed if necessary.
- ▶ Have the fault rectified immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer..<sup>1</sup>
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 76.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Brake Fluid" on page 201.

## **BRAKE** Brake system warning light (USA)



## Porsche Stability Management warning light

Warning light **flashes**: Porsche Stability Management (PSM) control operation.

Refer to chapter "Porsche Stability Management (PSM)" on page 93.

The warning light **lights up** continuously: Porsche Stability Management (PSM) failure.

Continued driving possible with restriction/adjustment.

- ▶ Avoid sharp acceleration and braking and high cornering speeds at the limit.
- ▶ If the fault occurs repeatedly or continuously, have it remedied as soon as possible by a qualified specialist repair shop.<sup>1</sup>
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Stability Management (PSM)" on page 93.

## **ABS** Anti-lock brake system warning light (USA)

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

**PCM OFF warning light**

Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is deactivated.

Continued driving possible with restriction/adjustment.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Stability Management (PSM)" on page 93.

**Tire pressure warning light**

During the learning process for newly mounted wheels or tire pressure sensors, the warning light may flash or light up in case of pressure loss in one or more tires, a fault or a temporary malfunction of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

- ▶ Reduce your speed and adapt your driving style to the situation. Avoid forceful braking and steering maneuvers.
- ▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so, and switch off the engine: Check the relevant tire for damage. Fill in sealant if required. Set the correct tire pressure at the next opportunity.
- ▶ If the fault occurs repeatedly or continuously, have it corrected immediately by a qualified specialist repair shop.<sup>1</sup>
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.

**Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS Plus) warning light**

The Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS) function is faulty.

Continued driving possible with restriction/adjustment.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.
- ▶ If the fault occurs repeatedly or continuously, have it remedied as soon as possible at a qualified specialist repair shop.<sup>1</sup>

**Emission control warning light (Check Engine)**

The warning lights may flash or light up for malfunctions (e.g. engine misfiring) that could cause increased pollutant emissions or consequential damage.

- ▶ Reduce engine speed and load immediately.
- ▶ If possible, stop in a safe place. Make sure that combustible materials, such as dry grass or leaves, cannot come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▶ Note measures for emission control faults.

**Warning light ESC off Warning light TC OFF****SPORT PDK SPORT mode indicator light****High beam light indicator**

High beam switched on.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Lights" on page 86.

**Low beam light indicator**

Low beam switched on.

**Light indicator for rear fog light**

Rear fog light switched on.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Lights" on page 86.

**Left turn signal****Right turn signal**

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

## Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

### Brief overview



This brief overview is not a substitute for the complete information provided in "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)". In particular, the brief overview is no substitute for safety messages and warnings.







Fig. 117: Switching PCM on/off



Fig. 118: Touchscreen, Home menu

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Switch on PCM	▶ Switch on the ignition or press volume control <b>A</b> (Fig. 117).	–
Turn off PCM	▶ Switch off the ignition or press and hold volume control <b>A</b> (Fig. 117).	–
Adjust volume	▶ Turn volume control <b>A</b> (Fig. 117).	–
Mute the audio source	▶ Press volume control <b>A</b> (Fig. 117) briefly.	–
Open main menu e.g. Radio	▶ Press button, e.g. <b>TUNER</b>	–
Open sound settings	▶ <b>Button HOME</b> ▶ <b>OPT</b> ▶ <b>SET SOUND</b> ▶ <b>Volume</b>  or ▶ <b>Sound</b> 	▶ p. 112



What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Open Device Manager/establish connection	▶ Select  or  in the footer (see <b>B</b> ▶ (Fig. 118)).	▶ p. 145
Change date and time	▶ Select time <b>9:34</b> in the footer (see <b>C</b> ▶ (Fig. 118)).	▶ p. 112
Open and configure MyScreen	▶ Button <b>HOME</b> ▶ MyScreen 	▶ p. 112
Change system settings	▶ Button <b>HOME</b> ▶ Set 	▶ p. 112
Play music from SD card	▶ Inserting an SD card ▶ Button <b>SOURCE</b> ▶ Select desired media source.	▶ p. 112
Play music from an external device	▶ Connect external device via USB, AUX (dependent on equipment and country) or Bluetooth® ▶ Button <b>SOURCE</b> ▶ Select desired media source.	▶ p. 112

## Porsche Communication Management (PCM) display content

### Touchscreen controls



Fig. 119: Touchscreen controls

#### A Home screen

Displays available functions when button **HOME** is pressed.

#### B Functions for each main menu

The toolbar contains various submenus, depending on which main menu is active.

#### C Footer

Functions for each main menu, connection symbols and the configurable temperature or time display.

#### D Display of time or temperature

▶ Refer to chapter “Operating PCM” on page 112.

#### E Title bar

For example, display of selected radio and media source.

## F Opening Device Manager

(connect phone, show WiFi settings and set up wireless Internet access, connect Bluetooth® devices, show Apple CarPlay® and app connection status).

▶ Refer to chapter “Opening Device Manager” on page 145.

## G Controller

Displays additional functions when nearing the touchscreen.

## H Show more pages

Display more pages by scrolling (swiping).

## Operating PCM

### Important information for users

Porsche Communication Management (PCM) is the central control unit for the radio, media, sound settings, navigation, and phone.

For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

The following safety notes must be observed to ensure no one is put in danger or harmed when using PCM:

### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident

Using PCM can distract you from traffic.

- ▶ Only operate PCM if the traffic situation allows. If in doubt, stop when it is safe to do so and operate PCM while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Select appropriate volume settings to ensure that external sounds, such as emergency vehicle sirens (e.g. police, ambulance), are easily audible at all times.

### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident

When braking, rapidly accelerating, changing direction, or in an accident, unsecured or incorrectly positioned devices may slip and endanger the occupants.

- ▶ Ensure all objects are secured inside the vehicle before driving.
- ▶ Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.

### i Information

To protect the vehicle battery, PCM switches off automatically a few minutes after the ignition is switched off.

### Switching PCM on/off



Fig. 120: Switching PCM on/off

- ▶ Switching on the ignition activates PCM.
- ▶ Independently of this, by pressing the volume control A (Fig. 120), PCM can be switched on, and can be switched off by pressing and holding.

## Operating PCM using the touchscreen

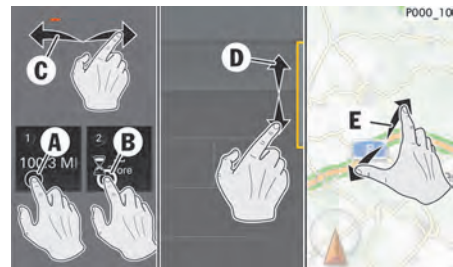


Fig. 121: Operation using the touchscreen

### A Tap (select)

Briefly press the touch display with your finger.

Example: Select function or activate/deactivate checkbox.

### B (Long press)

Press the touch screen with your finger for longer.

Example: Save station in the main menu **TUNER**.

### C Horizontal swipe

Swipe the touch display horizontally with your finger.

Example: Display more pages of radio stations.

### D Vertical swipe (scroll)

Swipe the touch display vertically with one finger.

Example: Manually scrolling through lists.

**E Zoom**

Move two fingers further apart or closer together. Double tap the touch screen enlarges the section.

Example: Zoom in on map.

**Operate PCM with the rotary push button**



P100\_67

Fig. 122: Rotary/push button

1. Turn the rotary/push button until the desired function is highlighted.
2. Press the rotary/push button to activate the highlighted function.

**Opening menus**

**Opening main menu directly**

- ▶ Press button on PCM (e.g. **TUNER**).

**i Information**

You can change from one main menu to another at any time. When you return to a main menu, the content that was open before you exited is displayed again.

**Opening main menu via the Home menu**

1. Button **HOME** ▶ Menu
2. Select main menu (e.g. **Tuner**).

**Opening settings for each function**

- ✓ The desired main menu is selected (e.g. **TUNER**).

- ▶ Press button **OPT**.
  - ➔ Settings and further functions of the relevant menu are displayed.

**Setting date and time**

The time display provides you with quick access to the date and time settings.

- ▶ Select time **9:34** in the footer.

▶ Refer to chapter “Vehicle Settings Using the Multi-function Display” on page 141.

**Entering text and characters**

When text or characters need to be entered, an input field appears, e.g. to enter a destination or search term.

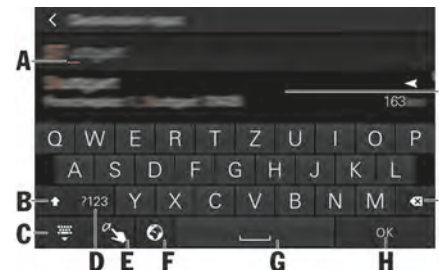


Fig. 123: Touchscreen keyboard

- A** Current cursor position
- B** Switch caps lock on/off (toggle between upper and lower case)
- C** Show and hide the keyboard
- D** Change between letters, numbers and special characters
- E** Freehand entry (enter letters or characters using the touch display)
- F** Adapt keyboard (country-dependent availability)
- G** Insert space
- H** Confirm entry
- I** Delete entry
- J** List of suggestions

There are various ways of entering text and characters:

**Entry via the keyboard**

1. Select an input field to open the touchscreen keyboard.
2. Enter desired text or characters.

## Entry via rotary/push button


1. Turn rotary push button (Fig. 122) until the desired letter or character is highlighted.
2. Press rotary push button to apply the highlighted letter or character.

## Enter using the freehand field



Fig. 124: Freehand input

The freehand input feature has handwriting recognition and enables the writing of text and characters directly with the finger.


1.  Select to open freehand input.
2. Write the desired characters with your finger.
3. To enter a space, swipe your finger from left to right.
4. To delete the entry, swipe your finger from right to left.

### Information

Texts and numbers can also be entered via voice control (e.g., when dialing a phone number or when entering a navigation destination).

► Refer to chapter "Voice Control" on page 114.

## Opening apps

The **Apps**  menu provides access to Porsche Connect services and functions.

- Button **HOME** ► **Apps** 



► Refer to chapter "Important information about Porsche Connect" on page 175.

## Show background image



A background image can be shown or hidden in the menu **HOME**.

- Button **HOME** ► Button **OPT** ► **Show background image**

## Change general system settings

- Button **HOME** ► Set  ► **System** ► **Select desired setting**  
– or –  
Button **CAR** ► Set  ► **System** ► **Select desired setting**

## Changing PCM display settings

- Button **HOME** ► Set  ► **PCM Display** ► **Select desired setting**  
– or –  
Button **CAR** ► Set  ► **PCM Display** ► **Select desired setting**

## Voice Control

### Functionality

 **WARNING** Accident risk

Do not use voice control in emergencies as your voice can change in stressful situations. This could lead to the desired phone connection not being established, or not being established fast enough.

- Enter the emergency number using PCM.

Various functions of the **PHONE TUNER**, **NAV** and **MEDIA** main menus can be called up via voice command. The voice control function adapts to the speaker and learns from the very first dialog.

► Refer to chapter "Using voice control" on page 115.

### Information

- The **Sound** and **CAR** main menus cannot be voice operated.
- The voice control function does not support all system languages.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

► Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

## Using voice control

### Opening voice control

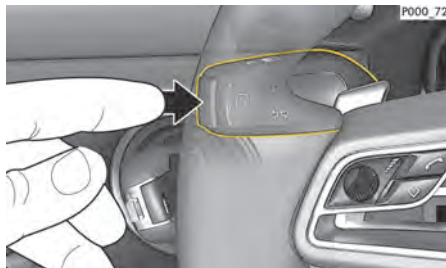





Fig. 125: Voice control button on the control lever


### Starting voice control

- ✓ Ignition on.
  - ✓ No active telephone call.
  - ✓ ParkAssist not active.
1. Press the  button on the (Fig. 125) control lever.
    - ➔ A rising signal tone is heard and the voice control  symbol appears on PCM.
  2. Say the voice command.

### Ending voice control

- ✓ Voice control active.
- ▶ Press the  button on the (Fig. 125) control lever.
    - ➔ A fading acoustic signal sounds.
    - or –
    - Say the voice command **Cancel** or **End**.
    - or –
    - Press any button on PCM.

### Further voice control button functions

The button  (Fig. 125) on the control lever activates various functions, depending on the application:

- Activated by briefly pressing the PCM voice control.
- Activated by pressing and holding Siri voice recognition.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Operating Apple CarPlay with the PCM" on page 179.
- Ends ongoing notices from the voice control function.
- Jumps to the next part of the notice.
- Cancels an ongoing dialog.

### Information


- Navigation announcements and traffic notices are not issued during a dialog.
- When the voice control function is activate, list entries can be selected using voice control, the rotary push button or the touchscreen.
- If the spoken voice command is not understood or cannot be interpreted, voice control responds with the question **Excuse me?** after which the voice command can be repeated. After the second attempt, PCM offers help.
- Depending on the selected menu language and the selected country (via the **button Menu NAV ▶ Destination input**), destinations may have to be spelled out when inputting.

To ensure problem-free communication with the voice control function, follow these points:

- Speak clearly and at a normal volume.
- Speak louder at higher speeds.

- Stress voice commands evenly, without long pauses.
- Do not speak when the voice control is making an announcement.
- Reduce disruptive noises by closing doors, windows and sunroof.
- Only use voice control as the driver, as the hands-free microphone is directed to the driver's side.

### Adjusting voice control



1. **Button** **CAR ▶ SET**  **▶ System ▶ Voice control**

2. Select the desired setting:


- **Short dialog:** When this function is active, the voice response uses short phrases.
- **Help texts:** When this function is activate, available voice commands are displayed.

### Requesting help

#### Call up visual input assistance

1. Press the  button on the (Fig. 125) control lever. A list of sample commands is displayed in PCM.
2. Select the icon  in the PCM footer.
3. To display sample commands in each main menu, select the icon or sample command of the respective main menu in PCM.

## Information

If the **Help texts** function is deactivated, the visual input assistance can be displayed via the icon  in the title bar.

► Refer to chapter "Using voice control" on page 115.

## Calling up audible input help

✓ Voice control active.

► Say **Help**.

– or –

Say **Help on voice control**.

– or –

Say, e.g. **Help on tuner**, **Help on media**. One input help per main menu is given.

## Saying voice commands

In principle, there are three types of voice commands that can be given:

- Global voice commands
- General voice commands
- Dialog-specific voice commands

The voice commands shown are a selection of all those available. Where available, the system also recognizes synonyms. For example, instead of saying **Call John Doe** you can also say **Phone John Doe** or **Dial John Doe**.

► Refer to chapter "Using voice control" on page 115.

## Saying global voice commands

Global voice commands are all those which call up specific functions. Global voice commands can always be used, regardless of the main menu selected. This makes it possible to call up a function directly, without first having to switch to the relevant main menu. If, for example, the **NAV** main menu is active and the voice command **Station** e.g. **Radio station XY** is said, the said station is called up. Examples of global voice commands:

– **Station** e.g. **Radio station XY**

– **Call** e.g. **Doe**

## Saying general voice commands

General voice commands may be given at any point in the dialog. Examples of general voice commands:

– **New input**: Restarts voice control.

– **Correction**: If, for example, a phone number has been entered in several blocks (e.g. 0711 911), voice control deletes the last block entered.

– **Help**: An input help list with possible voice commands is displayed.

– **Cancel**: The dialog is canceled.

## Saying dialog-specific voice commands

Dialog-specific voice commands are required as soon as a dialog with PCM begins. These include, for example, the following voice commands:

- **Line 1**
- **Next page/previous page**
- **Yes/No**

## Operating list by voice

### Scrolling through a list

► To browse further/back through a list, say **Next page/previous page**.

– or –

Using lists via touchscreen or rotary push button.

### Say a list entry

Blue list items can be spoken. Otherwise, list items can be opened using the blue line numbers.

► Say the voice command **line 1**.



## Global voice commands for radio

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Notice
Switch reception range	<b>Tuner</b> e.g. FM/AM ( <b>Set/switch on</b> )	
Selecting a station	<b>Select station</b>	Only currently available stations can be said.
Setting a currently available station	<b>Station</b> e.g. <b>Station XY (turn on)</b>	Direct selection of a frequency may change the reception range.
Enter frequency	<b>Frequency</b> e.g. <b>91.1 FM (play)</b>	
Requesting help	<b>Help on tuner</b>	Acoustic help on the most important tuner functions.

## Global voice commands for Media

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Notice
Change media source (availability dependent on country)	<b>Play</b> e.g. <b>SD card/USB/AUX/Jukebox/Bluetooth®</b>	
Select artist directly	<b>Play (artist)</b> e.g. <b>Allan Taylor</b>	Only performers/albums/titles/genres that are present in the active media source can be spoken.
Select album directly	<b>Play (album)</b> e.g. <b>Songs for the road</b>	
Select track directly	<b>Play (track)</b> e.g. <b>Let the music flow</b>	
Select genre directly	<b>Play (genre)</b> e.g. <b>Rock</b>	
Play music similar to what is now playing	<b>Play similar music</b>	
Requesting help	<b>Help on Media</b>	Acoustic help on the most important media functions.
Using natural voice commands (availability dependent on country)	Example: <b>I would like to listen to Jukebox</b> <b>I want to hear rock music</b>	As an alternative to specific commands, PCM recognizes natural voice commands.

## Global voice commands for Telephone

✓ Telephone connected to PCM.

▷ Refer to chapter "Phone" on page 165.

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Notice
Opening the redial feature	<b>Redial</b>	
Enter phone number	<b>Dial number</b>	The system will ask for the telephone number.
Call voicemail	<b>Call voicemail</b>	
Call saved contact	<b>Call contact/Show contacts</b>	The system will ask for the contact's name.
Open call history	<b>Call history/missed calls/received calls/dialed numbers</b>	Voice commands result in a global call history from which an entry can be selected or called.
Call saved contact	<b>Call e.g. Doe (cell/private/work/general)</b>	If the contact is not clear, the command leads to the dialog. The first name, last name or both can be spoken. A contact's specific phone number can also be selected.
Read out messages	<b>Read out (new) text message</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ The connected smartphone or phone supports the function.</li> <li>✓ Active data connection available.</li> </ul> <p>▷ Refer to chapter "Important information about Porsche Connect" on page 175.</p> <p>These services are not available in all languages and markets.</p>
Message Dictation (availability dependent on country)	<b>Dictate text message/dictate email</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ The connected phone or smartphone supports the function.</li> <li>✓ Active data connection available.</li> </ul> <p>▷ Refer to chapter "Important information about Porsche Connect" on page 175.</p> <p>Service cannot be used with Apple® devices.</p>

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Notice
Requesting help	<b>Help on Telephone</b>	Acoustic help on the most important telephone functions.
Using natural voice commands (availability dependent on country)	Examples: <b>I would like to call John Doe.</b> <b>Call John Doe on his cell phone.</b> <b>Who called me</b> <b>Redial the last number.</b>	As an alternative to specific commands, PCM recognizes natural voice commands.

### Global voice commands for Navigation

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Notice
Enter new destination	<b>Take me to</b> e.g. <b>Stuttgart Porscheplatz 1/Enter address/Enter new destination</b>	Depending on the country selected, you can navigate by saying <b>Drive me to</b> in one sentence or step by step.
Select last destination	<b>Last destinations/stored destinations</b>	
Select Home/Work as destination	<b>Take me home/Take me to work</b>	Starts navigating to the saved address. For information on storing the address: ▷ Refer to chapter "Using Navigation" on page 155.
Destination or Search for Point of Interest	<b>Search for (Point of Interest)</b> e.g. <b>Porsche Service</b>	Brand names or Point of Interest categories may be spoken (e.g. Search for Point of Interest, airport).
Search online for destination (availability dependent on country)	<b>Online search/Internet search</b>	✓ Active data connection available. ▷ Refer to chapter "Important information about Porsche Connect" on page 175.
Select country (availability dependent on country)	<b>Enter country/change country</b>	
Select city	<b>Enter city</b>	

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Notice
Find restaurant/rest area/restroom/ATM/gas station	<b>Next restaurant/rest area/restroom/ATM/gas station</b>	Shows the respective search criterion in the vicinity.
Start/stop route guidance	<b>Start/stop route guidance</b>	
Determine remaining fuel quantity	<b>Range/remaining range/fuel information</b>	
Retrieving traffic information (availability dependent on country)	<b>Traffic information</b>	✓ Route guidance on
Check arrival time	<b>When will I arrive/time of arrival</b>	✓ Route guidance on
Calculate alternative route/Avoid traffic jams (availability dependent on country)	<b>Calculate alternative routes/avoid traffic jams</b>	After alternative routes are calculated, you can choose, e.g. via <b>Route 2</b> or via the alternative route's color in the map view, e.g. <b>green</b> .
Requesting help	<b>Help on Navigation</b>	Acoustic help for the most important navigation functions.
Using natural voice commands (availability dependent on country)	<p>Examples: <b>Drive me to e.g. Stuttgart Porscheplatz 1.</b></p> <p><b>Drive me to the next restaurant</b></p> <p><b>Take me home</b></p> <p><b>Where is the next gas station?</b></p> <p><b>I need to refuel.</b></p> <p><b>Show me the map.</b></p> <p><b>Are there traffic jams on the route?</b></p>	As an alternative to specific commands, PCM recognizes natural voice commands.

## Warning and Information Messages

If a warning message appears, refer to the corresponding chapters in this manual!






When certain warning lights appear, an additional acoustic signal sounds.

Warning messages are only possible if all measurement conditions are satisfied therefore check all fluid levels regularly.













### Classes of Warning and Information Messages

<b>Red</b>	System failure or warning
<b>Yellow</b>	Malfunction, system fault, information or notice
<b>White</b>	Malfunction, system fault, information or notice

### Safety















Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
 lights up	 <b>Fasten seat belt</b>	The seat belt is not fastened. ▶ Fasten seat belt
	 <b>Passenger airbag switched on/off</b>	The passenger airbag is switched on or off.
	 <b>Airbag pilot lamp failure Service required</b>	The airbag warning light has failed. Driving permitted. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer. <sup>1</sup>
	 <b>Move steering wheel</b>	The load on the steering lock is too high. Driving permitted. ▶ Relieve the steering lock by turning the steering wheel to the left or right.

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.











Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p><b>Steering wheel locks with door locks</b></p>	<p>Steering wheel lock is not active.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Lock doors to lock the steering wheel.</li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Power steering fail More effort needed Driving permitted</b></p>	<p>Power steering is not available. Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Power steering re- stricted Restricted driving per- mitted with adjustment</b></p>	<p>Steering support is temporarily reduced.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Driving permitted.</li> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> lights up	  <p><b>Brake fluid level Parking vehicle safely</b></p>	<p>The brake fluid level is too low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> lights up	  <p><b>Brake distribution fault. Parking vehicle safely</b></p>	<p>The brake force distribution is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> lights up	  <p><b>Brake cooling defect</b></p>	<p>The brake temperature is too high.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.













Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
 <b>ABS</b> lights up	 <b>ABS</b>	<p><b>ABS/PSM failure</b>                      Restricted driving permitted with adjustment</p> <p>ABS or Porsche Stability Management (PSM) failure.                      Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> lights up	 <b>BRAKE WEAR</b>	<p><b>Replace brake pad wear limit</b>                      Driving permitted</p> <p>Brake pads are worn.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the brake pads replaced immediately.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> flashes	 <b>PARK</b>	<p><b>Emergency braking</b></p> <p>Electric parking brake is in emergency braking mode.                      Symbols go out after emergency braking.</p>
 lights up	 <b>PARK</b>	<p><b>Parking brake fault</b></p> <p>Parking brake is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>PARK</b>	<p><b>Electric parking brake in service mode</b></p> <p>Parking brake in Service mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> flashes	 <b>PARK</b>	<p><b>Release parking brake</b></p> <p>Parking brake is activated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Pull the electric parking brake button.</li> <li>▶ Refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 76.</li> </ul>
 <b>BRAKE</b> lights up	 <b>PARK</b>	<p><b>Press brake pedal</b></p> <p>Parking brake is activated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the brake pedal when releasing the electric parking brake.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Full beam assistant not available</b></p> <p>Full beam assistant not available</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>










1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
		<p><b>Rain/light sensor is defective</b></p> <p><b>Service required</b></p>
	<p>Rain/light sensor is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Switch on the windshield wipers and lights manually.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
 flashes		<p><b>Adaptive headlight control defective</b></p> <p><b>Service required</b></p>
	<p>Adaptive headlight is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
 lights up		<p><b>Driving light control defective</b></p> <p><b>Service required</b></p>
	<p>Driving light control is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
		<p><b>Headlight range regulation faulty</b></p> <p><b>Service required</b></p>
	<p>Headlight range regulation is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
 flashes		<p><b>Headlight control defective</b></p> <p><b>Service required</b></p>
	<p>Headlight control is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
		<p>Example:</p> <p><b>Check front left turn signal light</b></p>
	<p>Indicated light is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
		<p><b>Full beam assistant failure</b></p> <p><b>Operate full beam manually</b></p> <p><b>Service required</b></p>
	<p>Full beam assistant is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Operate the full beam manually.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.





Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required	
		<p><b>PDLs fault</b>                      Operate full beam manually                      Service required</p> <p>The Porsche Dynamic Light System function is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<p><b>Parking light on</b></p> <p>Left or right parking light is switched on.</p>	
		<p><b>Wipers faulty</b>                      Visit workshop</p> <p>Wiper is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>	
	lights up		<p><b>Checking tires</b></p> <p>Significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Check the relevant tire for damage.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▸ Refer to chapter "Checking tires" on page 226.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▶ Fill in sealant if required.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▸ Refer to chapter "Flat Tire" on page 237.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▶ Set the correct tire pressure at the next opportunity.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▸ Refer to chapter "Inflating tires" on page 224.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	lights up		<p><b>Observe minimum set-point pressure 1.8 bar</b></p> <p>718 Cayman GT4 RS: Below minimum target pressure in the tire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ For race track operation, set at least 1.8 bar per wheel.</li> </ul>
	lights up		<p><b>Refill tire</b></p> <p>Loss of pressure in one or more tires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Set the correct tire pressure at the next opportunity.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▸ Refer to chapter "Inflating tires" on page 224.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	flashes or lights up		<p><b>Tire pressure monitoring defective</b>                      Service required</p> <p>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).                      Tire pressure not monitored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.




Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
 flashes or lights up	 <b>Tire pressure monitoring temporarily inactive</b>	<p>Temporary fault in the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Tire pressure not monitored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 flashes or lights up	 <b>No Tire pressure monitoring System learns over 16 mph (25 km/h)</b>	<p>The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) requires a certain speed to learn the wheels. No current tire pressures are available on the multifunction display during this time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Perform tire pressure monitoring again later.</li> </ul>
 flashes or lights up	 <b>Tire change? Update settings</b>	<p>The tire settings must be updated after a wheel change.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Updating the tire settings on the multifunction display. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 lights up	 <b>Tire pressure Reduce speed</b>	<p>Speed for set tire pressure has been exceeded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Reduce speed</li> <li>▶ Set the correct tire pressure at the next opportunity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Tires and Wheels" on page 217.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
		<p>718 Cayman GT4 RS: Race track mode active in the tire pressure control system. The race track mode is not allowed to be used on public roads.</p>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Engine




Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	<b>Oil level below minimum</b> <b>Refill oil immediately</b>	Oil level below minimum. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so and switch off the engine.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak in or under the vehicle. Do not continue driving if there is an obvious oil leak.</li> <li>▶ Select "Oil measurement" on the multifunction display: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▶ Add engine oil if required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Choosing and topping up engine oil" on page 207.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<b>Oil level above maximum</b> <b>Visit workshop</b> <b>Driving permitted</b>	Engine oil level above maximum. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>Oil level measurement fault</b> <b>Visit workshop</b> <b>Driving permitted</b>	Oil level measurement faulty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>Minimum oil level reached</b> <b>Topping up oil</b>	Minimum oil level reached. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adding engine oil. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Choosing and topping up engine oil" on page 207.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.





Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p><b>Oil level information currently unavailable</b></p>	<p>Under certain circumstances it is not possible to display the oil level. The reasons for this include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Engine is cold.</li> <li>- Vehicle has been stopped after full-load operation at high engine speeds.</li> <li>- Engine oil temperature too high.</li> </ul> <p>▶ Perform the oil level measurement again.            ▶ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.</p>
	 <p><b>Oil pressure is too low</b>  <b>Parking vehicle safely</b></p>	<p>Engine oil pressure is too low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so and switch off the engine.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak in or under the vehicle.</li> <li>▶ Select "Oil measurement" on the multifunction display:            ▶ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.</li> <li>▶ Add engine oil if required.            ▶ Refer to chapter "Choosing and topping up engine oil" on page 207.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving if the warning message is displayed even when the oil level is correct.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Oil pressure measurement fault</b>  <b>Driving permitted</b>  <b>Visit workshop</b></p>	<p>Oil pressure measurement faulty.            Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.










Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p><b>Oil temperature too high</b> <b>Reduce load</b></p>	<p>Engine oil temperature is too high.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so, switch off the engine and let it cool down.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Select "Oil measurement" on the multifunction display: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▶ Add engine oil if required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Choosing and topping up engine oil" on page 207.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Oil temperature display fault</b> <b>Visit workshop</b> <b>Driving permitted</b></p>	<p>Engine oil temperature gage is faulty. Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
Coolant display at maximum mark	 <p><b>Refill coolant immediately</b> <b>Do not continue driving</b></p>	<p>Engine coolant level is too low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so, switch off the engine and let it cool down.</li> <li>▶ Check the coolant level.</li> <li>▶ Add engine coolant if required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Checking the coolant level and adding coolant" on page 204.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>




1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Refill coolant</b> <b>Be careful of engine temperature</b></p>	<p>Coolant level is low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Check the coolant level.</li> <li>▶ Add engine coolant if required.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Checking the coolant level and adding coolant" on page 204.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
<p>Coolant or engine oil temperature gage at maximum mark</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Engine over temp</b> <b>Park vehicle to cool down</b></p>	<p>Engine coolant or engine oil temperature is too high.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so, switch off the engine and let it cool down.</li> <li>▶ Check radiators and air guides in and on the vehicle for obstructions.</li> <li>▶ Check coolant and engine oil level:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Checking the coolant level and adding coolant" on page 204.</li> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▶ Add engine coolant or engine oil if required.</li> </ul> <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Coolant temperature display faulty</b> <b>Driving permitted</b> <b>Visit workshop</b></p>	<p>Coolant temperature display faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Cooling system error</b> <b>Visit workshop</b> <b>Service required</b></p>	<p>Cooling system is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.






Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p><b>Engine fan failure</b>  <b>Avoid full engine load</b>  <b>Driving permitted</b></p>	<p>Engine fan has failed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Engine power reduced</b>  <b>Driving permitted</b>  <b>Visit workshop</b></p>	<p>Engine power reduced.                      Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Engine control system fault</b>  <b>Driving permitted</b>  <b>Visit workshop</b></p>	<p>Engine control system is faulty.                      Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
Coolant temperature warning light flashes	 <p><b>Engine control system fault</b></p>	<p>Engine control system is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
		<p>The engine is in the warm-up phase. During the warm-up phase, the maximum speed is limited to 7,000 rpm to protect the engine. The symbol goes out as soon as the engine oil has reached a temperature of approx. 140 °F (60 °C).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Avoid high engine speeds and full throttle until the engine has reached operating temperature.</li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.








Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Check particulate filter</b> <b>Please see Owner's Manual</b></p>	<p>The particulate filter has become clogged with soot. Adapt your driving style so that the filter cleans itself automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Turn on PDK SPORT drive mode</li> <li>▶ Refer to chapter "Driving with Porsche Double Clutch (PDK)" on page 80.</li> <li>▶ Switching off cruise control</li> <li>▶ Only shift to the next higher gear when prompted by the upshift indicator.</li> <li>▶ Accelerate to a maximum speed of 130 km/h (<b>always</b> take into account the applicable speed limit and adjust the speed accordingly) and move off the accelerator again; take your foot fully off the accelerator pedal.</li> <li>▶ Retry this procedure until the message disappears.</li> </ul> <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Particulate filter</b> <b>Driving permitted</b> <b>Visit workshop</b></p>	<p>The particulate filter has become clogged with soot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Particulate filter</b> <b>Parking vehicle safely</b></p>	<p>The particulate filter has become clogged with soot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Have the vehicle towed to an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>





1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Vehicle

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	<b>Alternator fault</b> <b>Parking vehicle safely</b>	Alternator is faulty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so and turn off the engine.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>Battery function limited</b> <b>Visit workshop</b>	Battery function is limited. Driving permitted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>Battery low</b> <b>Start engine and allow to run for a longer time</b>	Battery charge is too low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Start the engine so the battery can be charged.</li> </ul>
	<b>Battery charge too low</b> <b>Power consumption limited</b>	Battery charge is too low. The power supply to comfort features was deactivated to prevent the battery from discharging. Driving permitted.
	<b>Battery protection was active during parking</b>	Battery protection is active or it was active. The power supply to features was deactivated in the vehicle during parking to prevent the battery from discharging. Driving permitted.










1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <p><b>Battery discharge protection active</b> Capacity xx %</p>	<p>Discharging safeguard is or was active. The power supply to features was deactivated in the vehicle to prevent the battery from discharging. Driving permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Pay attention to the battery capacity. Charging the battery if necessary.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Recharge battery</b> Take care of polarity</p>	<p>Battery charge is too low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Charging the battery.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Please start engine manually</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Start the engine manually at the ignition lock</li> </ul>
Gear lever position display flashing	 <p><b>Engage gear selector properly</b></p>	<p>Selector lever may be between two positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Engage gear selector properly</li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Move gear lever to position P</b></p>	<p>Move gear lever to position <b>P</b> before removing the vehicle key or to park and secure the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Move gear lever to position <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Move gear lever to P or N</b></p>	<p>The gear lever must be in position <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> to start the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Move gear lever to <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> position.</li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Press brake</b></p>	<p>The brake pedal must be pressed in order to start the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the footbrake when starting.</li> </ul>










Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
<p>Gear lever position display flashing</p>	 <p><b>Transmission failure</b> <b>Parking vehicle safely</b></p>	<p>Transmission failure. Gear lever position is no longer displayed in the instrument panel. The vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop. Continued driving not permitted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Have the vehicle towed to an authorized Porsche dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Refer to chapter "Towing and tow-starting" on page 198.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Transmission is overheating</b> <b>Park vehicle to cool down</b></p>	<p>Transmission temperature too high.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when safe to do so and let the transmission cool down.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
<p>Gear lever position display flashing</p>	 <p><b>Transmission fault possibly no R gear</b> <b>Driving permitted</b></p>	<p>Transmission is faulty. Reverse gear may not be available. Driving permitted with restricted gearshift comfort.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <p><b>Transmission temperature too high</b> <b>Reduce load</b></p>	<p>Transmission temperature too high. Driving permitted. "Warning jerks" can be felt when driving off and the engine power may be limited.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Reduce engine load.</li> <li>▶ Do not hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal, but rather using the brake.</li> <li>▶ Allow the engine to run in gear lever position <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> until the warning disappears.</li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.






Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	<b>VTS armed</b> Enter code and confirm	Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS Plus) is activated. ▶ To deactivate PVTS Plus, enter a code using the numerical keys of the remote control (remote keypad) and confirm.
	<b>VTS armed</b> Enter code within X min.	Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS Plus) is activated. ▶ To deactivate PVTS Plus, enter a code using the numerical keys of the remote control (Remote Keypad) and confirm.
	<b>Theft attempt recognized</b> VTS alarm active	Theft attempt was recognized. ▶ Contact the PVTS Operating Center.
	<b>Remote Keypad battery empty, please replace</b>	Remote Keypad battery is too weak. ▶ Change the battery.
	<b>Emergency call activated</b>	An emergency call activated via the vehicle was confirmed by the PVTS Operating Center.
	<b>Emergency call fault</b> Visit workshop	Emergency call function is faulty. ▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer. <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Emergency call failed</b>	It was <b>not</b> possible to transfer an emergency call activated via the vehicle to the PVTS Operating Center.
	<b>Emergency call service contract expired</b>	The service contract for the emergency call service has expired and can be extended in the Porsche Service portal.
	<b>Driver Card not detected</b>	Driver Card was not detected. ▶ Activate the Driver Card again using the button. ▶ Contact the Operating Center if required.










1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <b>Driver Card battery empty, please re- place</b>	Driver Card battery is too weak. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Change the battery.</li> </ul>
	 <b>Outside temperature display defective Service required</b>	Outside temperature display is defective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>Convertible top closed Reduce speed</b>	Maximum speed for convertible top exceeded. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Reduce speed to less than 124 mph (200 km/h).</li> </ul>
	 <b>Convertible top not fully locked Do not continue driving</b>	Convertible top not fully installed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop at the next opportunity.</li> <li>▶ Open or close the convertible top completely.</li> <li>▶ Check that fin tensioner is fully engaged.</li> </ul>
	 <b>Convertible top not fully locked</b>	Convertible top not fully installed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Open or close the convertible top completely.</li> <li>▶ Check that fin tensioner is fully engaged.</li> </ul>
	 <b>Example: Service in xxx miles</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the next service performed at the latest after the indicated number of miles or days.</li> </ul>
Fuel gage warning light lights up	 <b>Please refuel</b>	Fuel tank is empty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Refuel at the next opportunity.</li> <li>▶ Refer to chapter "Refueling" on page 244.</li> </ul>
	 <b>Gas gauge fault Service necessary</b>	Fault in the tank display. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>Doors/rear hood open</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Close the relevant door or cover on the vehicle.</li> </ul>









1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <b>Refill washer fluid</b>	Washer fluid is empty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Refill washer fluid.</li> <li>▶ Refer to chapter "Topping up washer fluid" on page 247.</li> </ul>
	 <b>Replace ignition key battery</b>	The vehicle key battery is empty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Replace the battery.</li> <li>▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Key" on page 30.</li> </ul>
	 <b>Remove key from ignition</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Remove key from ignition.</li> </ul>






## Driving systems

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
 light up	 <b>PSM system fault</b> <b>Parking vehicle safely</b>	Porsche Stability Management (PSM) System fault <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 lights up	 <b>ESC + TC failure</b> <b>Restricted driving permitted with adjustment</b>	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control failure. Driving permitted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
 lights up	 <b>ESC switched off</b>	Electronic Stability Control was switched off.
	 <b>ESC switched on</b>	Electronic Stability Control was switched on.
 lights up	 <b>ESC + TC switched off</b>	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control were switched off.

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	 <b>ESC + TC switched on</b>	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control were switched on.
 Turn signals	 <b>PSM in diagnosis</b>	Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is in diagnostic mode.
	 <b>PADM deactivated Service required Driving permitted</b>	Porsche Active Drivetrain Mount (PADM) is deactivated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>Chassis system failure</b>	Chassis system is not available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Immediately stop when it is safe to do so.</li> <li>▶ Do not continue driving.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>Suspension system error Restricted driving permitted with adjustment</b>	Fault in the suspension system. The vehicle handling may change. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>Faulty assistance systems Service required</b>	Assistance systems are faulty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	 <b>System fault Driving permitted Visit workshop</b>	One or more electrical systems may not be available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Instrument panel display	Message on the multifunction display	Meaning and action required
	<b>Instrument cluster. Instrument cluster/ParkAssist, front</b> <b>Service required</b>	Acoustic warning and distance notifications (e.g. with ParkAssist) are not available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>ParkAssist sound output faulty</b> <b>Service required</b>	Acoustic warning and distance notifications are not available in ParkAssist. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation</li> <li>▶ Note the fault when parking.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>ParkAssist fault</b>	ParkAssist is faulty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation</li> <li>▶ Note the fault when parking.</li> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>Lift system fault. Service required</b>	Lift system fault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Have the fault rectified by an authorized Porsche dealer.<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
	<b>Front end not lowered reduce speed</b>	Speed "X mph" was exceeded. Vehicle is not lowered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Reduce the speed to "X mph".</li> </ul>

1. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Operation and use

### Vehicle settings

#### Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display

Different vehicle settings can be made depending on model, country and equipment. All available vehicle settings are listed here and may not be available in all

#### System settings

models, countries and equipment. For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle settings are saved even when the ignition is switched off.

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Make general system settings (e.g., language, time, units)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle Settings</b>.</li> <li>- <b>Language</b></li> <li>- <b>Date and time</b></li> <li>- <b>Units</b></li> <li>- <b>Reset</b> ▶ <b>Factory settings</b></li> </ul>	-

#### Display settings

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Adjust general display settings, e.g. brightness	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Display</b>.</li> <li>- <b>PCM display</b></li> <li>- <b>Screen brightness</b></li> <li>- <b>Menu scope</b></li> <li>- <b>Help texts</b></li> </ul>	-

### Volume settings

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Adjust volume e.g. ParkAssist, Warning signals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Volume</b></li> <li>- <b>ParkAssist</b></li> <li>- <b>Warning tones</b></li> </ul>	-

### Vehicle settings

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Make vehicle settings / use vehicle functions, e.g. lighting, windshield wipers, mirrors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle Settings</b>.</li> <li>- <b>Steering wheel operation</b> ◊ button</li> <li>- <b>Lock</b></li> <li>- <b>Light and visibility</b></li> </ul>	- - -



## Settings for lighting, windshield wipers, mirrors

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Settings for lighting, windshield wipers and mirrors, e.g. off delay, ambient light, rear wiper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Light and Visibility</b>.</li> <li>- <b>Exterior lights</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Off delay</li> <li>- Left-/right-hand drive</li> <li>- Dyn. High beam</li> </ul> </li> <li>- <b>Interior lights</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When opening doors</li> <li>- Orientation</li> <li>- Ambient light</li> <li>- Off delay</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	-

## Settings Locking

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Settings for locking, door mirrors, e.g. unlock door, fold in mirrors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Lock</b>.</li> <li>- <b>Door unlock</b></li> <li>- <b>Mirror retract.</b></li> <li>- <b>Comfort entry</b></li> </ul>	▷ p. 29

## Vehicle Settings Air conditioning

What do I want to do?	What should I select?	Where?
Air conditioning settings, e.g. Air flow, auto air circ.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Tap <b>Vehicle</b> ▶ <b>Settings</b> ▶ <b>Lock</b>.</li> <li>– <b>Air flow</b></li> <li>– <b>Ventilation panel</b></li> <li>– <b>Auto air circulation</b></li> </ul>	▶ p. 62

## Vehicle settings via the PCM

Certain vehicle settings can also be set via the PCM.

- ▶ **Button CAR** ▶ **SET**  ▶ **Set Vehicle settings**

## Adjusting the multifunction display format

▶ Refer to chapter "Menu overview" on page 104.

### Adjusting the upper status area

- ▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Upper line** ▶ **Remaining range**

### Adapting the information area

- ▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Vehicle menu** ▶ **Field 1 or Field 2 or Field 3 or Field 4** ▶ **Select the desired display content**

### Adapting the information area

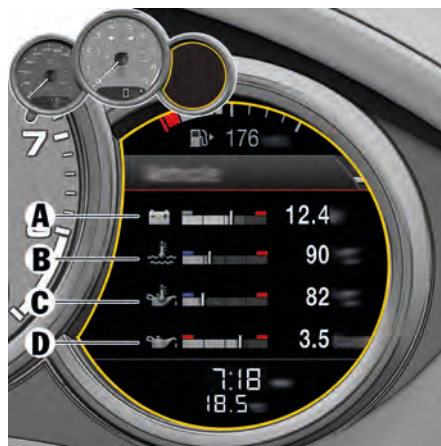


Fig. 126: Configuration example of information area

- A** Field 1: Battery voltage
- B** Field 2: Coolant temperature
- C** Field 3: Engine oil temperature
- D** Field 4: Engine oil pressure

Four items can be selected from the extensive vehicle information for display in fields 1, 2, 3 and 4. One item of vehicle information cannot be assigned to more than one field.

**A – On-board voltage**

**B – Coolant temperature**

**Bar at left — engine cold**

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine load.

**Bar in the middle — normal operating temperature**

Pointer may move up to the red area when the engine is heavily loaded and outside temperature is high.

**Bar in the red zone — operating temperature too high**

#### NOTE

Risk of engine damage.

If the coolant temperature is too high, its temperature gauge moves to the maximum mark. A warning message is displayed on the multifunction display to indicate high engine temperature and the warning lights up or flashes.

- ▶ If the red zone is reached, stop when it is safe to do so and switch off the engine. Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Observe measures for excessive coolant temperature.

▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

If the coolant level is low, warning signals may appear if the vehicle tilts at an extreme angle (e.g., steep slopes) or generates high lateral acceleration while negotiating long bends (e.g., circular course driving). If the warnings do not disappear once the vehicle has assumed "normal" operating conditions, check the coolant level.

▶ Refer to chapter "Coolant" on page 204.

### C – Engine oil temperature

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a warning message is displayed on the multifunction display.

- ▶ Reduce engine speed and load immediately.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Coolant" on page 204.

### D – Engine oil pressure

The oil pressure is regulated as required.

Engine speed	Oil pressure
4,500 rpm	at least 36 psi (2.5 bar)
5,000 rpm	at least 39 psi (2.7 bar)
5,500 rpm	at least 44 psi (3.0 bar)

The engine oil pressure varies depending on the engine speed, oil temperature and engine load.

### NOTE

Risk of engine damage.

If the oil pressure is too low, a warning message appears on the multifunction display.

- ▶ If the oil pressure is too low, immediately stop when it is safe to do so and switch off the engine. Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Observe measures for insufficient oil pressure.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Adjusting the lower status area

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Line below ▶ Select desired display content**

### Information



For vehicles with speed limit display, the speed limit menu item is not shown. The speed limit is displayed automatically.

## Device Manager

### Opening Device Manager



Fig. 127: Opening Device Manager

- ▶ Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).  
– or –  
**Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT Select Device manager.**

The following connections can be managed centrally using the Device Manager:

- **Phone:** Connect PCM to your phone or smartphone via Bluetooth®.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Phone functions" on page 168.
- **Bluetooth audio:** Connect PCM to an external Bluetooth® media source.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Operating PCM" on page 112.
- **Data connection:** Data connection established via access point.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.
- **Hotspot:** Use of wireless Internet access with PCM.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Phone" on page 165.

- **My Porsche App** (availability dependent on country): Connect app to PCM via WiFi.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter “My Porsche App” on page 183.
- **Smartphone link:** Use Apple CarPlay.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter “Opening Apple CarPlay in PCM” on page 179.

## Displaying connection status

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Phone” on page 165. For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 110.

## Connecting an external device

Information on supported media and file formats:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 257.

### **i** Information

With some external devices it may be required to adjust the volume separately.

- Set the volume on the external device.
- Set the desired volume in PCM.

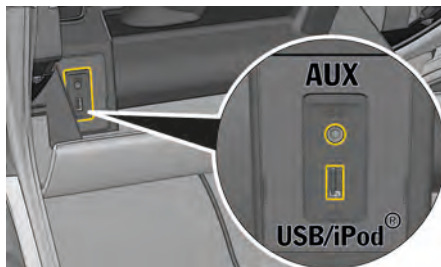


Fig. 128: USB (type A) and audio ports (AUX) in glove compartment (depending on equipment and country)



Fig. 129: USB port (type A) in center console

### Connecting an external device via USB or AUX

1. Open the glove compartment or center armrest.
2. Connect an external device (e.g. iPod, USB storage medium) to the USB port (type A) or the audio port (AUX), depending on equipment and country.
3. Press the **SOURCE** button and select the desired media source.

### **i** Information

- A USB and a universal audio port (AUX) (depending on equipment and country) are located in the glove compartment. Another USB port is located in the center console. Apple CarPlay can only be used via the USB port in the center console. The USB ports only work when the ignition is switched on.
- External devices, e.g. a phone or smartphone, can be charged in the vehicle with a USB charging cable.
- Activating the keyboard/code lock is recommended before placing the phone or smartphone in the center console.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Apple CarPlay” on page 179.

### Connect an external device via Bluetooth®

1. Select or in the header (depending on the connection status).
  - or –
  - Button PHONE** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **Device manager**
2. Select **Bluetooth audio** ▶ **Search for new device**.
  - ➔ A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in PCM and in the phone or smartphone.
3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in PCM with the Bluetooth® code in the phone or smartphone.

4. If the Bluetooth® code in the phone or smartphone matches, confirm. If required, enter the PIN of the SIM card in PCM. (country-dependent)
  - ➔ If the device has been successfully connected, it is displayed in the device overview.

For info about managing Bluetooth® devices:

▷ Refer to chapter "Connecting a phone via Bluetooth®" on page 166.

## Device Manager settings

### Information on externally connected devices

Technical data on supported media and file formats:

- Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 257.
- If a storage device contains a large number of files, folders or playlists, it may take longer to load media tracks for the first time.
- During playback, audio files are automatically displayed with additional saved information (e.g., artist, track, album cover). If this information is not available on the medium in question, the Gracenote® database is queried. Nonetheless, in certain cases it is not possible to display some additional information.
- Do not use USB extension cables or adapters. These impair functionality.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Porsche assumes no liability for damaged or lost files or media.

Never store important data on the SD cards, Jukebox or portable players.

- Music tracks created for use on MP3 players are generally covered by copyright in accordance with the relevant national and international regulations. Many countries do not allow copies to be made, even for personal use, without the prior consent of the copyright holder. Please observe the applicable copyright regulations. If you hold these rights, e.g. for your own compositions and recordings, or have been granted these rights by the copyright holder, these restrictions do not apply. The applicable laws apply in all cases.

### Inserting an SD card

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to PCM by incorrect use of SD cards.

If using a SIM card adapter, there is a risk of the SIM card falling out due to vibrations and components of the card getting stuck in the SD reader.

- ▶ Only use single-component SD cards.

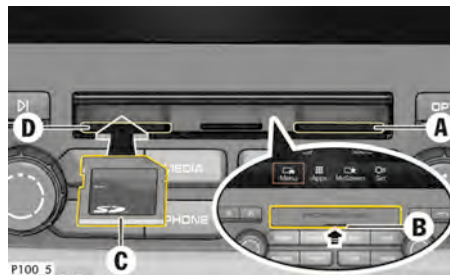


Fig. 130: SD card slot

A SD card reader 2

B SD and SIM card reader cover

C SD card

D SD card reader 1

### Inserting an SD card

1. Use a finger nail to fold up the cover over the slot **B** (Fig. 130).
2. Push SD card **C** (Fig. 130) with the printing upward into SD card reader (**A** (Fig. 130)) or (**D** (Fig. 130)) until it engages.

### Removing an SD card

- ✓ SD and SIM card reader cover open.

1. Press on the inserted card and remove it.
2. Close the SD and SIM card reader cover.

### Inserting and removing SIM cards

▷ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

## MyScreen

### Configure MyScreen


In the **MyScreen** menu, you can group touchscreen content from different categories (e.g. **NAV** or **PHONE**) to your preference.

A total of three different MyScreens can be configured.

### Creating MyScreen




Fig. 131: Configure MyScreen

1. Button **HOME** ▶ **MyScreen**  ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ **SET MyScreen**
2. Select **MyScreen 1**, **MyScreen 2** or **MyScreen 3**.
3. Select a category (e.g. **SOURCE**) to fold down the list of available tiles.
4. Click on, hold and drag the tile you require into a container on the left-hand preview side (drag & drop). When a green border appears, the tile can be dropped in the container.
5. Exit the **Configure MyScreen** menu via **X** or **<**.
6. If you wish to remove a tile from the left-hand preview side, drag it from the container using drag & drop or replace with another tile.


For further information on how to create a phone favorite:

▶ Refer to chapter "Phone functions" on page 168.

### Open MyScreen

1. Press the **HOME** button.
2. Select **MyScreen** .
  - ➔ The most recently activated **MyScreen** is displayed.
3. To switch between **MyScreen 1**, **MyScreen 2** and **MyScreen 3**, swipe left or right until the desired MyScreen is displayed.

### Resetting MyScreen

1. Button **HOME** ▶ **MyScreen**  ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ **SET MyScreen**
2. Select **Reset MyScreen**.
  - ➔ All the content of MyScreen pages 2 and 3 is deleted. The content of MyScreen page 1 is reset to default.

## Media

### Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the detailed descriptions provided in this section.

- ▶ Pay particular attention to safety and warnings.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

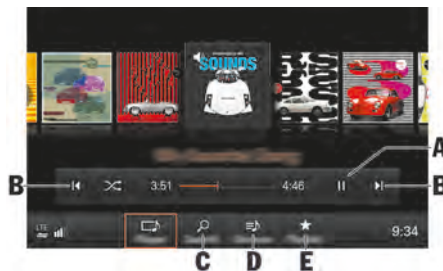






Fig. 132: Media source, e.g. iPod

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
<b>Play music and video files from a variety of media sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Import media content to Jukebox (internal memory).</li> <li>▶ Insert SD card.</li> <li>▶ Connect external device via USB or AUX (dependent on equipment and country).</li> <li>▶ Connect an external device via Bluetooth®.</li> <li>▶ Open online radio services via the app.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ p. 150</li> <li>▶ p. 112</li> <li>▶ p. 112</li> <li>▶ p. 112</li> <li>▶ p. 183</li> </ul>
<b>Selecting a media source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Button <b>SOURCE</b> ▶ <b>Select desired media source.</b> – or – Press button <b>MEDIA</b> repeatedly.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ p. 150</li> </ul>
<b>Play/pause music</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Button <b>MEDIA</b> ▶ <b>Select Player</b>  ▶ <b>▶▶</b> or <b>  </b> (see A).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ p. 150</li> </ul>
<b>Jump forward/back during playback</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Button <b>MEDIA</b> ▶ <b>Select Player</b>  ▶ <b>◀◀</b> or <b>▶▶</b> (see B).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ p. 150</li> </ul>
<b>Browsing media source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Select Button <b>MEDIA</b> ▶ <b>Search</b>  (see C) or <b>Browse</b>  (see D).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ p. 150</li> </ul>



What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Opening playlists	▶ Select Button <b>MEDIA</b> ▶ Playlist ★ (see E).	▶ p. 150
Play similar music	▶ Button <b>MEDIA</b> ▶ Button <b>OPT</b> ▶ More like this	▶ p. 150
Import audio/video files into Jukebox	▶ Button <b>MEDIA</b> ▶ Button <b>OPT</b> ▶ Import to Jukebox	▶ p. 150

## Play media

### Insert/connect a media source

▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

### Play media

The radio supports FM, AM and SiriusXM reception ranges.

Audio and video formats must meet certain criteria in order to be played using the Media function. Technical data on supported media and file formats:

▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

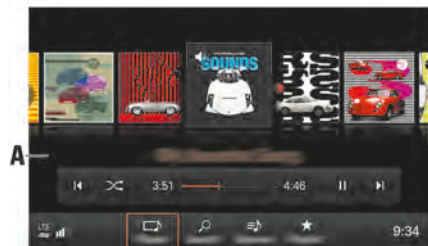


Fig. 133: Playing music

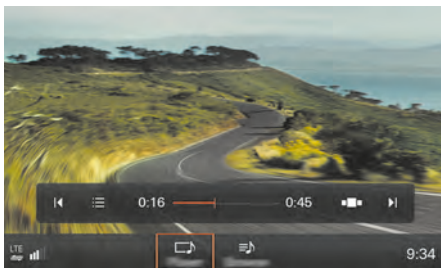


Fig. 134: Playing a video

Function	Button
Play media	▶
Pause media	
Jump forward in media tracks/next chapter	▶
Jump back in media tracks/previous chapter	◀
Track shuffle	↻

Function	Button
Display Cover Flow view	↶
Display video in full screen mode	⏏
Open Cover Flow view or available video source	⬛
Back to Video main menu	☰

## Playing music

- ✓ Audio source selected.

1. Button **MEDIA** ▶ Player 

2. In Cover Flow view **A**, swipe left or right until the desired album is displayed enlarged in the center.

– or –

▶ Select to play the album.



– or –

Select the album and the required track.

If an audio source has been selected, the first track on the medium is automatically played. If the Jukebox is used, the last track played is repeated.

## Fast forward or rewind

- ✓ Media source selected.

▶ Hold  or press and button  until the desired position is reached.

– or –

Move the time bar to the desired position.

## Switching the shuffle function on or off

- ✓ Media source selected.

▶  Select .

➔ Shuffle is switched on.

▶ Select this button again to switch the shuffle function off.

## Replaying a track

- ✓ Media source selected.
- ✓ Album or playlist is selected.

1. Press the Button **OPT**.

2. Select **Repeat track**.

➔ **Repeat mode** appears in the title bar.

▶ Press button **OPT** and select **Repeat off** to switch off repeat mode.

## Playing videos


- ✓ Video source selected.

▶  Select .

– or –

Select desired video.

– or –

 Select and the desired chapter.

▶ To return to the Video main menu, select .

## Importing and deleting audio/video files in Jukebox

Audio and video files can be imported from a USB flash memory stick or SD card into Jukebox.

### Importing current track or album

- ✓ Media source selected.
- ✓ Desired track or album selected.

1. Button **OPT** ▶ Import to Jukebox

2. Select **Copy current track** or **Copy current album**.

➔ The track or album is imported.

## Importing folders or files

- ✓ Media source selected.

1. Button **OPT** ▶ Import to Jukebox

2. Select **Copy files/folders**.

➔ The available folders and files are displayed.

3. Use **Select/Deselect** to select the desired files or folders.

4. Select **Copy** to start importing media.

## Deleting media content from Jukebox

- ✓ Jukebox selected as media source.

1. Button **MEDIA** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ Jukebox settings

2. Select desired option:

- **Delete current track**
- **Delete current album**
- **Delete files/folders:** Select files or folders using **Select/Deselect** and confirm with **Delete**.

## Displaying available and used memory

- ✓ Jukebox selected as media source.

1. Button **MEDIA** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ Jukebox settings

2. Select **Source details**.

## Media settings

### Global media settings


▶ Button **MEDIA** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ SET MEDIA ▶ Select desired setting

## Change the volume and sound

### Adjust volume

- ▶ Adjust the volume by turning volume control.

### Muting audio source

1. Press volume control A briefly.
  - ➔ The mute symbol  appears in the footer. Driving recommendations, phone conversations and traffic announcements are still audible.
2. To end the mute function, briefly press or turn volume control again.

### Change sound settings

- ▶ **Button HOME** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET SOUND** ▶ **Sound**  ▶ **Select desired setting**

### Change volume settings

- ▶ **Button HOME** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET SOUND** ▶ **Volume**  ▶ **Select desired setting**

### Changing Burmester® tone settings

- ▶ **Button HOME** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET SOUND** ▶ **Burmester®** ▶ **Select desired setting**

### Changing BOSE® tone settings


- ▶ **Button HOME** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET SOUND** ▶ **BOSE®** ▶ **Select desired setting**

## Changing radio settings

- ▶ **Button TUNER** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET AM/SET FM/ SiriusXM®** ▶ **Select desired setting**

## Storing a station




### Storing a set station

1. **Button TUNER** ▶ **Presets** 
2. Press the desired station button for 3 seconds.


- or -

1. **Button TUNER** ▶ **Button OPT**
2. **Store station** **Select station button.**

- or -



1. **Button TUNER** ▶ **Tune**  / **List** 
2. Select station, then select .
3. Select the desired station button.

### Storing a station automatically

1. **Button TUNER** ▶ **Presets** 
2. Press and hold **AS** for more than 1 second. The search starts. The 5 radio stations with the strongest signals are stored on the currently selected page and the station with the strongest signal is set.

## Display station information

### Display station details

1. Select **button TUNER**.
2. **Presets**  **Select details.**  
- or -  
**List**  ▶ **Button OPT** **Select Station details.**  
Program-related information is displayed.

### Opening program guide (EPG — Electronic Program Guide)

- ✓ The SiriusXM® set.

  1. **Button TUNER** ▶ **EPG** 
  2. Select station.

Detailed program information relating to the selected radio broadcast as well as current and subsequent broadcasts are displayed.


## Messages

### Displaying and editing messages


With the **Message** function, you can read text messages (SMS) and e-mails, have them read out to you or use the numbers contained in them for making phone calls if the phone supports this function. The phone may support the text message function but not the e-mail function.

For further information on these settings, see the operating instructions for your phone.



#### Information

- If the phone only supports display of the text messages stored in the device memory, the text messages received in the vehicle may not appear in the phone message list. Otherwise, received text messages are stored on the SIM card.
- To display text messages from an iPhone connected to the PCM, you must have enabled **Show messages** in the phone settings. To do this,  tap Settings > Bluetooth > [Vehicle model].
- PCM does not support Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS).

#### Displaying text message

1. Button **PHONE** ► MESSAGE  ► Text message
2. Select  ► Folder.
3. Select the desired text message.




#### Displaying e-mail

1. Button **PHONE** ► MESSAGE  ► E-mail
2. Select an e-mail account.  
➔ The inbox opens. A maximum of 100 e-mails are displayed.
3. Select  ► Folder.
4. Select desired e-mail.



#### Information

Many smartphones do not support the transfer of e-mails from multiple accounts to PCM. Frequently, only the e-mails managed by the manufacturer's own app are transferred.

#### Listening to messages (text message, e-mail)

1. Button **PHONE** ► MESSAGE 
2. Select **Text message** menu or **E-mail** menu.
3. Select  ► Folder.
4. Select the desired text message or e-mail.
5. Select **Read out** .

#### Deleting messages (text message, e-mail)




1. Button **PHONE** ► MESSAGE 
2. Select **Text message** menu or **E-mail** menu.
3. Select  ► Folder.
4. Select the desired text message or e-mail.
5. Press the Button **OPT**.
6. Select **Delete message**.  
➔ If the phone supports the function, a text message deleted in PCM is also deleted from the SIM card of the phone.

## Writing messages

### Writing text messages

1. Button **PHONE** ► MESSAGE  ► Text message
2. Select  ► **New text message**.
3. Enter the number of the recipient in the input field.  
– or –  
Select an existing contact from the phone-book.
4. Select text window.
5. Enter text using the input field and confirm with **Enter**.
6. Select **Send**   
➔ The message is sent.

### Writing e-mails

1. Button **PHONE** ► MESSAGE  ► E-mail
2. Select  ► **New e-mail**.
3. Enter the e-mail address of the recipient in the input field.  
– or –  
Select an existing contact from the phone-book.
4. Select a text window (e.g. Subject).
5. Enter text using the input field and confirm with **Enter**.
6. Select **Send**   
➔ The e-mail is sent.

## Navigation

### Brief overview – Navigation

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions provided in the "Navigation" chapter. In particular, the brief overview is no substitute for safety messages and warnings.

For information on operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

► Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

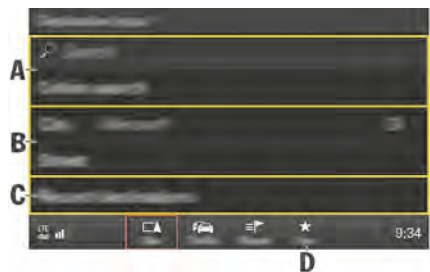


Fig. 135: Enter destination

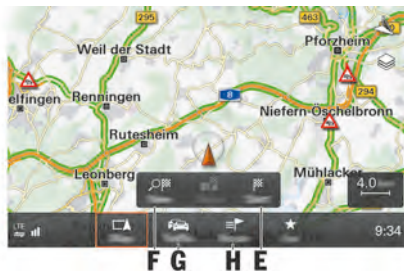








Fig. 136: Map view

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Search for destination	► <b>Button NAV</b> ► Search or Online search (A) Enter/Select destination.	► p. 155
Enter destination address	► <b>Button NAV</b> ► City, Street or Country (B) Enter destination address.	► p. 155
Select last destination (country-dependent)	► <b>Button NAV</b> ► Recent destinations (C) Select entry from list.	► p. 155
Enter Point of Interest (country-dependent)	► <b>Button NAV</b> ► Points of Interest (C) ► Select Point of Interest option ► Select point of interest.	► p. 155

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Select a destination from Contacts	▶ Button <b>NAV</b> ▶ <b>FAV ★ (D)</b> ▶ Browse (swipe) to <b>Contacts page</b> Select entry from list.	▶ p. 155
Start or end route guidance directly	▶ Select button <b>MAP</b> ▶ Select Start  or Stop  (E).	▶ p. 155
Enter stopover / plan a tour	▶ Button <b>NAV</b> ▶ Enter destination ▶ New (F)  ▶ Enter stopover Select Add+  .	▶ p. 155
Start a stored tour	▶ Button <b>NAV</b> ▶ <b>FAV ★ (D)</b> ▶ Browse (swipe) to <b>Stored destinations page</b> ▶ Tour ▶ Select tour Select <b>Start</b> .	▶ p. 155
Open map view	✓ Press the <b>Button MAP</b> .	▶ p. 155
Show traffic information	✓ Select <b>button NAV/button MAP</b> ▶ Traffic  (G).	▶ p. 155
Display and edit a route	✓ Select <b>button NAV/button MAP</b> ▶ Route  (H).	▶ p. 155

## Using Navigation

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of accidents

The Porsche navigation system guides you through traffic and simplifies your journey. If a recommended driving instruction contradicts the road traffic laws in force, the road traffic regulations always apply. The driver is always responsible for road safety.

- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation.
- ▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

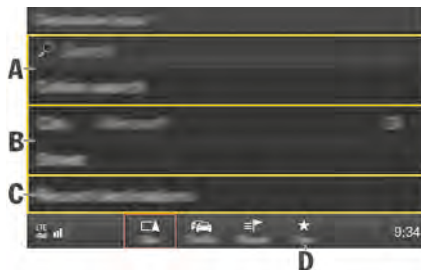



Fig. 137: Enter destination

## Search for a destination (Search/Online search)


When using the **Search** function, the internal PCM database is accessed. Use the **Online search** function to search for destinations on the Internet.

- ✓ **Online search:** Data connection for online search is established.

▷ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select **Search** or **Online search** (see **A**, ▷ (Fig. 137)).
3. Enter search term (e.g. city, street, name).
4. Select the desired entry from the list.
5. Select **Start** .


### Enter destination address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select **City** or **Street** (see **B**, ▷ (Fig. 137)).
3. Enter an address (place, street, house number, point of interest).
  - ➔ Only addresses in the selected country/state can be selected. When entering a foreign destination, its country must be selected. For example, all destinations in the USA can be selected when selecting USA.
4. Select the desired entry from the list.
5. Select **Start** .


### Information

Porsche Communication Management (PCM) only displays destinations within the borders of the selected US state. When crossing national borders, the driver can either enter the destination and the neighboring country directly or select the neighboring country in the search function to search for the city. When "USA" is entered, all destinations of the same name throughout the USA are displayed.


### Using a stored destination or contact (Recent destinations)

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select **Recent destinations** (see **C**, ▷ (Fig. 137)).
3. Scroll (swipe) to desired page:
  - **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
  - **Stored destinations:** Destinations stored as favorites.
    - ▷ p. 155
  - **Contacts:** Stored contact addresses from a connected telephone.
4. Select an entry from the list.
5. Select **Start** .

### Entering a Point of Interest

1. **NAV** ▶ **Points of Interest(C)**▷ (Fig. 137)
2. Select desired Point of Interest option (e.g. **Search around destination**).
3. Enter or select a Point of Interest category and a Point of Interest.
4. Select **Start** .


### Information

Use **button NAV** ▶ **Nav**  ▶ **Points of Interest** ▶ **Select desired point of interest option (e.g. Search around destination)** ▶ **Points of Interest Portal** to load other Point of Interest categories from My Porsche.

▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.


### Entering destination via GPS coordinates

✓ Route guidance off.

1. **Button NAV** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **Enter GPS coordinates**
2. Enter GPS coordinates and confirm with **OK**.
3. Select **Start** .

### Select destination from map


✓ Route guidance off.

1. Press the **Button MAP**.
2. Select a destination on the map (press and hold if necessary).
3. Select the destination displayed in the title bar.
  - ➔ The destination details are displayed.
4. Select **Start** .

### Planning a tour (entering a stopover)

A tour consists of one destination and between one and a maximum of 8 stopovers.

### Entering and storing tour

1. Press the **Button NAV**.
2. Enter a destination and start route guidance.
3. Select **Route** .
4. **Tour** Select .
5. Select **New +** .
6. Enter stopover.
7. Select **Add +** .
8. Enter tour name and confirm with **OK**.
  - ➔ The tour is saved.




## Information

The stopovers can later be reorganized. Select **button Route NAV ▶ Route ≡▶ ▶ Tour**, press and hold the relevant stopover and move to the desired position.

### Access stored tour

- ✓ Tour is stored.

1. **Button NAV ▶ FAV ★**
2. Scroll (swipe) **Stored destinations** to page.
3. **Tours** Select .
4. Select desired tour.
5. Select **Start** .

## Entering a destination via the multifunction display

For information on using the multifunction display:  
▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

1. **Navigation ▶ Destination input**
2. Select desired list:
  - **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
  - **Stored destinations:** Permanently stored destinations.
3. Select an entry from the list and start Navigation.

## Starting/ending route guidance

### Start route guidance in the Destination input menu

- ✓ Destination data entered.
- ✓ Route guidance off.

- ▶ **Button NAV ▶ Start**


### Start route guidance in the Destination input menu

- ✓ Destination data entered.
- ✓ Route guidance off.
- ✓ Destination shown in detailed view.

- ▶ Select **Start** .

### Stopping route guidance in the Destination input menu

- ✓ Route guidance on

- ▶ **Button NAV ▶ End route guidance**  
– or –  
**Stop**  Select .

### Starting and ending route guidance via the multifunction display

- ✓ Destination data entered.
- ✓ Route guidance off.

1. Select **Navigation** menu.
2. Select desired option:

- **Start route guidance:** Start route guidance.
- **End route guidance:** End route guidance.

## Storing destinations and accessing a stored destination (favorite)

### Store destination (favorite)

- ✓ Destination data entered.
- ✓ Route guidance off.

1. Select **Save +★**.
2. Confirm destination name with **OK**.
  - ➔ The destination is stored.
  - or –
  - Change destination name and confirm with **OK**.
    - ➔ The destination is stored under the entered name.
    - or –
    - Select an already assigned name (e.g. **Home**) from the list and confirm with **OK**.
      - ➔ The destination details of the existing name are overwritten with the new details.

## Information

Alternatively, a destination can also be stored using **Button NAV ▶ FAV ★ ▶ Stored destinations ▶ Add to favorites**.

### Access stored destination (favorite)

1. **Button NAV or Button MAP ▶ FAV ★**
2. Scroll (swipe) to desired page:
  - **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
  - **Stored destinations:** Favorite destinations or tours.
  - **Contacts:** Stored contact addresses from a connected telephone.
3. Select an entry from the list.

**i** Information

Select **Button NAV** or **Button MAP** ▶ **FAV** ★ ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Portal Destinations** to load other destinations from My Porsche.

▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

**Delete or edit destinations and tours**

**1. Button NAV or Button MAP** ▶ **FAV** ★

2. Scroll (swipe) to desired page:

- **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
- **Stored destinations:** Favorite destinations or tours.
- **Contacts:** Stored contact addresses from a connected telephone.

3. Select an entry from the list.

4. Press the **OPT** button.

5. Select desired option:

- **Delete**
- **Show favorite on map**

**i** Information

To delete all stored destinations or tours, select **button NAV** or **button MAP** ▶ **FAV** ★ ▶ **Button OPT** before selecting an entry from the list.

**Display and edit a route**

✓ Route guidance on

**1. Button NAV or Button MAP** Select route ≡▶.

**2. Selecting an option and changing the settings:**

- **Route options:**

- **Route type:** Route calculation option settings (fast, short, ecological).
- **Avoiding options for route calculation:** Settings for avoiding or including toll roads, highways, ferries/ car trains, tunnels and mountain passes during route planning.
- **Dynamic rerouting:** Use dynamic route guidance to avoid traffic congestion and obstructions.
- **Show traffic notices.**
- **List view:** Next distinctive route points (POIs, turn-off points) are displayed.
- **Tour:** The active tour route guidance destinations and distances are displayed.
- **Alternative routes:** Alternatives to the current guided route can be selected. To start an alternative route, select **Start** ⌘.

**Using Smart routes**


PCM can learn frequently traveled routes and suggest them as a route guidance destination. A Smart route is created automatically as soon as an identical route is traveled twice.

**Activating Smart routes**

**1. Button NAV or Button OPT** ▶ **SET NAV** - or -

**Button NAV or Button OPT** ▶ **SET MAP**

**2. Select Smart routes.**

- ➔ The symbol  is displayed at the top right of the map. PCM records frequently traveled routes, regardless of whether route guidance is on.

**Accessing smart routes**

✓ Smart routes activated.

**1. Button NAV or Button MAP** ▶ **Route**  ▶ **Smart routes**

- or -

Select **Button MAP** ▶ **Symbol**  at the top right of the map.

**2. Select the desired smart route from the list of suggestions.**

**3. Select Start** ⌘ **Select.**

**i** Information

- A maximum of 3 suggested Smart routes are available. Suggested routes are prioritized by how frequently an identical route is traveled.
- The traffic situation for available Smart routes is displayed depending on the current vehicle location.
- PCM identifies whether the route is traveled during the week or on the weekend. Recorded Smart routes are displayed exclusively for the corresponding period - either on the weekend or during the week.
- Opening **Smart routes** stops active route guidance.

**Delete Smart routes**

Saved Smart routes remain stored after the function is deactivated and must be deleted.

▶ Select **Button MAP** ▶ **Symbol**  **at the top right of the map** ▶ **Delete** 

- ➔ The saved routes to the currently displayed destination are deleted.

▷ Refer to chapter "Changing navigation settings" on page 161.

## Accessing and configuring map view

### Open map view

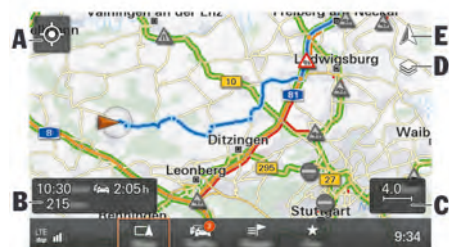



Fig. 138: Map view with display and functions

- ▶ Press the **MAP** button.
  - ➔ The **Map**  menu and a map view of the current location and if applicable the route in the current route guidance are displayed.
- **A:** Route guidance information, time and distance to destination or arrival time.
- **B:** Switch between scale display and auto zoom.
- **C:** Center vehicle location on map.
- **D:** Set map orientation toward North or in direction of travel.
- **E:** Open Map page menu

## Configuring map contents

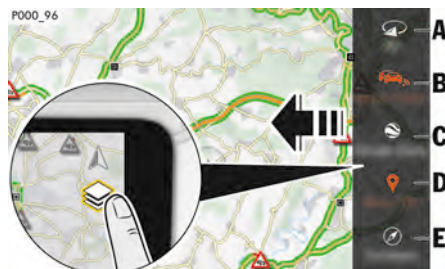



Fig. 139: Map contents including Map page menu

1. Select **Button MAP** ▶ **Page menu** 
2. Select desired map contents. If necessary, scroll down within the page menu using the rotary push button or the swipe the touchscreen to display further menus.

- ✓ All map views that retrieve data from the Internet require an active data connection.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

Active map contents are displayed in red, inactive contents in white:

- **A (3D):** 3D view (otherwise 2D view).
- **B (Online Traffic):** Show/hide real-time traffic information about accidents, roadwork, traffic flow and other incidents from the Internet.
- **C:** Display or hide online data on the map.
- **D (Show POI):** Show/hide points of interest on the map.
- **E (Compass):** Show/hide compass on the map.
- **Weather:** Show/hide weather information on the map
- **Auto zoom:** Show/hide Auto zoom function on the map.

## Information

The map page menu provides quick access to functions that can also be set using **Button MAP** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET Map** ▶ **Map view** ▶ **Layers**.

## Displaying and configuring map view via the multifunction display

For information on using the multifunction display:  
 ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument cluster" on page 101.

1. Select **MAP** menu.
2. Select desired display option:
  - **Auto zoom:** The map scale is automatically set from the current vehicle location to the next navigation maneuver point.
  - **3D map:** Three-dimensional map display.
  - **North up:** The map always points north.
  - **Manual zoom:** Set the magnification factor of the map display.
  - **Show destination:** Select the navigation destination as a map section.
  - **Show position:** Select the current vehicle location as a map section.

## Show traffic information



Fig. 140: Show traffic information

Traffic information for the current location or for the set route guidance (Route) can be accessed in menu **NAV** and menu **MAP**.

The following information is displayed:

- Shaded areas: Indication of the length of the traffic disruption.
- Colored warning symbols: Imminent traffic disruption on the selected route. If route guidance off, all current traffic disruptions are highlighted in color.
- Grayed-out warning symbols: Traffic disruption which is not on the selected route.

1. Press button **NAV** or button **MAP**.

2. **Traffic** Select .

- ➔ A list of all traffic notices received is displayed.

The number displayed in the **Traffic** menu indicates the number of traffic notices on the selected route.

3. Select traffic notice.

- or -

Select **Show all traffic notices** to display all the traffic notices found.

Traffic notices are used to avoid traffic congestion and obstructions using dynamic route guidance. The detour can be activated using **Button MAP ▶ Route** ▶ **Dynamic reroute**.

### Information

Traffic notices are the responsibility of broadcasters. No responsibility is assumed for the completeness or accuracy of the information.

### Display real-time traffic information

- ✓ Active data connection available.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

1. Select **Button MAP ▶ Page menu** .

2. **OnlineTraffic** Select .

The following traffic flow information is displayed:

- Green lines: freely flowing traffic.
- Orange lines: slow-moving traffic.
- Red lines: traffic jam
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Accessing and configuring map view" on page 159.

### Information

- Porsche Connect (including Car Connect services, but not Safety and Security services) offers a free trial period varying in length according to service package and country, but always at least 3 months. More information about the free trial periods as well as subsequent costs and information about individual service availability for your country is available online at [www.porsche.com/connect](http://www.porsche.com/connect) or from your authorized Porsche dealer.
- Depending on the country, Porsche Connect can be used via the embedded SIM card or a data-enabled external SIM card. A separate, paid contract with a cellphone service provider is required for the external SIM card.

## Off-road navigation mode

### WARNING

Risk of accidents

Due to system-related inaccuracies and risks of the satellite navigation system malfunctioning, incorrect directions and malfunctions cannot be ruled out. The driver is always responsible for navigating the vehicle.

- ▶ Never rely solely on off-road navigation.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the terrain.

Off-road mode enables a section to be recorded (Trace) while driving in non-digitized areas. This occurs by setting waypoints.




## Activating and deactivating off-road mode

Off-road mode allows free navigation, even on unmarked roads and paths.

1. **Button NAV** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET NAV**
2. **Off-road mode** Select and confirm the prompt if necessary.
  - ➔ Off-road mode is activated/deactivated.


## Start recording and setting waypoints

- ✓ Off-road mode active

1. **Button MAP** ▶ **Start** 
2. Select **Add+** .
  - ➔ The current waypoint is recorded. Further waypoints (maximum 10) can be added.
3. To stop recording, select **Stop** 
4. **Save** Select .
5. Enter name and confirm with **OK**. The entry is saved as **NAV** ▶ **FAV** ★ ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Tour**.

## Driving via waypoints

- ✓ Off-road mode active

1. Select **button MAP** ▶ **FAV** ★ ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Tour** ▶ **Access the desired tour**.
2. **Select Start**  Select .
3. Select desired option:

- **Trace forward:** Waypoints are consecutively driven to from the start to the end point.
- **Trace backward:** Waypoints are consecutively driven to from the end to the start point.

- **From start:** Departure from the start point.
- **From here:** Departure from the current vehicle position.

## Changing navigation settings

- ▶ **Button NAV** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **Select desired setting**

## Changing map settings

- ▶ **Button MAP** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET MAP** ▶ **Select desired setting**
- **Map view:** Adapt the map display (North up, 3D map, 3D buildings) and the Map view.
- **Zoom:** Map scale adjustment.
- **Notices:** Configuring warnings when approaching a point of interest, low fuel level or national border.
- **General settings**

## Sport Chrono Stopwatch

### Functions

The Sport Chrono stopwatch can be used to clock desired times, e.g. on race tracks or on work routes. These times can be recorded and evaluated. Display in PCM is available depending on equipment.

The following information can be recorded and evaluated:

- Lap number
- Completed lap distance
- Lap time
- Various other information (e.g. vehicle location, speed or outside temperature)

During recording, the following can be displayed:

- Number of the current lap
- Fastest lap time and the current lap time in comparison
- How much of the lap has been completed in relation to a reference lap
- Color coding to indicate whether the current lap is slower, just as fast or faster than the previous fastest lap
- Remaining range and number of laps that can be driven with remaining fuel.
- Remaining recording time
- Optional: Course of the current lap and reference lap

## Operating Sport Chrono Stopwatch Stopwatch on the dashboard

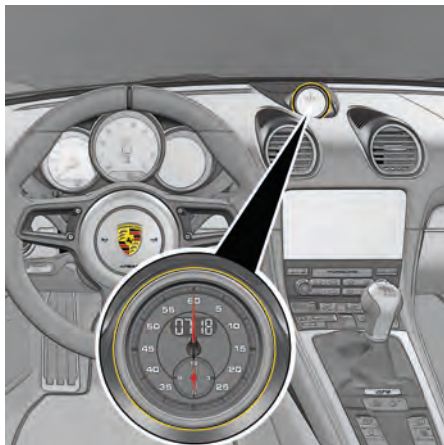


Fig. 141: Sport Chrono Stopwatch on the dashboard

The stopwatch has an analog and a digital display:

### Analog display

- Large hand: seconds
- Small hand: Hours and minutes

The display returns to zero after 12 hours.

### Digital display

- Seconds, 1/10 seconds and 1/100 seconds

The digital display and the multifunction display can display up to 99 hours and 59 minutes.

### Adjusting stopwatch brightness

► Refer to chapter "Instrument and Interior Lighting" on page 56.

### Switching stopwatch illumination on the dashboard on and off


► Refer to chapter "Instrument and Interior Lighting" on page 56.

### Displaying the time on the stopwatch

► Refer to chapter "Vehicle settings" on page 141.

### Displaying stopwatch time

The lap time can be displayed at various locations:

- In the Sport Chrono stopwatch on the dashboard.
- In the **Chrono** menu in the multifunction display.
- In the main menu **button CAR** under **SC**  in PCM.

### Timing in the multifunction display



Fig. 142: Chrono menu

**A** Lap counter - number of the current lap

**B** Current lap time (green: faster than the fastest lap, yellow: as fast as the fastest lap, red: slower than the fastest lap)

**C** Fastest lap time

**D** Circle diagram (how much of the lap has been completed compared to a reference lap)

### Information

If the **Chrono** menu is left while the stopwatch is running, the timing will continue.

The stopwatch stops when the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is switched on again within about 4 minutes, the stopwatch will start running again.

### Starting timing

#### ► CHRONO ► Start

- ➔ Recording of the data begins. If a reference lap has not been stored yet, the first lap in the recording is used as a reference lap.

### Stopping timing

✓ Timing has been started.

#### ► CHRONO ► Stop

### Continuing timing

✓ Timing has been stopped.

#### ► CHRONO ► Stop ► Continue

### Ending lap/starting new lap

When the stopwatch is running, the current stopwatch time is stored as the lap time.

- ✓ Timing has been started.

▶ **CHRONO ▶ Lap**

The lap counter **A** (Fig. 142) is increased by one. The time of the fastest completed lap is stored as the fastest lap time **C** (Fig. 142). The current lap time **B** (Fig. 142) and the circle diagram **D** (Fig. 142) indicate by color whether the current lap is faster, as fast as, or slower than the previous fastest lap.

**i** **Information**

A maximum of 99 laps can be saved for each recording.

**Taking split time**

- ✓ Timing has been started.

▶ **CHRONO ▶ Split time**

The split time is displayed briefly but not saved. Timing continues to run in the background.

**Resetting stopwatch time**

- ✓ Timing has been stopped.

▶ **CHRONO ▶ Stop ▶ Reset**

All stopwatch time displays are reset to zero.

**Displaying timing in PCM**

For information on operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM):  
 ▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

**Displaying stopwatch**

- ✓ Timing started.

▶ p. 162

1. **Button CAR ▶ SC**
2. Scroll (swipe) to stopwatch display.

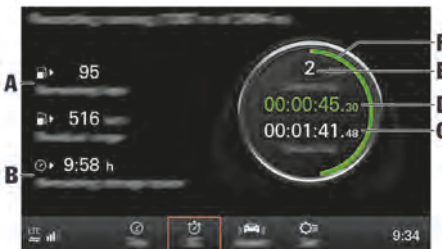


Fig. 143: Stopwatch display (recording in progress)

- A** Lap counter - number of the current lap
- B** Current lap time (green: faster than the fastest lap, yellow: as fast as the fastest lap, red: slower than the fastest lap)
- C** Fastest lap time
- D** Circle diagram (how much of the lap has been completed compared to a reference lap)
- E** Remaining memory available
- F** Number of laps that can be driven with the remaining fuel

**Show course**

- ✓ Timing started.  
 ▶ Refer to chapter "Timing in the multifunction display" on page 162.
- ✓ Use **Button CAR ▶ SC ▶ SET Sport Chrono** to activate **Record additional data** function.

1. **Button CAR ▶ SC**
2. Scroll (swipe) to course display.

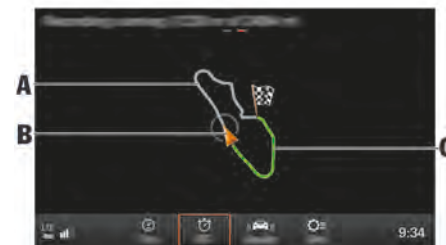


Fig. 144: Ongoing recording - course display

- A** Current vehicle position
- B** Current lap (green: faster than the fastest lap, yellow: as fast as the fastest lap, red: slower than the fastest lap)
- C** Reference lap (gray)

**Display and edit recordings**

99 laps can be recorded in each recording. If a reference lap has not been stored yet, the first lap in the recording is used as a reference lap. Up to 10 hours of data can be recorded.



**Displaying recordings**

- ✓ Timing stopped.  
 ▶ Refer to chapter "Timing in the multifunction display" on page 162.

1. **Button CAR ▶ SC ▶ Reset**
2. Scroll (swipe) to **Recordings** page.
3. Select **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. Recording\_001).





## Displaying recording statistics



1. Button **Button CAR** ▶ **SC** 
2. Scroll (swipe) to **Recordings** page.
3. Select **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. Recording\_001).
5. Select **STATISTIC**  in the controller.
  - ➔ Information about the individual laps is displayed.

## Display recorded course




- ✓ Use **Button CAR** ▶ **SC**  ▶ **SET Sport Chrono** to activate **Record additional data** function.

1. **Button CAR** ▶ **SC** 
2. Scroll (swipe) to **Recordings** page.
3. Select **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. Recording\_001).
5. Select **Map**  in the controller.
  - ➔ Information about the course of the lap is displayed.

## Displaying and editing lap


1. Button **Button CAR** ▶ **SC** 
2. Scroll (swipe) to **Recordings** page.
3. Select **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. Recording\_001).
5. Select **STATISTIC**  in the controller.
  - ➔ Information about the individual laps is displayed.
6. Select desired lap.

## 7. Select desired setting in the controller:

- **Store** : Store lap as reference lap
- **Map** : Display course of the lap
- **Delete** : Delete lap


## Setting reference lap

- ✓ Timing stopped and reset.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Timing in the multifunction display" on page 162.

1. Button **Button CAR** ▶ **SC** 
2. Scroll (swipe) to **Recordings** page.
3. Select a desired reference lap under **Reference laps**.
  - ➔ The desired reference lap is displayed.
4. Select **Set Ref.** in the controller.


## Setting options in PCM

### Managing recordings and reference laps

1. **Button CAR** ▶ **SC**  ▶ **Button OPT**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Rename data:** Reference laps and recordings can be renamed.
- **Transfer file:** Recordings and reference laps can be imported and exported using an SD card or USB storage device:
  - **Import:** To import a file, it must be stored on the storage medium in the "SportChrono" folder. Select the file to be imported via **Select** and **Deselect**. Import the selected file via **Import**.
  - **Export:** Select the file to be exported via **Select** and **Deselect**. Export the selected file via **Export**.
- **Delete file:** Reference laps and recordings can be deleted.

### Further settings

1. **Button CAR** ▶ **SC**  ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET Sport Chrono**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Record additional data:** As well as lap length and times, additional driving-related data (e.g. speed) can be recorded at 1 second intervals. The course can also be shown on the map.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Display and edit recordings" on page 163.
- **Difference in distance allowed:** Indicates by how much the length of a lap may deviate from the length of the reference lap. Laps with greater length deviations are not included in the evaluation.
- **Max. time difference for evaluation:** Indicates the maximum time difference within which recorded laps are flagged 'as fast as' (yellow).

## Phone

### Brief Overview – Phone

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions provided in the "Phone" section.

In particular, the brief overview is no substitute for safety messages and warnings.













For information on operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

► Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.



Fig. 145: Enter number (keypad)

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Connecting a phone via Bluetooth® (phone preparation)	► Button <b>PHONE</b> Connect phone ► Search for new phone	► p. 168
Use PCM with an external SIM card for making phone calls (availability dependent on country)	► Insert a SIM card into the SIM card slot (angled corner front left, chip facing downwards) <b>If required, Enter PIN</b> Confirm <b>data connection</b> .	► p. 168
Switch between two connected phones or smartphones	► Select  or  (A) in the header.	► p. 168
Establish phone data connection (connectivity)	► Establish data connection.	► p. 176
Dial number number	► Select <b>Button PHONE</b> ► <b>KEYPAD</b> (B) ► Enter number via numeric field (G) ►  (F).	► p. 168

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Accepting/rejecting a call	▶ Tap  <b>Accept</b> or  <b>Cancel (B)</b> .	▶ p. 168
Ending call	▶ Select  <b>Hang up</b> in the footer or the phone menu.	▶ p. 168
Starting a conference call	▶ <b>Key PHONE</b> ▶ Dial number ▶ <b>KEYPAD</b>  ▶  ▶ Dial number of other participant ▶  ▶ 	▶ p. 168
Check voicemail	▶ Press and hold <b>Key PHONE</b> ▶ <b>KEYPAD</b>  ▶ 1 	▶ p. 168
Display call list	▶ <b>Button PHONE</b> ▶ <b>Calls</b>  (F) ▶ <b>Select call list</b> .	▶ p. 168
Display messages	▶ <b>Button PHONE</b> ▶ <b>Message</b>  (D) ▶ <b>Text message or E-mail</b> ▶ <b>Select folder</b> .	▶ p. 168
Display a contact	▶ Select <b>Button PHONE</b> ▶ <b>Contacts</b>  (E).	▶ p. 168

## Information


A list of selected compatible phones is available at [www.porsche.com](http://www.porsche.com).


## Connecting a phone via Bluetooth®

### Connect new phone

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the phone is activated and is visible for other devices.
- ✓ Bluetooth® function is activated in PCM.

#### 1. **Button PHONE** ▶ **Connect phone** – or –

In the footer, select  or  (depending on connection status) **Phone**.

2. Select **Search for new phone** and select phone from device list.  
➔ A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in PCM and in the phone.
3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in PCM and phone.
4. If the Bluetooth® code in the phone matches, confirm.
5. If the phone has been successfully connected, the number entry (menu ) is displayed in PCM.

## Starting connection from phone

With smartphones, it is recommended to start the connection from the phone:

1. Search for available devices in the smartphone Bluetooth® menu. To display PCM, press the button **PHONE**. The **Connect phone** display must be visible for the connection procedure.
2. Select PCM from the list of available devices. The Bluetooth® device names in PCM can be displayed by selecting **Button PHONE** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET PHONE** ▶ **Bluetooth®** ▶ **Bluetooth® name**.

### Information



- Depending on the phone's Bluetooth® capability, the content of the phone book, call history and messages can be accessed. It is also possible to transfer an ongoing conversation to the cellphone after parking the vehicle and continue it outside the vehicle if the cellphone supports this function.
- A list of selected compatible phones is available online on the Porsche website for your country: **Models ▶ Your model (e.g. 911 Carrera) ▶ Catalogs & brochures ▶ Via Bluetooth®**

### Activating Bluetooth® in PCM

- ▶ Select **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Activate**

### Connecting to a recognized phone or smartphone

- ✓ The phone's Bluetooth® function is activated and is visible for other devices.
- ✓ Bluetooth® function is activated in PCM.
- ✓ Phone has already been connected to the PCM once.





1. In the footer, select  or  (depending on connection status) **Phone**.  
- or -  
**Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ Device manager**
2. Select **Phone**.  
➔ A list with a maximum of 20 recognized phones or smartphones is displayed.
3. Select a cellphone from the list.  
➔ Phone is connected via Bluetooth®.

### Information

After starting, PCM attempts to restore the previous device configuration automatically. If the devices are not available in the vehicle, the system searches for other known devices.

### Connecting and using a second cellphone

- ✓ A phone is already connected to PCM or the inserted SIM card is enabled for making calls.

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).  
- or -  
**Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ Device manager**
2. Select **Phone 2**.
3. Select phone from list or connect new phone.  
➔ Both connected cellphones can receive calls, but only the active cellphone can make calls.  
  
▶ Select  or  in the top bar to switch between two connected phones (see **A**, (Fig. 145)).

### Deleting a Bluetooth® device or displaying Bluetooth® information

1. **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Bluetooth devices**
2. Select a cellphone from the list.

3. To delete a phone from the list of known Bluetooth® devices, select **Delete**.  
- or -  
To view information for a Bluetooth® device, select **Details**.  
➔ The Bluetooth® address, connection status and available Bluetooth® profiles are displayed.  
  
- or -  
To connect or disconnect a Bluetooth® device and PCM, select **Establish connection/Disconnect**.

### Using PCM with an external SIM card for making phone calls (availability dependent on country)

In some countries, the inserted external SIM card can also be used to make and receive calls in addition to establishing a data connection. The embedded SIM card **cannot** be used for making and receiving calls. For information about data connection:

▷ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

An inserted external SIM card deactivates the function of the embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country). Additional costs may be incurred for the data connection (e.g. due to data roaming).

### Inserting and removing an external SIM card

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to PCM owing to incorrect use of SIM cards.

If you are using a SIM card adapter, there is a risk of the SIM card falling out of the adapter due to vibrations and components of the card getting stuck in PCM.

- ▶ Do not use a SIM card adapter.

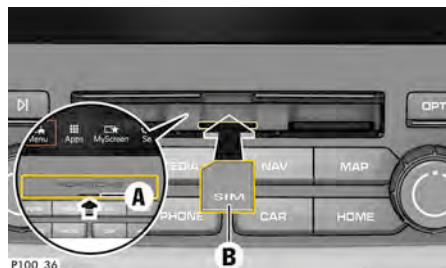


Fig. 146: Inserting and removing an external SIM card

- ✓ SD and SIM card reader cover **A** (Fig. 146) open.

1. Insert external SIM card **B** (Fig. 146) (mini-SIM, dimensions: 25x15 mm). The missing corner must be pointing front left with the chip facing down.

2. SIM card with PIN:

- Enter the PIN code of the external SIM card and confirm with **OK**.
- Select **Store PIN**.

3. Select **Enable** to enable the data connection.

- Activate **Always enable** to disable repeated prompting.

- ▶ To remove the external SIM card, press and remove the inserted card.

## **i** Information

- If the SIM card is used to make and receive calls as well as for data connection, it occupies one of the two slots available for phones. In this case, a second phone or smartphone can be connected and then switched between phone and smartphone on the one hand and the SIM card on the other hand.

For information on PIN settings for the SIM card:

## Phone functions

Various use options are available depending on model, country and equipment. The features described here are therefore not available in all models, countries and equipment versions.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Risk of accident through the use of phones or smartphones

The use of phones or smartphones while driving distracts from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Only make or receive calls using hands-free equipment.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Risk of injury

Phones must be switched off in certain danger areas, e.g., near service stations, fuel depots, chemical plants or during blasting work. They can disrupt technical equipment.

- ▶ Observe warnings, as well as statutory regulations and local restrictions.

## Displaying connection status

Depending on the connection status, the following displays are possible in the footer:

Depending on the model, country and equipment, the following displays may appear in the status area:

- No phone connected.
- No data connection available (possible causes: no connection, poor network quality, interruption of the data connection during a voice connection).
- Vehicle data connection via the LTE mobile network.
- Data connection via the UMTS/HSPA cellular network (3G).
- Data connection via the EDGE cellular network (GSM).
- Reception field strength of the mobile network for the connected phone function.
- Vehicle data connection via external WiFi hot-spot.

## Opening Device Manager

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Device Manager" on page 145.

## Dialing a phone number




### Entering a phone number (keypad)

1. **Button PHONE ▶ KEYPAD**
2. Enter a number using the dial field. If the phone number is known, the number is offered for selection (vCard is displayed).
3. Select.

### Information

DMTF (Dual Tone Multi Frequency) sounds and supplementary services (services that can be called up using the star and hash codes) are supported.

#### Opening the redial feature



1. **Button PHONE** ► **KEYPAD** 
2.  Select to display the last numbers entered on the keypad.
3.  Select .

### Information

The redial memory is cleared after the ignition is switched off.



#### Selecting a number from the call list

► p. 168



1. **Button PHONE** ►  **Calls**
2. Select the desired call list and entry.
3.  Select .

#### Selecting a number from Contacts

► p. 168

1. **Button PHONE** ► **Contacts** 
2. Search for and select the desired contact.
3. Select desired number.
4.  Select .

#### Check voice-mail

1. **Button PHONE** ► **KEYPAD** 
2.  Press and hold to check voice-mail messages.

### Information


When the function is used for the first time, a prompt to enter the voice-mail number appears once.


► p. 168

#### Accepting and ending a call

##### Accept/reject a call

✓ Incoming call.


- Select  **Accept**.  
– or –  
Press the Answer button on the phone.  
– or –  
Press the Answer button on the steering wheel.

- To reject the incoming call, select  **Re-ject**.  
– or –  
Press the End call button on the phone.  
– or –  
Press the End call button on the steering wheel.

### Information

With some devices, if the "Silent" or "Meeting" profile is set on the phone, no ringtone will sound in PCM for an incoming call.


#### Ending call

-  Select in the footer or the phone menu.  
– or –  
Press the End call button on the phone or smartphone.  
– or –  
Press the End call button on the steering wheel.

#### Functions available during a phone call



##### Muting microphone

✓ Phone call is active.

-  Select to mute the microphone.

##### Hold call

✓ Phone call is active.

1. Select  next to the **Connected** display.  
– or –  
Select **Button OPT** ► **Hold call**.
2. To resume the call, select  next to the **On hold** display.  
– or –  
Select **Button OPT** ► **Activate call**.

##### Starting a conference call

✓ Phone call is active.

1. **Button PHONE** ► **KEYPAD** 
2.  Select to add another call.

### 3. Add new call by:

- Selecting the new number using the dial field.
- or –
- Selecting a phone number from the call list.
- or –
- Select an existing contact from the phone-book.

### 4. Select .

### 5. Select to activate the conference call.

– or –  
**PHONE ▶ OPT ▶ Conference**

- ▶ To put the conference call on hold, select **PHONE ▶ OPT ▶ Hold conference call.**

## Switching (toggling) between two calls

- ✓ Phone call is active.
- ✓ Phone call is on hold.

- ▶ Select the conversation on hold to activate it and place the previously active conversation on hold.
- or –
- Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ Swap calls**

## Display call list

### Displaying call

#### 1. **Button PHONE ▶ Calls**

2. Scroll (swipe) to desired page:

3. Select an entry from the call list.  
➔ The detailed view is displayed.

## Operating the phone via the multifunction display

For information on using the multifunction display:  
▶ Refer to chapter "Multifunction Display" on page 102.

### Dial phone number

1. Select **Phone** menu.
2. Find the desired number in the list and select the entry.

- **Phonebook**
- **Previous calls**

### Accepting or declining call

- ✓ Incoming call.

▶ Select **Phone** menu.

- **Accept call**
- **Reject call**

## Managing several calls simultaneously and ending a call

- ✓ Active phone call.

▶ Select **Phone** menu.

- **New call:** Call another participant during an active phone call.
- **Swap:** Switch between the participants to conduct separate phone calls.
- **Conference:** Add callers to a conference.
- **End call:** End the active phone conversation.


## Using Contacts

### Display a contact

▶ **Button PHONE ▶ Contacts** 

### Search for contact

The right alphabetical strip can be used to find the desired contact from the first letter. Alternatively, search by text entry.

1. **Button PHONE ▶ Contacts**  ▶ **Search for contact**

2. Enter the name using the input field.  
➔ A list of results is displayed.

3. Select the desired entry.

### Send contact

1. **Button PHONE ▶ Contacts** 

2. Select contact.  
➔ The contact details are displayed.

3. Press the **OPT** button.

4. Select **Send as vCard.**

5. Select send (**Text message, E-Mail**) or save option (**SD, USB**) depending on availability.


### Sort contact list

1. **Button PHONE ▶ Contacts**  ▶ **Button OPT ▶ Sort criteria**

2. Select sorting sequence **Last name, First name** or **First name, Last name.**



## Adding a favorite to MyScreen

1. Button **HOME** ▶ MyScreen  ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ SET MyScreen
2. Select **MyScreen 1**, **MyScreen 2** or **MyScreen 3**.
3. Select **Phone** category.
4. Drag & drop the tile of the contact name into any container on the left preview side. When a green border appears, the tile can be dropped in the container.
5. Exit the **Configure MyScreen** menu via **X** or **←**.
6. Select **Touch here to select a contact.**  
➔ The contact list opens.
7. Select the desired contact.  
➔ The contact details are displayed.
8. Select phone number.  
➔ The contact is stored as a favorite in the selected view.

## Deleting favorites in MyScreen

▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

## Changing phone settings

### General settings

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ SET **PHONE** ▶ Phone
2. Select desired setting:
  - **Switch PCM phone on/off:** Switches the phone module in PCM off/on.
  - **Enable inserted SIM card for calls:** Use external SIM inserted in card reader for calls (otherwise only data services).

- **Network operator search:** Select network provider or activate automatic network operator search.
- **SIM card:** Change the settings for the inserted external SIM card.
- **Vicemail number:** Display or change the mailbox phone number for the connected phone.
- **Serial number:** Display IMEI serial number of the PCM phone module.

### Settings available during a phone call (private mode)

- ✓ Phone is connected via Bluetooth® and supports the function.
- ✓ Call established.

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ Button **OPT**
2. Select desired setting:

- **Activate private mode:** The hands-free set transfers the call to the phone.

### Manage Bluetooth® functions and devices

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ SET **PHONE** ▶ Bluetooth
2. Select desired setting:

- **Add new device:** Search for new Bluetooth® device and connect to PCM.
- **Bluetooth devices:** Manage known Bluetooth® devices, connect PCM with known Bluetooth® device.
- **Activate/deactivate Bluetooth:** Switch Bluetooth® off or on.
- **Notice: Don't forget your phone:** Activates a reminder for a connected Bluetooth® device on leaving the vehicle.
- **Bluetooth name:** Set the PCM Bluetooth® name.

## Configure WiFi settings

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ SET **PHONE** ▶ WiFi settings

2. Select desired setting:
  - **Activate/deactivate WiFi:** Switch PCM WiFi function on/off.
  - **Configure WiFi hotspot in PCM:** Display and set up PCM WiFi access data. This data is required to connect a device (e.g. phone) to PCM via WiFi and to use the PCM WiFi hotspot.
  - **Use external data connection:** To establish a data connection with an external WiFi hotspot (e.g. public hotspot).
  - **Connect to WiFi hotspot:** Search for new WiFi hotspot and enter the access data for the hotspot (user name and password). Observe upper and lower case when entering the data.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

## Deleting external WiFi hotspot

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ Connection ▶ Data connection
2. Select the icon  of the WiFi hotspot to be deleted.

## Configure data connections

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ Button **OPT** ▶ SET **PHONE** ▶ Data connections
2. Select desired setting:

- **Data connections:**
  - **On:** Data connections are always enabled.
  - **Off:** Data connections are disabled.
  - **Prompt:** Before using the data connection, a message appears asking if the data connection should be enabled.
- **Share data connection:** Enable data connection for WiFi devices.
- **Roaming:** Allow or block data connections to other networks.
- **Configure Access Point (APN):** Change network access data for the SIM card data connection (APN name, user name and password).
- **Reset access point configuration:** Reset APN settings to factory settings.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connecting & pairing vehicle” on page 176.

## Managing Contacts

1. **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Contacts**
2. Select desired setting:
  - **Contact memory:** Display the used contact memory.
  - **Sort criteria:** Sort the contacts stored in the phone by first or last name.
  - **Sync contacts:** Contacts from the SIM card or the Bluetooth®-connected phone can be manually transferred to PCM.

## Changing tone settings

- ✓ The phone is connected with PCM or a SIM card is inserted.
1. **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET TELEPHONE ▶ Tone settings**
  2. Select desired setting:
    - **Select ringtone:** Set the PCM ringtone if it is not transferred via Bluetooth® to the connected phone.
    - **Ringtone volume:** Set the ringtone volume.
    - **Microphone sensitivity:** Set microphone sensitivity for phone calls.
    - **Alert tone for messages:** Set or disable the alert tone for messages.

## Configuring call settings

- ✓ A SIM card is inserted in PCM or the phone is connected via Bluetooth® and supports the function.
1. **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT**
  2. Select desired setting:
    - **Call forwarding:** Configure call forwarding.
    - **Call waiting:** When this function is activated, a call waiting sound is heard if another call comes in during an active conversation.
    - **Show my number:** When this function is activated, your own phone number is transmitted to the other party.

## Stowing and charging a phone

### Stowing the phone

**For USA:**

**This is a device for END USERS.**

- BEFORE USING THIS DEVICE, YOU MUST REGISTER IT with your wireless service provider and obtain their approval. Most mobile radio service providers agree to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not agree to the use of this device on their network. If in doubt, contact your provider.
- In Canada, you must meet all the requirements specified in ISED CPC-2-1-05 BEFORE USE.
- You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables in accordance with the manufacturer’s specifications. Antennas MUST be installed at least 8 inches (20 cm) away from all persons.
- You MUST immediately stop operating this device if this is required by FCC (or ISED in Canada) or a licensed mobile radio service provider.
- WARNING. When making emergency calls with this device, no, or only inaccurate, position data may be transmitted.

Link to ISED CPC-2-1-05:

[https://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/eng/h\\_sf06136.html](https://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/eng/h_sf06136.html)

- CPC-2-1 – Fixed radio service and mobile country radio service
- CPC-2-1-05 – Area amplifier

### FCC declaration regarding radiofrequency radiation exposure

This device corresponds to the FCC radiation exposure limits defined for uncontrolled environments. End users must refer to the specific operating in-

structions below for compliance with radiofrequency radiation exposure limits. This radio transmitter must not be located in the same location as other antennas or radio transmitters or be operated together with them. Any amendments or modifications not expressly approved by Molex may result in the user losing the entitlement to operate this device.

**FCC ID / IC ID**

FCC ID: RK7MBC NAR2

IC: 4774A MBCNAR2

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC regulations and the RSS standard(s) of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference.
- This device shall accept all radio interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: RK7193-00

IC: 4774A-19300

Any amendments or modifications not expressly approved by Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH may result in the user losing the entitlement to operate this device.

**NOTE:** This device complies with HF exposure guidelines set forth in FCC regulations and the licence-free Industry Canada RSS standards at a distance of 1.7 inch/4.2 cm under normal conditions of use. This signal amplifier meets the FCC requirements for the Network Protection Standard (NPS).

**Pour Canada:**

Pour les enrichisseurs de zone de consommation: Ce produit est un appareil de CONSOMMATION.

- AVANT DE L'UTILISER, vous DEVEZ conformer à toutes les exigences établies dans la CPC-2-1-05.
- Vous DEVEZ utiliser cet appareil avec des antennes et des câbles approuvés, conformément aux indications du fabricant. Les antennes DOIVENT être installées à au moins 20 cm d'une personne.
- Vous DEVEZ cesser d'utiliser cet appareil immédiatement à la demande d'ISDE ou d'un fournisseur de services sans fil autorisé.
- AVERTISSEMENT: Les renseignements relatifs à l'emplacement du service E911 pourraient être non fournis ou inexacts pour les appels effectués au moyen de cet appareil.

lien vers la CPC-2-1-05 d'ISDE:

[https://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/fra/h\\_sf06136.html](https://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/fra/h_sf06136.html)

- CPC-2-1 — Mobile fixe et terrestre
- CPC-2-1-05 - Enrichisseurs de zone

Les changements ou modifications non approuvés expressément par Molex peuvent entraîner la caducité de l'autorisation d'utiliser l'équipement.

**FCC ID/ IC ID**

FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR2

IC 4774A-MBCNAR2

FCC/Notice d'industrie du Canada

Cet équipement est considéré comme conforme aux conditions de la section 15 de la réglementation de la FCC et aux normes CNR exemptes de licence d'Innovation, des Sciences et du développement économique. Il répond aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. Ce dispositif ne causera aucune interférence nuisible;
2. Ce dispositif peut accepter toute interférence reçue, notamment l'interférence entraînant un fonctionnement indésirable.

FCC ID: RK7193-00

IC: 4774A-19300

Les changements ou modifications non approuvés expressément par Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH peuvent entraîner la caducité de l'autorisation d'utiliser l'équipement.

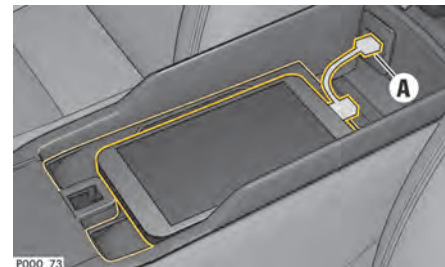


Fig. 147: Storage compartment in the front center console

Depending on the equipment, a special smartphone tray (available depending on country) is built into the center console.

It provides a connection to the vehicle's external antenna and features a USB (Type A) connection for charging the phone and connecting it to PCM. The USB ports only work when the ignition is switched on. In the case of a phone connected via Bluetooth®, use of the external antenna ensures lower radiation levels in the vehicle and better reception quality.

- ▶ Place the phone with the display facing upward centrally onto the phone symbol in the smartphone tray. Ensure that there are no objects between the tray and the phone or smartphone.

### Information

Activating the keyboard/code lock is recommended before placing the phone or smartphone in the center console.

---

### Charging phone

- ▶ Connect the phone or smartphone to USB connection (Type A) **A** with a USB charging cable.

# Porsche Connect

## Setting up Porsche Connect

### Important information about Porsche Connect

#### Availability

The availability of Porsche Connect varies depending on the country and equipment.

Due to the ongoing further development of Connect Services, designation and function changes are reserved. Accordingly, the contents described may differ.

#### Data connection

A data connection is required to use Porsche Connect Services. The data connection can be established via the integrated SIM card or an external WiFi hotspot, depending on the country.

For information about establishing a data connection:

► Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176.

#### Information

For legal reasons, customer identity verification is required to **use the integrated SIM card** in some countries. The customer's identity must be verified by means of an identity document before activation of the Porsche Connect services. Verification is performed by a third-party provider (IDnow) in the form of a video call.

The currently active data connection is displayed in the status area of Porsche Communication Management (PCM) and in the Device Manager.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

► Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

#### Registration procedure

Depending on the country and equipment, registration procedures may vary.

#### Information

More information on Porsche Connect can be found at:

► [www.porsche.com/connect](http://www.porsche.com/connect)

#### Porsche Connect Services

Depending on the country and equipment, the available Porsche Connect services may vary.

#### Information

- The Porsche Connect Service package includes many Porsche Connect services for a free inclusive period, which can vary in duration for each service and country. More information about the free inclusive periods as well as subsequent costs and information about the availability of individual services for your country is available online at [www.porsche.com/connect](http://www.porsche.com/connect) or from your authorized Porsche dealer.
- The Porsche Connect services are used via the integrated SIM card or the external WiFi hotspot (availability dependent on country).
- Additional costs may be incurred for receiving data packages from the Internet, depending on the cell phone rate plan, particularly when the system is used in foreign countries. We recommend a data flat rate.

Service availability and scope, as well as service providers, may vary by country, model year, device and tariff.

#### Use while driving

If Porsche Communication Management (PCM) or other components in the vehicle are operated while driving, there is a risk distraction. You may not be able to respond to dangerous situations in time. For this reason, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

#### WARNING

Setting and operating while driving

Configuring settings and operating the multi-function steering wheel, infotainment system, etc. while driving can distract you from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- Only operate these components while driving if the traffic situation allows.
  - If in doubt, stop when it is safe to do so. Only perform extensive operations and adjustments while the vehicle is at a standstill.
- 
1. Only use the multifunction steering wheel, infotainment system, etc., while driving if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely. If in doubt, stop in a safe place.
  2. Do not use a telephone or other mobile device while driving.
  3. Only make or receive calls using hands-free equipment.
  4. Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes while driving. Otherwise, you may not be able to react fast enough to dangerous situations.

## Apps

Various apps are available for your vehicle, depending on the country (download from Apple App Store or Google Play Store).

### WARNING

Setting and operating while driving

Configuring settings and operating apps while driving can distract you from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Operate and adjust settings only while the vehicle is stationary.



### Information

More information on Porsche Connect can be found at:

▶ [www.porsche.com/connect](http://www.porsche.com/connect)

## Register and activate My Porsche

My Porsche is the central platform for managing personal vehicles, using relevant services and a contact point for further offers. Access to My Porsche is via the personal Porsche ID.

The Porsche ID is a verified email address that is used by a My Porsche Connect user in My Porsche, the Porsche Connect store and in the vehicle and My Porsche App.

The Porsche Connect user (Porsche ID) can be both main user and secondary vehicle user. Secondary users, e.g. family members, must be invited and activated by the main user in My Porsche. Each secondary user then receives their own Porsche ID and can configure the services according to their personal

preferences provided the main user has authorized this in the portal. However, the main user reserves the right to purchase services.

The user also has the option to make personal settings in the My Porsche portal or e.g. to make service appointments.

The services and functions are available depending on the country and equipment.

## Logging into the My Porsche portal

- ✓ Porsche ID account is activated.

1. Open My Porsche.

▶ [my.porsche.com](http://my.porsche.com)

2. Enter and open the login data (Porsche ID and password).

## Activate Porsche ID account and Porsche Connect services

- ✓ Email has been received to activate the Porsche ID account.

1. Click the "Activate Porsche ID Account" button in the email and enter the confirmation code (sent to the cell phone number on file).

2. **Set the password and security code** for the Porsche ID account.

3. Complete profile details and activate the free Porsche Connect inclusive period, which is available in some countries. (is automatically performed in the background depending on the country).

4. The 8-digit pairing code that you need to use the Porsche Connect services in your vehicle is displayed on the home screen or in the app.

5. To enter in Porsche Communication Management (PCM), send the pairing code by text message to the cell phone number on file in My Porsche.

– or –

Note the pairing code.



### Information

If no e-mail was received to activate the Porsche ID, please contact your Porsche partner.

## Configure services

- ✓ Porsche ID account is activated.

1. Open My Porsche.

▶ [my.porsche.com](http://my.porsche.com)

2. Log in with personal access data (Porsche ID and password).

3. Select the **Services** tab.  
➡ Available services are displayed.

4. Select the desired service.

5. Activate and configure.

## Connecting & pairing vehicle

### Establishing data connection via an embedded SIM

Establishing data connection via embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country).

- ✓ **No SIM card** in the SIM card reader.
- ✓ PCM phone is switched on (**Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Phone ▶ Switch on PCM phone**).

The data connection is established immediately when the ignition is switched on.


### **i** Information

If a data connection cannot be established, check the following:

- PCM phone is switched on.
- The vehicle is in an area with sufficient network reception (not a coverage blackspot).

- ▶ If necessary, Restart PCM.

## Displaying data packages

- ▶ **Button HOME ▶ APPS  ▶ Data packages**
  - ➔ Information about the booked data package is displayed.

## Establishing a data connection via an external SIM card

An inserted external SIM card deactivates the function of the embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country). Additional costs may be incurred for the data connection (e.g. due to data roaming).

### NOTE

Risk of damage to PCM owing to incorrect use of SIM cards.

If you are using a SIM card adapter, there is a risk of the SIM card falling out of the adapter due to vibrations and components of the card getting stuck in PCM.

- ▶ Do not use a SIM card adapter.

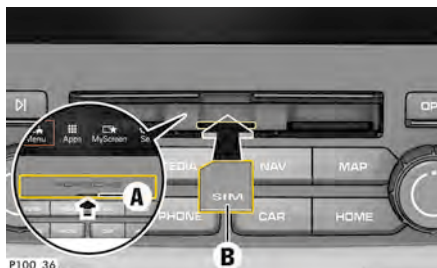


Fig. 148: Inserting and removing an external SIM card

- ✓ PCM Phone is switched on (**Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Phone ▶ Switch on PCM phone**).
- ✓ SD and SIM card reader cover (Fig. 148) **A** open.

1. Insert external SIM card (Fig. 148) **B** (mini-SIM card, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm). The missing corner must be pointing front left with the chip facing down.
2. SIM card with PIN:
  - a. Enter the PIN code of the external SIM card and confirm with **OK**.
  - Select **b. Store PIN**.
3. Select **Enable** to enable the data connection. Activate **✓ Always enable** to switch off repeated query. The data connection is established.

- ▶ To remove the external SIM card, press and remove the inserted card.

### **i** Information

If a data connection cannot be established, check the following:

- PCM phone is switched on.
- External SIM card has sufficient data volume and is inserted correctly.
- External SIM card is not damaged and is working properly.
- APN settings (Internet access) are correct. The APN settings can be checked by contacting the network provider.
- Abroad: Data roaming is allowed on the external SIM card and enabled in the PCM.
- The vehicle is in an area with sufficient network reception (not a coverage blackspot).

- ▶ If necessary, Restart PCM.

## Selecting access point for external SIM card

If several access points are available, the message **Several access points are available. Please select one.** may appear. A list of available access points (APNs) is displayed.

- ▶ Select the desired access point (APN).
- ▶ If there is no access point configured on the external SIM card, you should contact the service provider to obtain the APN settings. To configure the APN settings in PCM, under **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT** select **SET PHONE ▶ Data connections ▶ Configure APN**. To reset settings, select **Reset access point configuration**.



## Establishing data connection via external WiFi hotspot

- ✓ No SIM card in the SIM card reader.
- ✓ Vehicle with embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country): PCM Phone is switched off (**Button PHONE ▶ APPS** ▶ **SET PHONE ▶ Phone ▶ Switch off PCM phone**).

1. **Button PHONE ▶ Button OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ WiFi settings.**
2. Optionally activate WiFi via **Activate WiFi**.
3. Activate **Use external data connection**.
4. Select **Connect to WiFi hotspot**.
5. Find WiFi hotspot (e.g., public hotspot or the phone's or smartphone's personal hotspot) and enter WiFi access data in PCM. Observe upper and lower case when entering the data.
  - ➔ A connection is established to the external WiFi hotspot.

## Log in Porsche ID (Porsche Connect user) in PCM

For some services, a pairing code must be entered in PCM to retrieve personal settings from My Porsche.

1. **Button HOME ▶ APPS ▶ Button OPT**
2. **Login Porsche Connect ▶ Create new user ▶ Enter pairing code.**
3. Enter pairing code.

## Managing and setting

### Using services via My Porsche

Activated services can be configured and used via My Porsche (country-dependent).

1. Open My Porsche.
  - ▶ my.porsche.com
2. Log in with personal access data (Porsche ID and password).
3. Select the **Services** tab.
  - ➔ Available services are displayed.
4. Select the desired service.
5. Activate and configure.

For further information on the service: visit  
▶ [www.porsche.com/connect](http://www.porsche.com/connect).

### Updating content in PCM

- ▶ **Button HOME ▶ APPS ▶ Button OPT ▶ Reload services**
  - ➔ The contents of the purchased services are updated.

### Displaying service messages

- ▶ **Button HOME ▶ APPS ▶ Button OPT ▶ Service information**
  - ➔ Information about the services purchased and the contract duration is displayed.

### Logging out Porsche ID (Porsche Connect user) in PCM

- ✓ A Porsche ID is created and registered.

1. **Button HOME ▶ APPS ▶ Button OPT**
2. **Logout from Porsche Connect**
  - ➔ The user currently logged in is logged out.

### Adding navigation destination

Navigation destinations can be set either in the My Porsche portal or directly in the vehicle.

#### Adding a navigation destination in the My Porsche portal

- ✓ Porsche ID account is activated.

1. Open My Porsche.
2. Log in with personal access data (Porsche ID and password).
3. Select the **Services** tab.
  - ➔ Available services are displayed.
4. Select **Navigation Plus** service.
5. Select **Add new destination**.
6. Enter destination data.
  - ➔ Destination is displayed in My Porsche and can be edited, marked, deleted or sent to the vehicle.

## Apple CarPlay

### Opening Apple CarPlay in PCM

#### **i** Information

- The function can only be offered in countries supported by Apple®. For information on country availability: See Apple website.
- Only those apps in the iPhone you are using that are supported by Apple CarPlay are displayed. For further information on the supported apps: See Apple website.
- Additional costs may be incurred, depending on the cellphone rate, particularly when used in foreign countries. We recommend using a data flat rate.
- The displayed content and features of the Apple CarPlay function are provided solely by the connected iPhone.
- When Apple CarPlay is used, any active Bluetooth® connections, e.g. for telephone, media playback or news, are automatically disconnected. An inserted SIM card cannot be used for making calls while this app is in use.
- We recommend that you install the latest iOS version.
- Some apps require an active data connection.

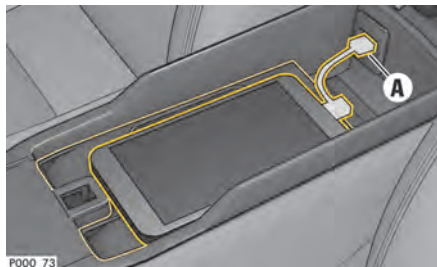



Fig. 149: USB port (type A) and equipment-dependent AUX connection in the center console

- ✓ iPhone 8 or later, iOS 14 or higher.
- ✓ Siri and Apple CarPlay must be activated in the settings of the iPhone you are using.

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB interface (type A) **A** in the center console. The USB interface only works when the ignition is on.

▷ Refer to chapter "Operating PCM" on page 112.

2. Confirm that Apple CarPlay is to be used.
  - Available apps are displayed.

3. Button **HOME** ▶ **Menu**  ▶ **Apple CarPlay**

#### **i** Information



Depending on the country and equipment, there is a USB port in the center console as well as a USB port and a universal audio (AUX) port in the glove compartment. If there is a USB port in the center console, Apple CarPlay can only be used via this port.

For information on operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

▷ Refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 110.

### Operating Apple CarPlay with the PCM

All available apps can be operated using the touchscreen, the rotary/push knob, and the back button on the PCM.

▶ To access the main menu within **Apple CarPlay** , select **Home button**  on the PCM touch display.

▶ To switch to the main functions of the PCM, press the **HOME** ▶ **Porsche** button.  
- or -  
Press any direct selection button (e.g. **TUNER**).

### Operating Apple CarPlay via Siri voice recognition

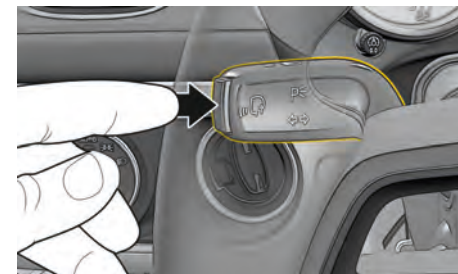




Fig. 150: Voice control button on the control lever


#### Starting Siri


- ✓ Siri must be activated in the settings of the iPhone you are using.
- ✓ Ignition and PCM are on.
- ✓ No phone call active.

- ✓ Parking aid not active.
- ✓ Voice control of the PCM is not active.

1. Press and hold the  button on the control lever.
  - or –
  - Press and hold **Select Home button**  on the touchscreen of the PCM.
2. Say the desired voice command.

### Stop Siri

- ✓ Voice control is active and waiting for a voice command.
  - ▶ Press and hold the  button on the control lever.
    - ➔ A fading signal sounds.
    - or –
    - Say the voice command **Cancel** or **End**.
    - or –
    - Press any button on the PCM.
    - ➔ The relevant function is activated.

Briefly pressing the  button on the control lever activates the voice recognition function of the PCM.

▶ Refer to chapter "Voice Control" on page 114.



### Switching between using the iPhone as an iPod or Apple CarPlay

If the iPhone is connected as an iPod after it has been connected to the USB port in the center console, Apple CarPlay cannot be used.

You can switch between using the iPhone as an iPod and Apple CarPlay™ using the Device Manager.



Fig. 151: Opening Device Manager

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).
2. Select the **Smartphone link**.
3. Select iPhone being used.
4. **Select Use as iPod**
  - or –
  - Select **Use in Apple CarPlay mode**.

### Fuel Prices

With the **Fuel Prices** service (availability dependent on country), gas stations in the current vicinity, at the destination or at another location can be displayed in Porsche Communication Management (PCM). The selected gas station can be set as a navigation destination and saved as a favorite.



#### Displaying Fuel Prices

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.

1. **Button HOME** ▶ **APPS** 
2. Select **Fuel Prices** .


3. Select the desired option:

- **Search:** Looks for a certain gas station.
- **Nearby:** Displays gas stations in the vicinity of the vehicle.
- **At destination:** If route guidance is active, gas stations at the destination are displayed.
- **At stopover:** If route guidance is active and a stopover is entered, gas stations in the vicinity of the stopover location are displayed.
- **At another location:** Gas stations at a desired location are displayed.

1. Select gas station.
  - ➔ Information such as phone number is displayed.
2. Select **Save** +  to save the gas station as a favorite or **Select Start**  to start route guidance to the gas station.

### Changing settings

Various settings such as sort criteria (sorting gas stations according to distance or price) can be selected.

1. **Button HOME** ▶ **APPS**  ▶ **Button OPT**
2. Select the desired setting.

### Message Dictation

You can use the **Message Dictation** service to record a message via voice control. This service is not available in all languages and countries, and depends on the phone or smartphone used. Service cannot be used with Apple® devices.

## Connecting phone or smartphone via Bluetooth®



### WARNING

Risk of accident through the use of phones or smartphones

The use of phones or smartphones while driving distracts from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Only make or receive calls using hands-free equipment.



### WARNING

Risk of injury

Phones must be switched off in certain danger areas, e.g., near service stations, fuel depots, chemical plants or during blasting work. They can disrupt technical equipment.

- ▶ Observe warnings, as well as statutory regulations and local restrictions.

## Connecting new phone or smartphone

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the phone or smartphone is activated and visible for other devices.
- ✓ Bluetooth® function is activated in PCM.

1. Button **PHONE** ▶ **Connect phone**  
– or –


In the footer, select  or  (depending on connection status) **Phone**.

2. Select **Search for new phone** and select phone or smartphone from list of devices.

➔ A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in PCM and in the smartphone.

3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in PCM with the Bluetooth® code in the phone or smartphone.

4. If the Bluetooth® code in the phone or smartphone matches, confirm. If required, enter PIN for the external SIM card in PCM.

➔ When the phone is successfully connected, the numeric keypad (menu **KEYPAD** ) is displayed in PCM.

## Connecting a smartphone (Windows® and iOS® operating system)

For smartphones with Windows® or iOS® operating systems, it is recommended to start connection from the phone:

1. Search for available devices in the smartphone Bluetooth® menu. Select button **PHONE** to display PCM. The **Connect phone** display must be visible for the connection procedure.
2. Select PCM from the list of available devices. The Bluetooth® device names in PCM can be displayed by selecting **Button PHONE** ▶ **Button OPT** ▶ **SET PHONE** ▶ **Bluetooth®** ▶ **Bluetooth® name**.



### Information

- Depending on the Bluetooth® capability of the phone or smartphone, the phone book, call history and message content can be accessed. You can also, after parking the vehicle, transfer an ongoing call to your phone or smartphone and continue it outside the vehicle if the phone supports this.
- A list of selected compatible phones and smartphones is available on the Porsche website for your country under: **Models Your model (e.g. 911 Carrera)** ▶ **Catalogs and brochures** ▶ **Via Bluetooth®**

## Opening voice control



### WARNING

Impaired speech recognition

The voice can change in stressful situations. This could lead to the desired phone connection not being established, or not being established fast enough.



- ▶ Do not use voice control in an emergency.
- ▶ Enter the emergency number via the touch display.




### Information

- The **Sound** and **CAR** main menus cannot be operated via voice control.
- The voice control function does not support all system languages.


## Starting voice control

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
  - ✓ There are no active phone calls.
  - ✓ ParkAssist is not active.
1. Press button  on the control lever.
    - ➔ A rising acoustic signal is heard and the  symbol for voice control appears in PCM.
  2. Say the voice command.

## Ending voice control

- ✓ Voice control is active.
- ▶ Press button  on the control lever.
- ➔ A fading acoustic signal sounds.
  - or –
  - Say the voice command **Cancel** or **End**.
  - or –
  - Press any button on the PCM.

## Further voice control button functions

The  button on the control lever activates different functions, depending on the application:

- Activated by briefly pressing the PCM voice control.
- Activated by pressing and holding Siri® voice recognition.
- Ends ongoing notices from the voice control function.
- Jumps to the next part of the notice.
- Cancels an ongoing dialog.

## Information

- Navigation announcements and traffic notices are not issued during a dialog.
- When the voice control function is activated, list entries can be selected using the voice control, the rotary push button or the touchscreen.
- If the spoken voice command is not understood or if it cannot be interpreted, voice control responds with the question **Excuse me?** and the voice command can be repeated. After the second attempt, PCM offers help.
- Depending on the selected menu language and the selected country (via **button NAV ▶ Menu Destination input**), destinations may have to be spelled out when inputting.

In order to ensure problem-free communication with the voice control function, the following points should be noted:

- Speak clearly and at a normal volume.
- Speak louder at higher speeds.
- Stress voice commands evenly, without long pauses.
- Do not speak when the voice control is making an announcement.
- Reduce disturbing noises, e.g. by closing doors, windows and sunroof.
- Only issue voice commands as driver, as the hands-free microphone is directed toward the driver's side.

## Dictating and reading out messages

The **Message Dictation** service can be used, e.g. to dictate text messages or emails and play back incoming messages from PCM.

- ✓ Phone is connected to PCM.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.
- ✓ The connected smartphone supports the function.
- ✓ Voice control is activated.

## Message Dictation

- ▶ Say the voice command: **Dictate e-mail**
- or –
  - Dictate text message**
  - ➔ The dictated message is displayed in PCM for the user to check.

## Reading out messages

- ▶ Say the voice command:
- Read out (new) e-mail**
  - or –
  - Read out (new) text message**
  - ➔ The message is read out.

## Real-time Traffic Info

With the **Real-time Traffic Info** service (availability dependent on country), the current traffic volume is highlighted in color in the map view of Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

## Display real-time traffic information

The following traffic flow information is displayed:

- Green lines: Free traffic flow
- Orange lines: Slow-moving traffic
- Red lines: Traffic jam

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.

1. Select **Button MAP** ▶ **Page menu** 

2. Select **Online Traffic**.

- ➔ The icon turns red when the function is active and white when the function is inactive.

## My Porsche App

### My Porsche App

The app, which is available depending on the country, offers the option of networking the smartphone with the vehicle (designation and functions subject to change).

This allows vehicle-specific information to be retrieved directly using a smartphone and selected vehicle settings to be made via the app.

The App also provides insight into current information on the Porsche brand, e.g., new products or events.

The availability of app functions depends on the respective vehicle model, model year, vehicle equipment as well as the local availability of the respective function in the offer market.

### Using app functions

#### **WARNING**

Setting and operating while driving

Configuring settings and operating apps while driving can distract you from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Operate and adjust settings only while the vehicle is stationary.

In order to use the full range of functions in the app, the following requirements must be met:

- ✓ App connected to PCM.
- ✓ Private mode deactivated.
- ✓ Remote access authorization granted in the PCM.
- ✓ Connect Services are activated.
- ✓ Authorization granted on mobile device.

▶ Refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 175.

For information on establishing a WiFi connection in the PCM please ▶ Refer to chapter "Connecting & pairing vehicle" on page 176. note:

#### **Information**

You can obtain detailed information on app installation and functions you can get directly in the app and at

▶ [www.porsche.com/connect](http://www.porsche.com/connect) or from your Porsche partner.


## News


The **News** service (availability dependent on country) can be used to display selected interest-based news feeds (news channels) in Porsche Communication Management (PCM). News can be read by PCM via voice control.

### Using News in PCM

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.
- ✓ Pairing code is entered in PCM.

1. **Button HOME** ▶ **APPS** 

2. Under **News** , select the desired news channel and news articles from the list.  
➔ News text is displayed in PCM.

3. Select **Read out**  to have the text read out using the voice function.

## Read out News

Voice control system can be used to read out current news articles from PCM.

For information on voice control:


► Refer to chapter "Voice Control" on page 114.

## Online Map Update

The **Online Map Update** service (availability dependent on country) can be used to update the navigation system maps online.

### Updating navigation system maps

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.

1. **Button NAV** ► **Button OPT** ► **SET Nav**
2. Select **Refresh data** ► **Online update**.
3. Select download package. If more recent navigation maps are available, select the desired region.
4. Select **Start**  to start the update.



#### Information

Up to 3 regions can be refreshed per update. If additional regions are required, contact an authorized Porsche dealer.


## Online search

The **Online search** service (availability dependent on country) can be used to search for destinations from the Internet (e.g. restaurants or shopping at the des-

tination). Besides name and address, the search results provide additional information, e.g. telephone number, opening hours.

### Searching for points of interest via the Internet

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.


1. **Online search** ► **buttonNAV**
2. Enter search term (e.g. city, street, name).
3. Select desired entry from the list.
4. To start route guidance to the selected destination, select **Start** .

## Parking spaces

The **Parking spaces** service (availability dependent on country) allows searches for available parking spaces, e.g. at the destination, and displays them in Porsche Communication Management (PCM).



### Display parking spaces

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.

1. **Button HOME** ► **APPS** 
2. Select **Parking spacesP**.
3. Select the desired option:


- **Search:** Looks for a specific parking space.
- **Nearby:** Displays parking spaces in the vicinity of the vehicle.

- **At destination:** If route guidance is active, parking spaces at the stopover are displayed.
- **At stopover:** If route guidance is active, parking spaces at the stopover are displayed.
- **At another location:** Parking spaces at a desired location are displayed.

1. Select parking space.
  - ➔ Information such as parking fee and opening times is displayed.
2. Select **Save**  to save the parking space as a favorite or select **Start**  to start route guidance to the parking space.

### Changing settings

Various settings, e.g. sort criteria, can be selected.

1. **Button HOME** ► **APPS**  ► **Button OPT**
2. Select the desired setting.

## Satellite Map

The **Satellite Map** service allows an extended map display (availability dependent on country). The **Satellite Map** shows satellite data from buildings and terrain as aerial photos.

### Activate Satellite Map

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.

1. Select **Button MAP** ► **Page menu** 
2. Activate **Satellite Map**.



## Weather

The **Weather** service (availability dependent on country) can be used to display weather information, e.g. at the destination in Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

### Displaying weather

- ✓ Data connection is established.
- ✓ Porsche Connect Services are activated in My Porsche.

1. Button **HOME** ▶ **APPS** 

2. Select **Weather** 

3. Select desired option:

- **Search:** Looks for certain weather information.
- **Nearby:** Displays weather information in the vehicle's vicinity.
- **At destination:** If route guidance is active, weather information at the destination is displayed.
- **At stopover:** If route guidance is active and a stopover is entered, weather information in the vicinity of the stopover location is displayed.
- **At another location:** Weather information at a desired location is displayed.

▶ Scroll (swipe) to the next page for more weather information.

### Changing settings

Various settings can be selected.

1. Button **HOME** ▶ **APPS**  ▶ Button **OPT**

2. Select desired setting.

## Luggage and Transport

### Storage

#### Storing objects



#### WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned objects

An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load can slide or be thrown around and injure the vehicle occupants as a result of hard braking, changes of direction or an accident.

- ▶ Ensure all objects are secured inside the vehicle before driving.
- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Always keep lockable storage compartments closed while driving.
- ▶ Do not exceed the gross vehicle or gross axle weight ratings.
- ▶ Adjust the tire pressure to the load. Adjust settings for the Tire Pressure Monitoring System if the tire pressure changes.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to storage net by heavy and bulky objects.

- ▶ Do not place heavy, sharp-edged or bulky objects in storage areas.

Depending on its equipment, the vehicle has the following storage options:

- Cup holders
- Glove compartment with pen holder
- Door storage compartments

- Storage compartment in the door sill next to the passenger's seat
- Storage compartment in the armrest in the center console
- Storage net in the passenger's footwell
- Clothes hooks on back of seat backrests
- Side storage compartments with roller blind behind the seats

### Opening and closing storage compartments

#### Opening and closing the glove compartment

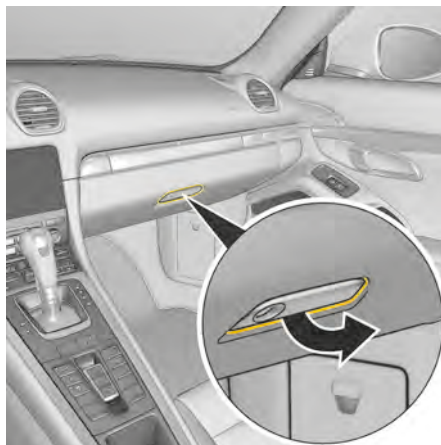


Fig. 152: Opening the glove compartment

#### Opening the glove compartment

- ▶ Pull the handle (Fig. 152) and open the cover.



#### Information

There is a pen holder on the inside of the glove compartment cover.

#### Closing the glove compartment

- ▶ Always lock the handle with the emergency key to protect the contents from unauthorized access.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Using emergency key" on page 32.

#### Opening storage compartment in armrest on center console



Fig. 153: Opening storage compartment in armrest on center console

#### Inserting storage compartment

- ▶ Press the button (Fig. 153) on the right-hand side of the armrest.
  - ➔ The lid pops up automatically.

Depending on the country, the storage compartment contains a storage space for a smartphone.



Fig. 154: Storage compartment to the side behind the seats with retractable cover

There are **no** side storage compartments behind the seats.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the covers. The covers cannot be opened.

- ▶ Do not attempt to open the covers.

## Door storage nets

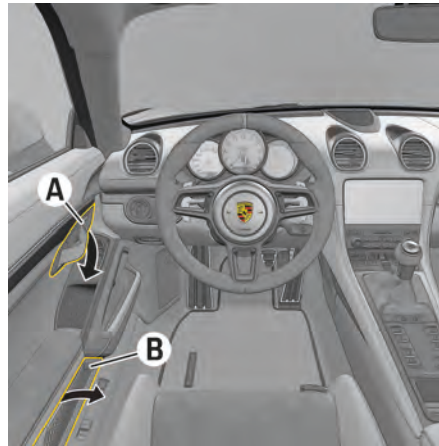


Fig. 155: Door storage compartment

- A Door opener
- B Door storage net

## Cup Holders

### Using cup holders

There are two folding cup holders located behind the panel above the glove compartment.

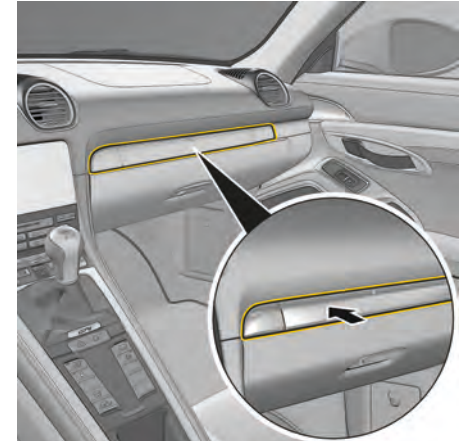


Fig. 156: Cup holders

#### CAUTION

Spilled hot drinks

Hot drinks can scald if spilled.

- ▶ Only use containers that fit.
- ▶ Never put overfull containers in the cup holder.
- ▶ Do not use for hot drinks.
- ▶ Keep cup holders closed while driving.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage from spilled beverages.

- ▶ Only use containers that fit.
- ▶ Never put overfull containers in the cup holder.

## Opening cup holders



Fig. 157: Opening cup holders

1. Press on the panel (Fig. 156).  
➔ The panel opens.
2. Press the symbol for the left or right cup holder.  
➔ The cup holder folds out.
3. Close the panel in the center to fix the cup holder in position.

## Pulling out cup holders

The cup holders can be pulled out in order to fit larger containers.



Fig. 158: Pulling out cup holders

1. Pull out holder (Fig. 158).
2. Insert container.
3. Carefully push the holder inward to adjust it to the size of the container.

## Folding in cup holders

1. Push cup holder tray in.
2. Open the panel in the center.
3. Fold the cup holder in to engage.
4. Close the panel in the center.

## Luggage compartment

### Stowing loads



**WARNING**

Changed vehicle handling when vehicle is loaded

Vehicle handling changes depending on the vehicle load.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight or axle load.

▶ Refer to chapter "Weights" on page 252.

## Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance

### Removing and stowing tire sealant (Tire Mobility System—TMS) or tool box



Fig. 159: Plastic box **A** with tire sealant (Tire Mobility System – TMS)

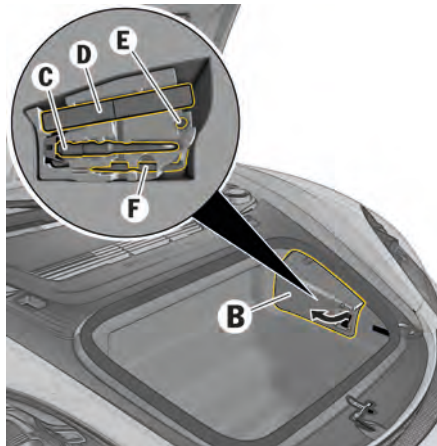


Fig. 160: Plastic box **B** containing tool box

**C** Towing hook

**D** Tool box

**E** Adapter for security wheel bolts

**F** Key for emergency operation of convertible top (718 Spyder)

### Removing tire sealant or tool box

- ▶ Grasp plastic box at the handle recess and remove it.

### Stowing the tire sealant or tool box

1. Insert belt tongue at the rear.
2. Lock the plastic box at the front.

## Removing and stowing the tire filling compressor

### Remove left and right brake air duct sleeve

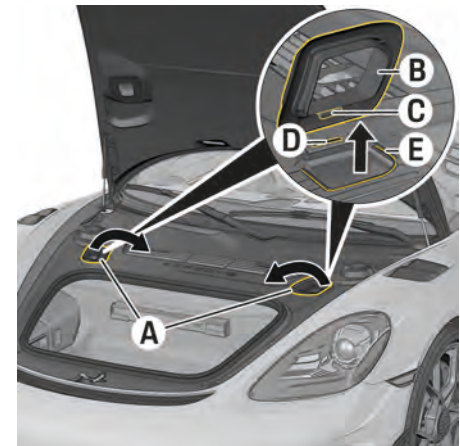


Fig. 161: Brake air duct sleeve

1. Remove the filler flap **B** from sleeve **A** on the plastic cover.
2. Carefully remove holder **C**.

## Removing the tire filling compressor

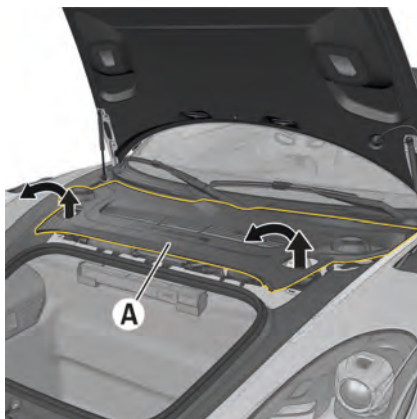


Fig. 162: Releasing and lifting the plastic cover

1. Lift plastic cover **A** at the handle recesses (**arrows**) until the catches audibly disengage.
2. Pull the plastic cover forward slightly and lift it at the front.

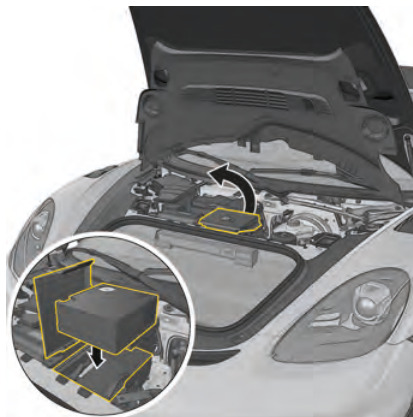


Fig. 163: Opening storage compartment for tire filling compressor

3. Open the cover of the storage compartment for the tire filling compressor.
4. Remove the tire filling compressor from the storage compartment.

## Stowing the tire filling compressor

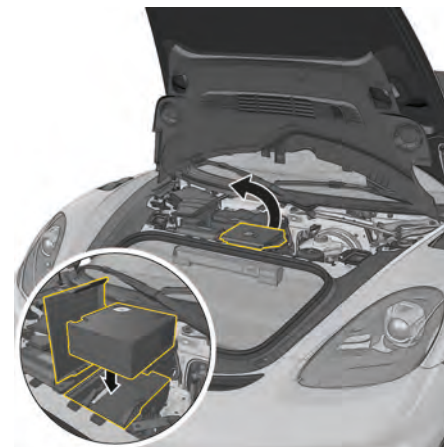


Fig. 164: Replacing the tire filling compressor

1. Place the tire filling compressor in the storage compartment.
2. Close the cover of the storage compartment



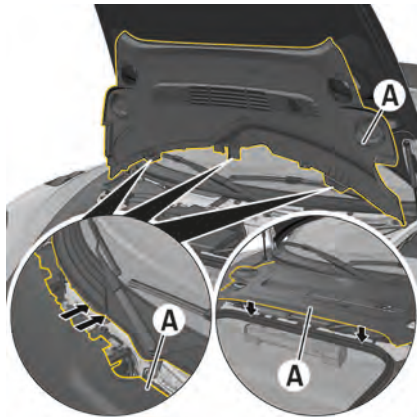


Fig. 165: Closing the plastic cover

3. Insert plastic cover **A** with the guides at the rear edge and place it on the holders. Lower the plastic cover at the front.
4. Ensure that the centering pins on the underside of the cover engage in the appropriate guides. Press the cover downward at the handle recesses until the catches audibly engage.

### Remove left and right brake air duct sleeve

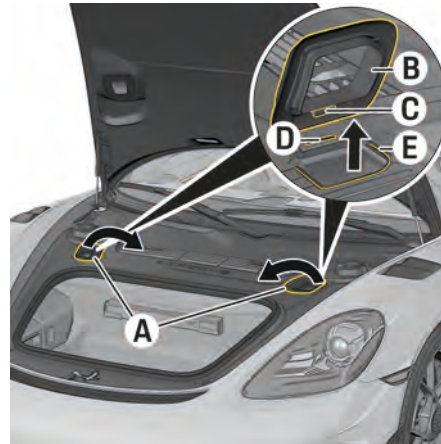


Fig. 166: Brake air duct sleeve

1. Insert holder **C** in tab **D** and plastic cover.
2. Insert the filler flap **B** in recess **E** of the plastic cover.

### **i** Information

Make sure that the tab **D** of the brake air duct is located on the plastic cover.

## Smoker's Package Using the ashtray

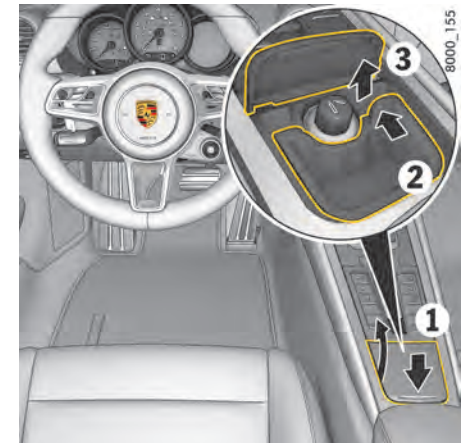


Fig. 167: Opening and emptying the ashtray

### **⚠** WARNING

Risk of fire from ashtray

Waste paper can ignite in the ashtray.

- ▶ Never use the ashtray for waste paper disposal.

### Opening ashtray

- ▶ Press the ashtray lid briefly ((Fig. 167), **1**).
  - ➔ The lid opens automatically.

### Emptying the ashtray

1. To release, press the ashtray insert upward toward the right and front until it audibly disengages ((Fig. 167), **2** and **3**).
2. Remove the ashtray insert upwards.
3. After emptying, push in the ashtray insert and press downward until it audibly engages.



## Using cigarette lighter

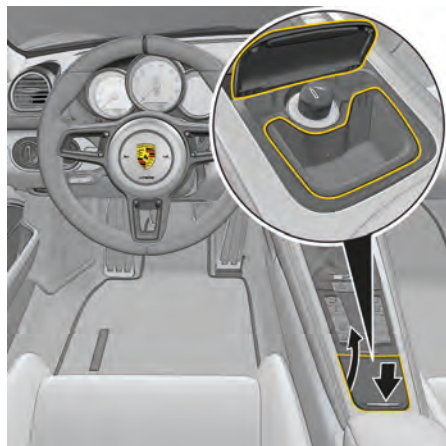


Fig. 168: Using cigarette lighter

### ⚠ WARNING

Hot cigarette lighter

The glowing surface of the cigarette lighter is very hot when in use.

- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.
- ▶ Never touch the heating element or the side surfaces of the cigarette lighter.
- ▶ Hold the hot cigarette lighter only by the operating button.

1. Press ashtray lid briefly.
2. Press the cigarette lighter into the socket.
  - ➔ When the spiral is glowing, the cigarette lighter pops back to its initial position.
3. Remove cigarette lighter.

For information about the use of charging adapters in cigarette lighters:

▶ Refer to chapter "Using 12-volt plug socket" on page 192.

### ⚠ DANGER

Danger of fire through disposal of burning cigars or cigarettes

Air currents can cause cigarettes or cigars to be blown into the air inlets and cause a fire in the engine compartment.

- ▶ Do not throw burning cigarettes or cigars out of the vehicle.

## Electrical Socket

### Using 12-volt plug socket

### ⚠ DANGER

Electric shock, short circuit or fire

Touching conductive parts of the vehicle can lead to an electric shock.

Improper use of the electrical socket can result in a short circuit. The short circuit can cause a fire.

- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.
- ▶ Do not pour liquids into the electrical socket. If liquid gets into the electrical socket, make sure that the liquid has dried without leaving any residues before using the socket again.
- ▶ Do not use adapters or extension cables.

### NOTE

Risk of damage to connected devices

- ▶ Only connect equipment designed for use with a 230 volt socket.
- ▶ The power consumption of the connected device must not exceed 150 watts.
- ▶ Do not connect any lamps that contain a neon tube.



### Information

Connected devices can become warm. This can prevent the overcurrent switch-off from switching on.

- ▶ Remove the device from the electrical socket and reconnect it after 10 seconds.



Fig. 169: Electrical socket in footwell

The 12-volt electrical socket is located in the passenger side footwell.

## Connecting the charging adapter

### NOTE

Danger of damage to the electrical system.

- ▶ Only use suitable charging adapters. Unsuitable charging adapters can damage the electrical sockets.

### **i** Information

- The electrical sockets are functional when the ignition is turned off. The vehicle battery is discharged when the accessories are switched on. The power supply is interrupted after about 30 minutes to protect the vehicle battery. Before restarting the accessory, the ignition must be turned on again.
- The maximum power rating of the electrical sockets is 20A. Do not exceed 10A per electrical socket if several accessories are operating simultaneously.
- Unshielded devices can interfere with radio reception and vehicle electronics.

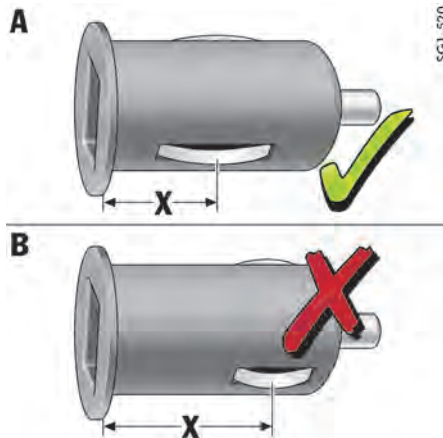


Fig. 170: Charging adapter for 12-volt electrical sockets

- A** Suitable charging adapter
- B** Unsuitable charging adapter

**A:** Suitable charging adapter with **X** distance between the ground connection and the upper edge of the charging adapter must be **less than approx. 16 mm (0.63 in)**.

**B:** Unsuitable charging adapter with **X** distance between the ground connection and the upper edge of the charging adapter **greater than approx. 16 mm (0.63 in)**.

## Roadside Assistance

### Battery

#### General safety instructions

##### ⚠️ WARNING

Electric shock, short circuit or fire

Touching conductive parts of the vehicle can lead to an electric shock. Working on the vehicle electrical system can cause a short circuit. Short circuits can cause fire.

- ▶ Always disconnect the negative terminal on the battery when working on the electrical system.
- ▶ Tools or conductive items of jewelry (rings, necklaces, watchstraps) must not be allowed to come in contact with conductive parts of the vehicle.

##### ⚠️ WARNING

Fire or explosion

Many automotive fluids are highly flammable, e.g. fuel, engine oil or transmission oil. Fuel vapors can combust. A highly explosive electrolytic gas mixture can form when charging lead batteries.

- ▶ Always disconnect the negative terminal on the battery when working on the electrical system.
- ▶ To avoid the buildup of static charge, do not wipe down the battery with a dry cloth.
- ▶ Before touching the battery, first touch the vehicle itself to allow any static charge to dissipate.
- ▶ Never smoke or use naked flames near the battery. Also watch out for flying sparks, e.g. when cables make contact.
- ▶ Only work on the vehicle outdoors or in well-ventilated spaces.

##### ⚠️ CAUTION

Corrosive battery acid

Lead batteries contain highly caustic battery acid that can cause damage on contact with skin or clothing.

- ▶ Wear protective gloves and goggles.
- ▶ To prevent acid from leaking out, do not tip the battery.
- ▶ If battery acid contacts the eyes or skin: Rinse with cold water for several minutes.

##### NOTE

Risk of short circuits, fire, and damage to the alternator, electrical control units and components.

- ▶ The battery should only be removed and installed by an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Always disconnect the negative terminal on the battery when working on the electrical system.

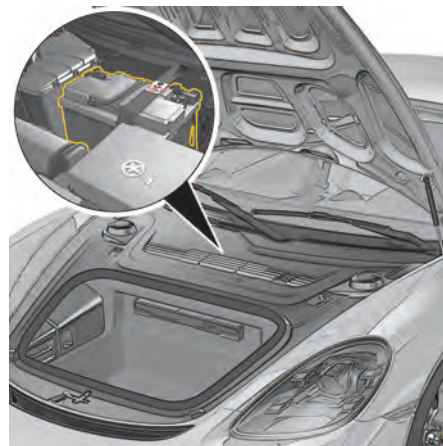


Fig. 171: Battery




The battery is located under the plastic cover in the front luggage compartment (Fig. 171). For information on removing the plastic cover:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Stowing loads" on page 188.
- ▶ Never connect the black negative cable directly to the battery during emergency starting. Always connect the black negative cable to the ground point **B**.

For information on emergency starting:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Jump starting" on page 196.

#### Responding to warning messages

If the battery is low, the symbol  or  is shown on the multifunction display. If the symbol is  displayed, there is a fault on the generator.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

## Observe safety symbols on the battery



**Read Owner's Manual**



**Wear protective goggles**



**Keep batteries away from children**



### Danger of explosion

When the battery is charged, this produces a highly explosive mixture of gasses, which is why:



**Fire, sparks, naked flames and smoking are prohibited**

Avoid sparking and short circuits when handling cables and electrical devices.



### Risk of chemical burns

Electrolyte fluid is highly corrosive: protective gloves and goggles must be worn.



### First aid

If electrolyte fluid splashes into your eye, rinse immediately for a few minutes with clean water. Immediately seek medical attention from a doctor. If electrolyte fluid splashes onto your skin or clothing, neutralize immediately with soapsuds and rinse with plenty of water. If you accidentally drink electrolyte fluid, consult a doctor immediately.



### Disposal

Hand in old batteries at a battery collection point.



Never dispose of old batteries as household waste.

## Battery care

### **i** Information

A good battery charge state prevents the battery from freezing. A discharged battery can freeze at 0 °C; a fully charged battery does not freeze until the temperature drops to -40 °C.

#### What do I want to do?

#### What action do I need to take?

Prevent battery from discharging

- ▶ Switch off any electrical loads that are not required on short trips.
- ▶ When leaving the vehicle, switch off the ignition and remove the vehicle key.
- ▶ Avoid using the PCM when the engine is stopped.

#### What do I want to do?

#### What action do I need to take?

Battery care

- ▶ Keep the battery surface clean and dry.
- ▶ Make sure that the terminals are securely seated.

Prepare for winter use

- ▶ Prior to the start of winter, have the battery checked.

Charging the battery

- ▶ Never attempt to charge a frozen or damaged battery.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Charging the battery" on page 196.

## Laying up the vehicle

- ▶ If the vehicle is to be parked up for long periods in the garage or workshop, close doors, covers and lids.
- ▶ Remove the vehicle key or, if necessary, disconnect the battery.

### **i** Information

The alarm system is disabled when the battery is disconnected. If the vehicle was locked before the battery was disconnected, reconnection will trigger the alarm system.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Alarm System" on page 29.

### Information

The battery will run down even if the vehicle is out of operation.

- ▶ To maintain its functionality, charge the battery approximately every six weeks or connect it to a trickle charger suitable for batteries with AGM technology (**Absorbent Glass Mat**).

Porsche recommends the charger and charge maintenance unit from Porsche Tequipment.

- ▶ Store the removed battery in a dark, cool place where there is no risk of frost.

## Charging the battery

8000\_80

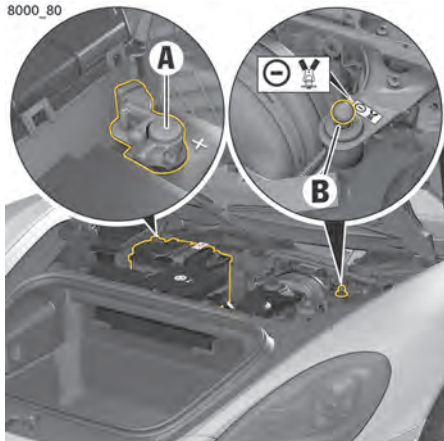


Fig. 172: Battery terminals

- A** Positive terminal +
- B** Ground point -

### WARNING

Charging a frozen or damaged electrical system battery

When charging a frozen or damaged electrical system battery, there is a risk of explosion and chemical burns.

- ▶ Do **not** charge a frozen or damaged battery.
- ▶ Observe the instructions of the charger manufacturer.
- ▶ Only charge batteries in a well-ventilated area.

1. Open front luggage compartment.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid" on page 35.
2. Remove cover in luggage compartment.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Sealing defective tires" on page 237.
3. Connect red positive charger cable to positive battery terminal **A**.
4. Connect black negative charger cable to ground point **B**.
5. Switch on charger.
6. After charging, switch off charger before disconnecting.

▶ Refer to chapter "Replace the battery" on page 197.

- ▶ For suitable charger recommendations: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

## Jump starting

If the battery is flat, the battery of another vehicle can be used with jumper cables for starting and as an external power supply. Both batteries must be

12 V batteries. The capacity (amp hour Ah) of the donor battery must not be substantially less than that of the discharged battery. The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.

▶ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.

Repeated jump starting under normal operating conditions can indicate a damaged battery.

### WARNING

Unsuitable jumper cables and following incorrect procedures

Starting the vehicle using unsuitable jumper cables or following incorrect procedures can cause short circuits. Short circuits can cause a fire.

- ▶ Use only standard jumper cables with a sufficient cross-section and fully insulated clamps. Follow the instructions provided by the jumper cable manufacturer.
- ▶ The vehicles must not touch, otherwise current may flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- ▶ Ensure that conductive jewelry (e.g. rings, chains, watch straps) do not come into contact with conductive parts of the vehicle.
- ▶ Never connect jumper cables directly to the battery or other electrical components. Only connect jumper cables to the jump-lead starting terminals.

**⚠ WARNING**

Jump-lead starting a frozen or damaged battery

When jump-lead starting a frozen or damaged battery, there is a danger of explosion and chemical burns.

- ▶ **Never** perform jump-lead starting on a frozen or damaged battery.
- ▶ It is important to thaw out a frozen battery before connecting jumper cables.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Corrosive battery acid

Lead batteries contain highly caustic battery acid that can cause damage on contact with skin or clothing.

- ▶ Wear protective gloves and goggles.
- ▶ To prevent acid from leaking out, do not tip the battery.
- ▶ If battery acid contacts the eyes or skin: Rinse with cold water for several minutes.

**Jump starting**

8000\_80

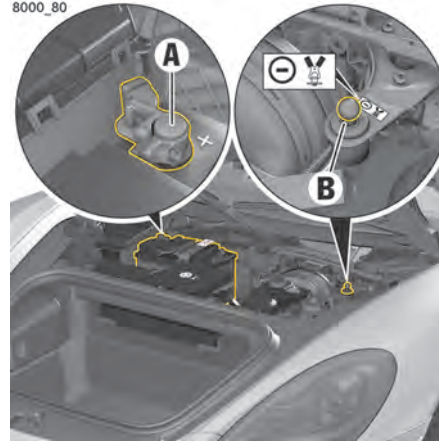


Fig. 173: Battery terminals

- A** Positive terminal +  
**B** Ground point –

**Jump starting**

1. Open front hood.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid" on page 35.
2. Remove cover in front luggage compartment.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.
3. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal **A** of the discharged battery.
4. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal of the donor battery.
5. Connect the black negative cable to the negative terminal of the donor battery.

6. Connect the black negative cable to the ground point **B**. **Never** connect the black negative cable directly to the battery.
7. Run the engine of the donor vehicle at a higher engine speed.
8. Start engine. An attempted start using jumper cables should not last more than 15 seconds, then wait for at least one minute.
9. With engine running: First, disconnect the black negative cable from the ground point **B**, then from the negative terminal on the donor battery.
10. With engine running: First, disconnect the red positive cable from the positive terminal on the donor battery, then from the positive terminal **A** on the discharged battery.

**Replace the battery**

Based on the data on the battery housing, it is not possible to specify a comparable battery that meets all the specific requirements of Porsche.

- ▶ The battery should only be removed and installed by an authorized Porsche dealer.
  - ▶ Only use an AGM technology (**A**bsorbent **G**lass **M**at) battery that meets the specific vehicle requirements as a replacement. Porsche recommends an original Porsche battery.
  - ▶ Follow the disposal instructions for batteries.
  - ▶ A new battery must be initialized in the control unit after installation.
- Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Power interruption

After connecting the battery or charging a deeply discharged battery, carry out the following steps:

1. Store the final position of the power windows.
  - Refer to chapter "Opening and closing the windows" on page 33.
2. Teach in the tires in the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
  - Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.

## Towing and tow-starting

### Towing vehicle

#### Information

- Always comply with the legal regulations that govern hauling and towing.
- Only tow with extreme care. Both drivers should familiarize themselves with the special features of hauling and towing before starting the journey.
- Switch off the driver assistance systems of the two vehicles before towing.
- In the event of a power failure or malfunctions in the electrical system, external current is fed in to release the electric parking brake or steering column lock.

#### NOTE

Danger of significant vehicle and transmission damage through tow-starting or push-starting in the case of vehicles with PDK.

- **Never** tow-start or push-start vehicles.
- Do not attempt to tow the vehicle.
- Call a roadside assistance or breakdown recovery service.
- Have the vehicle transported with both axles on a recovery vehicle, transport truck or trailer.

#### NOTE

Risk of significant vehicle damage.

- Tie the vehicle down by the wheels only. Never attach tension straps to the towing eye.

If the battery is faulty or completely discharged, the only way to start the engine is to replace the battery or through emergency starting with jumper cables.

- Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.
- Refer to chapter "Jump starting" on page 196.

### Towing vehicle

#### WARNING

Increased steering and braking forces due to lack of power assistance

Steering and braking assistance is not available on the towed vehicle when the engine is stopped. An increased amount of force is required for braking and steering.

- Only tow with extreme care.

The towed vehicle must not be heavier than the towing vehicle.

It is not possible to guarantee that the transmission is sufficiently lubricated when the engine is not running. The following points must be noted in order to prevent damage to the transmission.

- When the PDK is in emergency operation mode (warning message indicates transmission failure) or if a gear lever emergency release was performed, the vehicle must **not** be towed. It must be transported on a car transporter or trailer.
  - Refer to chapter "Driving with Porsche Double Clutch (PDK)" on page 80.
  - Refer to chapter "Transporting vehicle on car trains, ferries and transport trucks" on page 200.



### Special note for vehicles with a faulty or fully discharged battery

- ▶ If the battery is faulty or completely discharged, the only way to start the engine is to replace the battery or through emergency starting with jumper cables.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Jump starting" on page 196.

### Notices for towing a vehicle on all four wheels

- ▶ Switch on the ignition so the brake lights and turn signals work and the steering wheel lock is not locked.

### Information for towing a vehicle on one axle

- ▶ Switch off ignition. Leave the vehicle key in the ignition lock to prevent the steering wheel lock from locking.
- ▶ Make sure that the vehicle is sufficiently illuminated.

### Towing vehicle

- ▶ Move gear lever to position **N**. To ensure that gear lever position **N** can be engaged on the gear lever itself and appears on the display, you must start the engine once before towing the vehicle. The vehicle can be towed as soon as the gear lever is in position **N** and gear lever position **N** appears on the display.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). The maximum permissible towing distance is 30 miles ( km/h). If a vehicle needs to be towed for longer distances, it must be transported on a car transporter or trailer.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Transporting vehicle on car trains, ferries and transport trucks" on page 200.

### Pulling out a vehicle that has become stuck

- ▶ Always pull out the vehicle with the greatest care.
- ▶ Never pull out a vehicle abruptly or at an angle.
- ▶ If possible, pull the vehicle backward, following the track previously made.

### Tow starting and push starting the vehicle

- ▶ Vehicles with PDK cannot be tow-started or push-started, nor must this be attempted due to the risk of serious damage to the transmission.
- ▶ Switch off the driver assistance systems of the two vehicles before towing.

### Using towing rope or towing bar

- ▶ Data and installation instructions can be found in the accessory manufacturer's manual. Follow the manufacturer's safety and operating instructions.
- ▶ Observe the permissible towing force of the towing rope or towing bar. The towing rope or towing bar must be approved for the vehicle weight. Never exceed the manufacturer's specifications.
- ▶ Vehicles with defective brakes must **not** be towed.

### Using a towing rope

- ▶ When towing a vehicle, first screw the towing hook into the vehicle before attaching the tow rope to the towing hook.

▷ Refer to chapter "Using towing hook" on page 199.

- ▶ Always hold the towing rope taut when towing. Avoid jerky and sudden loading.

### Using a towing bar

- ▶ The tow bar should **not** be attached diagonally between the vehicles.

### Using towing hook



Fig. 174: Rear towing hook



Fig. 175: Front towing hook

## Attaching the towing hook

The towing hook is stored in the tool box.

► Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.

1. Press the plastic cover into the bumper at the front lower edge and at the rear upper edge until it disengages, or carefully disengage the plastic cover with a suitable object.
2. Pull the plastic cover out of the bumper and let it hang by its thread.
3. Screw in the towing hook **A** (Fig. 174) far as possible counter-clockwise (left-hand thread) and tighten by hand.

## Removing the towing hook

1. Screw out towing hook **A** (Fig. 174) clockwise (left-hand thread).
2. Insert the front plastic cover at the lower edge and the rear plastic cover at the upper edge of the opening.
3. Fold in the plastic cover and press on the edge until it engages in the bumper.
4. Stow the towing hook in the tool box.

## Transporting vehicle on car trains, ferries and transport trucks

- Tie the vehicle down only at its wheels. **Never** attach tension straps to the towing hook.
- Deactivating interior monitoring and inclination sensor.
  - Refer to chapter "Turning off interior monitoring system and inclination sensor" on page 29.
- Activate Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PVTS Plus) transport mode.

## Use of flatbeds

Only use a flatbed if the transmission parking lock or electric parking brake can be released. In the event of a breakdown (e.g. if the battery is discharged), do not pull the vehicle onto a flatbed.

## Pulling the vehicle onto the flatbed



Fig. 176: Pulling the vehicle onto the flatbed

1. Move gear lever to position **N**.
2. Switch off ignition.

The vehicle can be rolled for approx. 30 minutes, then the transmission parking lock engages automatically.

3. Position ramps at the flatbed base to flatten the angle when pulling.
4. Reel in winch cable and check vehicle underbody for obstacles.

## Tie vehicle down on flatbed



Fig. 177: Tie vehicle down on flatbed

1. Carefully guide the tie-down belts through the openings in the **rear wheels**. Make sure that the metal parts of the tie-down belts do not damage the rims. Make sure that the tie-down belt sits flat on the rim bead. Make sure not to damage any vehicle parts.
2. Fasten the belts to the rear of the flatbed.
3. Reel in the winch cable only until the tie-down belts are taut.
4. Carefully guide the tie-down belts through the openings in the **front wheels**. Make sure that the metal parts of the tie-down belts do not damage the rims. Make sure that the tie-down belt sits flat on the rim bead. Make sure not to damage any vehicle parts.
5. Fasten the belts to the front of the flatbed.
6. Slacken the winch cable, but do not loosen it.

## Brake Fluid

## Checking brake fluid level



Fig. 178: Brake fluid reservoir

- ▶ (Fig. 178) Check brake fluid level at the brake fluid reservoir. The fluid level must always be between the **MIN** and **MAX** markings.
- ▶ Have the brake fluid topped up if it is below the **MIN** marking:  
Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

## Changing the brake fluid



Ingestion of brake fluid

Brake fluid is harmful to health and can be fatal if ingested.

- ▶ Keep brake fluid out of reach of children.
- ▶ Keep pets away from brake fluid. They may be attracted to brake fluid if it has been spilled, or if old brake fluid is stored in an open container.
- ▶ If brake fluid gets on your skin or in your eyes, immediately rinse the affected areas with clean water for a few minutes. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- ▶ Observe all information on the brake fluid refill container.


The brake fluid is regularly checked and changed as part of servicing.

- ▶ Do **not** change the brake fluid yourself.  
Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Before driving: Important information regarding your Porsche" on page 16.

## Responding to warning messages

Always heed any warning and information messages displayed in the vehicle.

▶ p. 121

If the brake fluid level is too low, the warning light (USA: **BRAKE** Canada: ) is displayed in the instrument panel and a message is shown in the mul-

tifunction display. If the symbol lights up in conjunction with a longer pedal travel, this may also indicate a braking system malfunction.

- ▶ Do not continue driving, but stop safely in a suitable place.
- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Warning lights and light indicators" on page 107.

## Emission control system

### In the interest of pure air

The pollution of our environment has become a problem that is increasingly giving us cause for worry. We urge you to support our efforts to purify the air by cleaning the pollutants emitted by motor vehicles. Porsche has developed an exhaust gas purification system that cleans or reduces the exhaust components that can be harmful to the environment. Your Porsche is equipped with such a system.

Porsche provides a warranty on the exhaust gas cleaning system of your new vehicle, which is the subject of the conditions listed in the warranty booklet.

As the owner of the vehicle, you are responsible for carrying out regular maintenance work on the vehicle and for recording all maintenance work carried out. In order to simplify logging, it is best to have service work carried out by Porsche dealers.

They have Porsche-trained technicians and special tools that enable fast and effective service.

#### To ensure the effectiveness of the exhaust gas cleaning system:

- ▶ Have your vehicle serviced correctly and in accordance with the recommendations described in your service manual. Lack of care and improper use of the vehicle impair the function of the exhaust gas cleaning system and could result in damage.
- ▶ Do not remove or modify any exhaust gas cleaning system components.
- ▶ Do not modify or remove any devices (heat shields, switches, ignition cables, valves, etc.) designed to protect the exhaust gas cleaning

system of your vehicle. This can not only cause serious engine damage, but also cause fires if unburned fuel enters the exhaust system.

- ▶ Do not continue driving your vehicle if you notice misfires or other unusual phenomenon.

### Function of exhaust gas cleaning

A running vehicle engine uses energy that is generated by the combustion of a mixture of air and fuel. Depending on whether a vehicle is driven fast or slow or whether the engine is hot or cold, some of the fuel (hydrocarbons) may not be burned completely, but enter the crankcase or exhaust system. In addition, hydrocarbons can enter the atmosphere because fuel evaporates from the fuel tank. When these hydrocarbons (HC) are released, they contribute to undesired air pollution.

Carbon monoxide (CO) and nitrogen oxides (NO<sub>x</sub>) are other engine emissions. They also occur during the combustion process and enter the exhaust system.

To reduce these pollutants, your Porsche is equipped with precisely calibrated fuel injection, which ensures an absolutely balanced air/fuel mixture under all operating conditions.

### Oxygen sensors

The oxygen sensors fitted in the exhaust system continuously monitor the oxygen content of the exhaust gases and report this data to an electronic control unit. The control unit corrects the air/fuel ratio so that an accurately measured air/fuel mixture is always supplied to the engine.

## Crankcase ventilation

The crankcase ventilation prevents unwanted emissions from the crankcase of the engine from entering the ambient atmosphere. These emissions are returned from the crankcase to the intake tract. There, the emissions are mixed with the intake air and then burned in the engine.

## Catalytic converters

The catalytic converters are effective "cleaning devices" installed in the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converters burn the undesired pollutants contained in the exhaust gases before they enter the atmosphere.

**The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is of crucial importance for the shelf life of the catalytic converters.**

**For this reason, only use unleaded fuel.**

The catalytic converters will be damaged under the following circumstances:

- Push on or towing the vehicle
- Engine misfires
- Switch off the ignition while driving
- Driving till the fuel tank runs empty
- Other unusual operating conditions
- ▶ Do not continue driving your vehicle under these conditions, as unburnt fuel may enter the catalytic converters. This could cause the catalytic converters to overheat. The use of leaded fuel for this vehicle is prohibited under federal law.

## Fuel consumption

The fuel consumption depends on where, when and how you drive, how the vehicle is equipped and the general condition it is in.

A vehicle that has been coordinated and properly maintained as specified helps to achieve optimum fuel consumption values.

- ▶ Have your vehicle tuned according to the specification.
  - The air cleaner must be free of dirt so that the engine can "breathe" freely.
  - The battery must be fully charged.
  - The track must be adjusted correctly.
  - Tires must be inflated at the correct pressure.
- ▶ Always monitor your fuel consumption.
- ▶ Develop a smooth driving style and avoid speed changes if possible.
- ▶ Avoid "racing starts" and abrupt stopping.
- ▶ Do not drive in low gears for longer than necessary. Early upshifting without tormenting the engine helps to save fuel.
- ▶ Long "warm-run phases" when the vehicle is stationary are fuel waste. Do not start the vehicle until you are ready to drive off. Accelerate slowly and gently.
- ▶ Switch off the engine if the vehicle is stationary for an extended period of time.
- ▶ Additional weight carried in the vehicle increases fuel consumption. Always keep the load to a minimum and take out all unnecessary things.
- ▶ Organize your journeys so that you can carry out several tasks per journey.
- ▶ Every electrical accessory increases fuel consumption.
- ▶ Only switch on the air conditioning if necessary.

- ▶ Only drive with the roof transport system fitted if you need it.

The consumption value in miles per gallon (mpg) estimated by the EPA is used for comparison purposes. The actual value may differ from the estimated value depending on the driving speed, weather conditions and trip length. Your actual consumption on highways (highway mileage) may be below the estimated value.

- ▶ Observe all local and national speed limits.

## Coolant

### General safety instructions

#### DANGER

Ingestion of engine coolant

Engine coolant is harmful to health and can be fatal if ingested.

- ▶ Keep engine coolant out of reach of children.
- ▶ Keep pets away from engine coolant. They may be attracted to engine coolant if it has been spilled, or if old engine coolant is stored in an open container.
- ▶ If engine coolant gets on your skin or in your eyes, immediately rinse the affected areas with clean water for a few minutes. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- ▶ Observe all information on the engine coolant refill container.

#### WARNING

Engine fans and other moving parts in the area of the engine

When working in the engine compartment, hands, fingers, articles of clothing, necklaces or long hair can become trapped by moving parts, e.g. engine fans or drive belts. The engine fans are installed under the hood. After the engine is stopped, the engine compartment temperature is still monitored. Depending on temperature, the engine fans may continue to run or are switched on.

- ▶ You should only work in this area with the utmost care and the engine should always be stopped; make sure that body parts, articles of clothing and items of jewelry do not get trapped by radiator fans, engine fans or other moving parts.

#### WARNING

Hot engine parts and hot coolant

The engine and adjacent components, the exhaust system and the coolant become very hot when the engine is running.

The coolant reservoir is under pressure. Hot coolant may suddenly escape if the coolant reservoir is not opened carefully.

- ▶ Take care when working near hot vehicle parts, particularly the engine and exhaust system.
- ▶ Always turn off the engine and allow it to cool down before working in the engine compartment.
- ▶ Proceed with extreme caution when working in the engine compartment.
- ▶ Only top up coolant when the engine is stopped and the ignition is switched off.
- ▶ Do **not** open the cap of the coolant reservoir when the engine is hot. Wait until the coolant temperature gage displays a temperature below 140 °F (60 °C).

▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings Using the Multifunction Display" on page 141.



#### CAUTION

Hot exhaust system burn risk

The exhaust system is very hot when the engine is running and for a period after the engine is stopped.

- ▶ To avoid injury, remember where your vehicle's exhaust system is located. Do not get too close to the hot exhaust system. A hot exhaust system can cause serious burns.
- ▶ Pay careful attention to children that are close to the vehicle and make sure that children do not burn themselves on the exhaust system.

#### NOTE

If the coolant temperature is too high, the symbol appears in the multifunction display . If the symbol is  displayed, the coolant level is too low.

If the vehicle continues to be driven after the red warning light is displayed, there is a risk of engine damage.

- ▶ Switch engine off and let it cool.
- ▶ Do not continue driving if the warning remains despite the correct coolant level. Have the fault corrected.  
Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

The coolant provides year-round protection against corrosion and freezing at temperatures as low as -35 °F (-37 °C).

The coolant level is regularly checked as part of servicing.

Only use antifreeze approved by Porsche.

- Porsche recommends Glysantin® G40 (alternatively freeze protection in accordance with G12+ +/VW TL 774 G). These antifreeze products can be mixed with each other.

### Checking the coolant level and adding coolant

- ✓ 718 Spyder RS: Fins unhooked from the fin tensioners.



► Refer to chapter "Removing and installing convertible top" on page 40.



Fig. 179: Coolant reservoir 718 Spyder RS

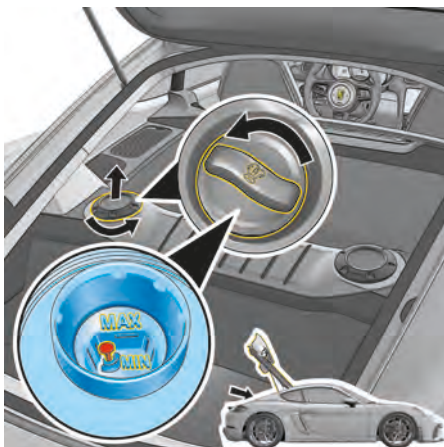






Fig. 180: Coolant reservoir 718 Cayman GT4 RS

- ✓ Vehicle is level.
- ✓ Engine is cold and the coolant temperature gage is below 140 °F / 60 °C.
- ✓ Symbol  or  with a message to refill the coolant is shown in the multifunction display. If no symbol  or was displayed  on the multifunction display, the MIN and MAX marking of the coolant indicator serve as a measure for refilling.

1. Turn cap counter-clockwise and remove (Fig. 179) (718 Cayman GT4 RS).
2. Carefully screw off the coolant reservoir cap and allow any excess pressure to escape.
3. Unscrew the cover completely.
4. Read off the coolant level. The coolant gauge must be between the MIN and MAX marks on a **cold engine** with the vehicle level).
5. Add coolant if necessary. Only use a mixture consisting of equal parts of antifreeze and distilled water.

#### Amount of freeze protection agent in coolant:

50% results in freeze protection up to -34 °F (37 °C). If the coolant indicator is at the MAX marking, the maximum fill level is reached.

6. Do not fill above the MAX mark. The MAX marking serves only as a guide because the fill level drops after the first engine start. Screw the cap on the coolant reservoir closed until you feel it reach the end stop.
7. Put on cap and turn clockwise (Fig. 179) (718 Cayman GT4 RS).

8. Have the cooling system checked. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

#### Information

If pure water was added in an emergency, the mixing ratio must be corrected. Significant coolant loss indicates leaks in the cooling system.

- Have the cause remedied immediately. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.





## Engine oil

### Checking engine oil level

It is important that all oil changes are performed regularly and in accordance with the intervals specified in your **maintenance plan**.

### Responding to oil level warning

If the oil level is too low, the symbol  or  is displayed with a warning message in the multifunction display and engine oil must be topped up immediately.

► Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Measuring and displaying engine oil level

#### NOTE

If the oil level is below the minimum mark, the engine will not be sufficiently lubricated. This can cause damage to the engine.

- Display the oil level regularly.
- Do not allow the oil level to drop below the minimum mark.

### Displaying engine oil level



#### Information

Under certain circumstances, the oil level cannot be measured. The reasons for this include:

- Vehicle is moving.
- Motor not at operating temperature.
- Engine not idling.
- Vehicle on an incline
- Rear luggage compartment lid is open

- ✓ Vehicle is level.
- ✓ Engine at operating temperature is idling.

#### ► Vehicle ► Oil level

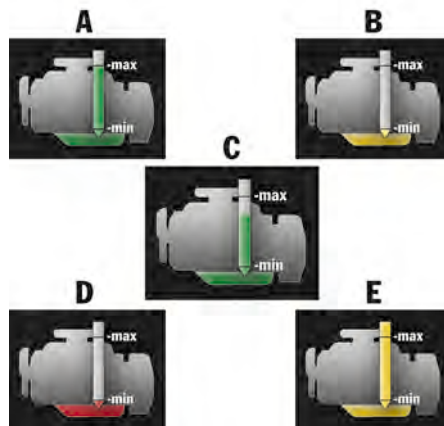


Fig. 181: Oil level display

- A** Oil level sufficient - maximum reached
- B** Minimum oil level reached
- C** Recommended oil level for best engine operation
- D** Oil level below minimum
- E** Oil level above maximum

If the display is green **A**, the oil level has reached the maximum mark and is sufficient. If the lower segment of the display is yellow **B**, the oil level has reached the minimum mark.

- Add engine oil at the next opportunity. **Never** add more than the amount of engine oil displayed. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 0.85 quarts (0.8 liter).

If the lower segment of the display is red **D**, the oil level has dropped below the minimum mark.

- Stop in a safe place.
- Add engine oil **immediately**.

**Never** add more than the amount of engine oil displayed. If the lower segment is filled in red **D**, the difference from the maximum mark is approx. 1.0 liter.

If the display is yellow right to the top **E**, the permissible max. engine filling level has been exceeded. This can result in damage to the vehicle. Correct the oil level at the earliest opportunity.

- Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

### Failure

Failure of the oil level measurement is indicated by means of a message to this effect.

- Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

### Engine oil consumption

It is normal for your engine to use oil. The amount of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine speed at which the engine is operated, the climate, the road conditions and the degree of dilution and oxidation of the lubricant. If the vehicle is frequently driven on short distances and consumes a normal quantity of oil, it may not be possible to detect a reduction in the fill level when measuring the engine oil level at all. This is

because the oil gradually mixes with fuel or moisture, which gives the impression that the oil level has not changed.

The diluting components evaporate when the vehicle travels at high speeds (e.g. on highways), so it appears that too much oil has been consumed.

If you move your vehicle primarily in heavy dust, high humidity or high heat, the oil must be changed more frequently.

If the vehicle is moved at high speeds, there is a warm climate and the load is high, the oil should be checked more frequently because the driving conditions determine the amount of oil consumption.

- The engine of your vehicle depends on all of its moving parts being lubricated and cooled with oil. The engine oil level must therefore be checked regularly and corrected if necessary.
- Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked every time you refuel.

The oil pressure warning light is not a fill level indicator.

The oil pressure warning light indicates potential serious engine damage if idling speed is exceeded.

## Driving on race tracks

In order to reduce the increased loads during race-track operation, Porsche recommends the following measures before driving the racetrack:

1. Check the oil level before driving on a race track.
2. Make sure that the displayed oil level is between the center and maximum.
3. If the displayed oil level is below center, add approx. 0.5 liter of engine oil.

4. If the displayed oil level is between minimum and center, add approx. 0.5 liter of engine oil.
5. When driving on a regular circuit, replace the engine oil and oil filter after a maximum of 3000 miles (approx. 5000 kilometers).

Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Choosing and topping up engine oil



Ingestion of engine oil

Engine oil is harmful to health and can be fatal if ingested.

- ▶ Keep engine oil out of reach of children.
- ▶ Keep pets away from engine oil. They may be attracted to engine oil if it has been spilled, or if old engine oil is stored in an open container.
- ▶ If engine oil gets on your skin or in your eyes, immediately rinse the affected areas with clean water for a few minutes. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- ▶ Observe all information on the engine oil refill container.



Cancer risk from engine oil

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory tests.

- ▶ Protect your skin by always washing yourself thoroughly with soap and water.



Engine fans and other moving parts in the area of the engine

When working in the engine compartment, hands, fingers, articles of clothing, necklaces or long hair can become trapped by moving parts, e.g. engine fans or drive belts. The engine fans are installed under the hood. After the engine is stopped, the engine compartment temperature is still monitored. Depending on temperature, the engine fans may continue to run or are switched on.

- ▶ You should only work in this area with the utmost care and the engine should always be stopped; make sure that body parts, articles of clothing and items of jewelry do not get trapped by radiator fans, engine fans or other moving parts.



Burning engine oil

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine parts. Engine oil stored in non-ventilated areas or thrown-away cloths with engine oil residues can self-combust and result in a fire.

- ▶ Wipe up spilled engine oil with a cloth.
- ▶ Cloths soaked with engine oil must be stored in a well-ventilated area until disposal.
- ▶ Allow the engine to cool before topping up engine oil.

## NOTE

Too much or too little engine oil will damage the engine. Too much engine oil can cause blue smoke to form and will damage the emission control system in the long term.

- ▶ Do not allow the oil level to drop below the minimum mark.
- ▶ Only add engine oil up to the maximum mark. If the oil reservoir is overfilled, correct this at the earliest opportunity. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

- Porsche recommends that you use only engine oils approved by Porsche. Observe the service intervals.
- The oils approved by Porsche can be mixed with each other.
- Do not mix in any oil additives.
- If an engine leak is suspected, have the engine checked immediately.

## Choosing the engine oil

Porsche recommends **Mobil 1**.

Vehicle	Approval	SAE viscosity class
All	Porsche C40, alternatively: VW 511 00	SAE 0W-40 <sup>1</sup> SAE 5W-40 <sup>2</sup>

Porsche recommends that you obtain information about the correct engine oil from your Porsche partner and use this engine oil if you need to top up the engine oil.

1. For all temperature ranges.
2. For the temperature range above -13° F (-25 °C).

## **i** Information

The details of manufacturer approvals can generally be found on the oil containers or as a notice displayed by the retailer. To find out more about the current approvals: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

## Adding engine oil

- ✓ 718 Spyder RS: Fins unhooked from the fin tensioners.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Removing and installing convertible top" on page 40.

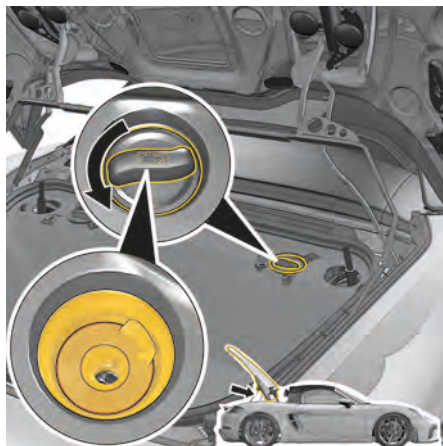


Fig. 182: Oil filler opening 718 Spyder RS

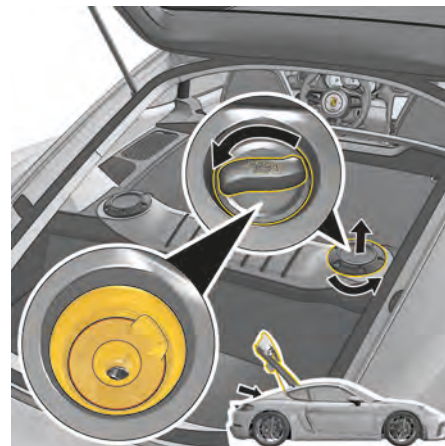


Fig. 183: Oil filler opening 718 Cayman GT4 RS

1. Read the engine oil level on the multifunction display.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.
2. Open rear trunk.  
▶ Refer to chapter "Opening and closing the trunk lid" on page 34.
3. Turn cap counter-clockwise and remove (718 Cayman GT4 RS).
4. Unscrew the cap of the oil filler opening.

5. Add the amount of engine oil displayed on the multifunction display.  
Never add more than the amount of engine oil displayed. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is around 1.06 quarts (1 liter).  
▷ Refer to chapter "Checking engine oil level" on page 206.
6. Carefully close the cap of the oil filler opening.
7. Put on cap and turn clockwise (718 Cayman GT4 RS).



Fig. 184: For an optimal engine operation, an oil level of approx. 75% of the display area is recommended.

### **i** Information

The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 0.85 quarts (0.8 liter).

- ▶ Never add more engine oil than the maximum mark.  
**After adding engine oil:**  
Wait approx. 30 seconds and measure the oil level again.

---

- Read the engine oil level on the multifunction display.▷ p. 206
- Open rear trunk.▷ p. 34
- Turn cap counterclockwise and remove it.
- Unscrew the cap of the oil filler opening.
- **Never** add more than the amount of engine oil displayed. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 0.85 quarts (0.8 liter).

For an optimal engine operation, an oil level of approx. 75% of display area is recommended.▷ p. 206

- Carefully close the cap of the oil filler opening.
- Fit cap and turn clockwise.

## Car Care

### General care instructions

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Water film on brake disks

When driving through water or mud, braking may be delayed and increased pressure may be required.

- ▶ Check the brakes after washing the vehicle.
- ▶ Allow a greater braking distance from the vehicle in front and "brake" the brakes dry at intervals. Ensure that this does not affect the traffic behind.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Chemical detergents

Detergents can be harmful to your health.

Most chemical detergents are concentrates that need to be diluted. High concentrations can cause problems ranging from irritation to serious injury.

- ▶ Keep detergent out of reach of children.
- ▶ Observe all warnings.
- ▶ Always read the instructions on the container before using any product. These notes can contain important information about how to avoid personal injury.
- ▶ Do not use volatile cleaning fluids such as kerosene, gasoline, nail polish remover, etc. They can be toxic, flammable, or otherwise dangerous. Use stain removers only in well-ventilated areas.
- ▶ Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms, as there is a risk of cutting yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.

### Information

Regular and expert car care helps maintain the value of your vehicle and can be a prerequisite for making claims under the vehicle warranty. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

- ▶ Please read the instructions for use on the packaging of the car care product.
- ▶ Store car care products out of the reach of children.
- ▶ Dispose of car care products in the correct manner.

To ensure that the condition of the vehicle is checked professionally and the warranty is retained for the full period: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer. He creates a status report and additionally certifies this in the "Warranty & Maintenance" brochure under "Long-term warranty status report".

#### NOTE

Risk of vehicle or material damage due to cleaning agents.

- ▶ Observe all warnings.

#### NOTE

High-pressure cleaning equipment or steam cleaners may damage the following components:

- ▶ Convertible top (718 Spyder RS)
- ▶ Tires
- ▶ Logos, emblems, decorative films
- ▶ Painted surfaces
- ▶ Components and electrical components in the engine compartment/technical equipment space

- ▶ ParkAssist sensors
- ▶ Rear view camera
- ▶ Wiper blades

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions provided by the equipment manufacturer.
- ▶ Do not use high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners to clean decorative films.
- ▶ Always maintain a minimum distance of 20 in. (50 cm) during cleaning.
- ▶ Never use high-pressure cleaning equipment or steam cleaners with round-jet nozzles. A high-pressure cleaning device or steam cleaner fitted with a round-jet nozzle will damage your vehicle. Tires are particularly susceptible to damage.
- ▶ Do not aim the cleaning jet directly at any of the above components.
- ▶ Always turn off the engine and allow it to cool down before working in the engine compartment.
- ▶ Never point the cleaning jet directly at openings, e.g. spark plug shafts and air cleaner housing or at the air filter. Cover openings before washing.

## Washing vehicle

The best way to protect your vehicle against damaging environmental effects is regular washing and preservation. The longer grit, road and industrial dust, insect residue, bird excrement, tree secretion (e.g., resin, pollen), etc. remain on the vehicle, the more harmful their effect.

No vehicle and convertible top is absolutely leak-proof. Water can sometimes leak into the vehicle interior when cleaning the vehicle.

To ensure your car is cleaned thoroughly and the paintwork washed gently, please observe the following points:

- ▶ Wash the underside of the vehicle thoroughly at the end of the gritting season, at the latest.
- ▶ Only wash the vehicle in areas intended for this purpose, to ensure that soot, grease, oil, and heavy metals do not harm the environment.
- ▶ Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or if the bodywork is hot.
- ▶ If washing by hand, use a car shampoo, plenty of water and a soft sponge or washing brush. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Start washing the vehicle by wetting the paintwork thoroughly and rinsing off any heavy dirt.
- ▶ After washing the vehicle, rinse thoroughly with water, and rub with a chamois leather. When wiping with the chamois leather, do not use the same leather as you do for cleaning the windows.

- ✓ 718 Spyder RS

#### NOTE

The 718 Spyder RS is not approved for cleaning in a car wash.

Improper cleaning can cause liquids to enter the interior and damage vehicle parts.

- ▶ Only wash the vehicle by hand.

## Cleaning in the car wash

- ✓ 718 Cayman GT4 RS

**NOTE**

Car washes may damage optional add-on parts or parts that project beyond the contours of the vehicle.

- ▶ Before using an automatic car wash, consult the car wash operator.
- ▶ Retract all spoilers before using an automatic car wash.

**Hazard****What should be observed?**

Windshield wipers can start to move and become damaged in the car wash

- ▶ Switch off the front and rear wipers.
- ▶ Do not operate the headlight cleaning system in car washes.

Damage to exterior parts

- ▶ Fold in door mirrors.
- ▶ Retract extended rear spoiler.

Damage to wheels

- ▶ Adequately dimensioned car wash guide rails. The wider the wheel rim and the lower the tire height, the greater the risk of damage.

**Hazard****What should be observed?**

Scratches on wheels with high-gloss or silk-gloss finish

- ▶ Do not clean with the wheel-washing brushes in the car wash.

**Cleaning convertible top**

- ✓ 718 Spyder RS

**NOTE**

High-pressure cleaning equipment jets, unsuitable car washes or hot wax treatment can damage the convertible top.

- ▶ Do not clean the convertible top with high-pressure cleaning equipment.
- ▶ Do not perform hot wax treatment.

To ensure proper cleaning and care of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Do not wash the convertible top every time you wash the vehicle. Normally, rinsing the convertible top with clean water is sufficient.
- ▶ Never remove snow and ice with sharp-edged objects.
- ▶ Brush off dust from the convertible top cover in the direction of the fabric lines using a soft brush.
- ▶ Only if there is heavy dirt, moisten the convertible top with lukewarm water and a washing shampoo & convertible top cleaner and rub gently using a sponge or soft brush.

- ▶ Rinse the washing shampoo and convertible-top cleaner thoroughly off the convertible top with clean water. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Treat the convertible top cover with a convertible top care product after washing at least once a year. Do not allow the care product to come into contact with paint or glass and if contact with paint occurs, remove the product immediately.
- ▶ If the convertible top cover, seams or folds leak, use a convertible top care product. Read and follow the instructions on the containers. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Remove bird excrement immediately. The acid this contains makes the rubber swell, and the convertible top will start to leak.
- ▶ Open the convertible top and convertible top element only when completely dry to prevent stains and abrasion damage.
- ▶ Remove spots on the convertible top cover by rubbing carefully with a soft rubber sponge.

**Cleaning carbon fiber-reinforced plastic (CfK)**

- ▶ Do **not** use abrasive agents or other abrasive materials to care for and clean the visible carbon parts.

**Titanium exhaust tailpipes**

Dirt, excessive exposure to heat, and combustion residues can cause titanium exhaust tailpipes to discolor permanently.

## Intake air and cooling air openings

The grilles on the intake air openings in the rear side windows or the cooling air openings behind the doors can become blocked by foreign objects (e.g. large leaves).

- ▶ Remove foreign objects on the grilles regularly.

## Paint care

### NOTE

Dust particles on painted surfaces can damage the paintwork if not properly dealt with.

- ▶ Do not wipe off dust with a dry cloth.

### NOTE

The matt effect of components may be lost if not cared for properly.

- ▶ Do **not** treat matt-effect bodywork sections with preservatives or polishes.

## Preserving paintwork

The paint finish will dull over time due to weathering and should therefore be regularly protected with a paint preservative after washing the vehicle. This keeps the paint shiny and elastic, and prevents dirt from adhering to the paint surface and industrial dust from penetrating the paint.

## Polishing paintwork

Paint polish should only be used to clean the paintwork when the original shine can no longer be obtained using preservatives. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

## Removing marks

Remove tar splatters, traces of oil, insects, etc. as soon as possible with a suitable cleaning agent and wash the area carefully afterward as they can discolor the paint if left to work on it over time. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

## Repairing paint damage

- ▶ Have minor paint damage (cracks, scratches or stone chips) repaired immediately, before corrosion begins. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

If traces of corrosion have already formed, these must be thoroughly removed. An anti-corrosion primer must then be applied to these spots, followed by top-coat paint. Paint data can be found on the vehicle data plate.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle identification data" on page 248.

## Care of paint protection films

### NOTE

Risk of damage due to incorrect maintenance of paint protection films.

- ▶ Follow the care instructions of the paint protection film manufacturer.
- ▶ After applying the film, wait at least 48 hours until the first vehicle wash.
- ▶ When using car washes, clean the vehicle only in cloth car washes. Before using an automatic car wash, consult the car wash operator.

- ▶ Do not point the high-pressure washer at the edge of the film.
- ▶ Remove dirt, e.g. insects, as quickly as possible.
- ▶ Remove stubborn dirt particles with a 99% iso-propanol solution.
- ▶ Apply hot wax evenly and make sure that no irregularities form.

## Repairing the underbody protection



### WARNING

Flammable material close to the exhaust system

Additional rust or underbody protection agents in the area of the exhaust system can become too hot when driving and ignite.

- ▶ Do not apply additional underbody protection or rustproofing agents on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalysts, or heat shields.

The underside of your vehicle is permanently protected against chemical and mechanical influences. Damage to this protective coating cannot be excluded in day-to-day driving.

- ▶ Have the underside of the car checked regularly by an authorized Porsche dealer and the protective coating restored. Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

## Cleaning decorative films

### NOTE

Risk of damage due to detachment of the decorative films during cleaning.



- ▶ Do not use polish or hot wax.
- ▶ Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment or steam cleaners.
- ▶ Use a soft sponge, pH-neutral soap and plenty of water.

## Care of paint protection films

### NOTE

Risk of damage due to incorrect maintenance of paint protection films.

- ▶ Follow the care instructions of the paint protection film manufacturer.
- ▶ After applying the film, wait at least 48 hours until the first vehicle wash.
- ▶ When using car washes, clean the vehicle only in cloth car washes. Before using an automatic car wash, consult the car wash operator.
- ▶ Do not point the high-pressure washer at the edge of the film.
- ▶ Remove dirt, e.g. insects, as quickly as possible.
- ▶ Remove stubborn dirt with a 99% isopropanol solution.
- ▶ Apply hot wax evenly and make sure that no irregularities form.

## Cleaning headlights, lights, plastic parts and surfaces, sensors and cameras

### NOTE

Cleaning agents can get into the controls or switches, for example, and cause damage. Unsuitable cleaning agents may damage plastic surfaces.

- ▶ Do not spray water or interior window cleaner directly onto the plastic components in the vehicle interior.
- ▶ Use only clean water and a little washing up liquid or interior window cleaner to clean headlights, lights, plastic components and surfaces and vehicle cameras. Use a soft sponge or a soft, lint-free cloth for this purpose.
- ▶ Never use other chemical cleaning agents or solvents.

## Cleaning windows

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Wiper blade care" on page 213.

### Information

The front side windows have a water-repellent (hydrophobic) coating, which reduces soiling of the windows. This coating is subject to natural wear and can be renewed.

- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clean all windows regularly, inside and out, using a window cleaning agent. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Do not dry the windows with the same leather chamois used for the painted surfaces. Residue from preservatives could impair visibility.
- ▶ Remove insect remains with insect remover. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

## Wiper blade care

### NOTE

Accidental swinging back of the wiper arm can damage the windshield.

- ▶ Always hold wiper arm securely when replacing wiper blades.

### NOTE

The windshield wipers can freeze at low temperatures.

- ▶ Thaw and release frozen windshield wipers before driving.

### NOTE

The graphite coating on the wiper blades can be damaged if they are not cleaned properly.

- ▶ Make sure that the cleaning jet of a high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner does not strike the wiper blades.
- ▶ Do not clean wiper blades with a cloth or sponge.
- ▶ Clean wiper blades with clean water only.

Windshield wiper blades in perfect condition are required for ensuring a clear view.

- ▶ Clean the windshield with window cleaner at regular intervals, especially after washing the vehicle in a car wash. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Clean the windshield using a sponge or cloth if it is very dirty (e.g. insect remains).

## Caring for wheels

### ⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agent film on brake disks

If cleaning agents (e.g. rim cleaner) come into contact with the brake disks, the resulting film can impair braking performance.

- ▶ Make sure that cleaning agent does not come into contact with the brake disks.
- ▶ If cleaning agents do come into contact with the brake disks, clean the brake disks thoroughly with a strong jet of water.
- ▶ Paying attention to any traffic behind you, dry the brake disks by applying the brakes.

Metal particles (e.g. brass or copper in brake dust) must not remain on alloy wheels for too long. Contact corrosion can cause pitting.

Cleaners with an oxide-removing effect or incorrect pH value, as are commonly used for other metals, as well as mechanical equipment and products, will damage the surface and are therefore unsuitable.

- ▶ Use only acid-free cleaners for alloy wheels (pH value between 4 and 10). Products with the incorrect pH value can destroy the surface of the wheels. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
  - ▶ If possible, wash the wheels every two weeks with a sponge or washing brush. If the wheels are exposed to grit or industrial dust, weekly cleaning is necessary.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Washing vehicle" on page 210.

## Cleaning door, roof, convertible top, lid and window seals

### NOTE

The lubricant coating on the inner door seals may be damaged by unsuitable cleaning agents and care products.

- ▶ Do not use chemical cleaning agents or solvents.
- ▶ Do not use care products.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Wash dirt (e.g. abrasion, dust, grit) from all seals regularly using warm soapy water.
- ▶ If there is a risk of frost, protect the outer door seals and lid and flap seals by using a suitable care product to prevent them from freezing in place.

## Cleaning and caring for vehicle interior

### Leather care

#### NOTE

The leather may become damaged by the use of unsuitable cleaning agents and care products, and by inappropriate treatment.

- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaners or hard cleaning objects.
- ▶ Make sure that perforated leather does not get wet on its reverse side.
- ▶ Remove water drops from the leather immediately.

To ensure proper cleaning and care of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clean all types of leather regularly to remove fine dust using a soft, white woolen cloth, or a commercially available microfiber cloth.
- ▶ Remove heavy dirt (**no** water or moisture stains) with a leather cleaning agent.
- ▶ Read the instructions for use on the containers. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Treat cleaned leather only with a leather care product. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

## Cleaning carpet and floor mats



**WARNING**

Obstructed pedals

Unsuitable floor mats or mats that are not properly secured can restrict the movement of the pedals or interfere with actuation of the pedals. The accelerator pedal may be accidentally pressed or the brake pedal obstructed. This can result in an unexpected increase in the driving speed or make braking difficult.

- ▶ Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle.
- ▶ Secure floor mats properly and do not lay them loosely.
- ▶ Do not lay several floor mats on top of each other.
- ▶ Ensure that floor mats are securely fitted again after they have been removed, e.g. for cleaning.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clean using a vacuum cleaner or a brush that is not too soft.
- ▶ Remove heavy dirt and stains using a stain remover.  
Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

To protect carpets, the Porsche range of accessories includes the correct size of floor mats with the appropriate fastening.

## Cleaning airbag covers



**DANGER**

Improper cleaning

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents can penetrate into the airbag system. Risk of damage to the airbag system if incorrectly handled. The airbag system may not deploy properly in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Do not make any modifications whatsoever to individual components, such as the covers of the steering wheel, dashboard, front seats, and door and roof frame panels.
- ▶ Do not use cleaning agents or other liquids in the area of the airbags.

## Cleaning fabric linings

Fabric linings on pillars, roofliner, and sun visors, etc. must only be cleaned using suitable cleaning agents, suitable dry foam and a soft brush.

## Caring for Race – Tex / other textiles

Do not use leather care products to clean Race – Tex **microfiber covers**. For regular car care, it is sufficient to clean the cover with a soft brush. Strong abrasion or rubbing when cleaning will cause a lasting change to the surface.

- ▶ When lightly soiled, wet a soft cloth with water or a pH neutral soap solution and wipe off the dirt.
- ▶ When heavily soiled, wet a soft cloth with lukewarm water or thinned white spirit and dab the dirt from the outside in.

**Steering wheels** with Race – Tex microfiber covers can become more heavily soiled from permanent skin contact.

- ▶ When lightly soiled, wet a soft cloth with a pH neutral soap solution and wipe the outer rim of the steering wheel.
- ▶ When heavily soiled, wet a soft cloth with lukewarm water or thinned white spirit and dab the dirt from the outside in.

## Cleaning seat belts

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Use mild detergent for soiled belts.
- ▶ When drying, avoid direct sunlight.
- ▶ Only use suitable cleaning agents.
- ▶ Do not dye or bleach belts. The belt fabric could be weakened and could therefore impair safety.

## Cleaning screens and touch displays

**NOTE**

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents can penetrate the PCM unit. Improper handling can damage the PCM unit.

- ▶ Do not use solvents such as mineral spirits, thinners, gasoline, acetone, alcohol (ethanol, methanol or isopropyl alcohol) or abrasive agents for cleaning.
- ▶ Do not spray any cleaning agents or other liquids directly onto the PCM unit.
- ▶ Carefully wipe the screen with a damp cloth.
- ▶ Only clean the screen when it is switched off.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ The screen is sensitive to scratches. Carefully clean the PCM from time to time with a dry, clean and soft cloth (microfiber cloth) or a cleaning brush. Do not exert too much pressure on the surface when cleaning.
- ▶ Remove finger prints with a slightly damp cloth or a mild cleaning agent.

## Laying up and storing vehicle

If you intend to lay up and store your vehicle for an extended period: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer. They can provide information and advice about the necessary measures, e.g. corrosion prevention, car care, maintenance and storage.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.

For information on locking the vehicle when the battery is disconnected:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Central Locking" on page 48.

## Refrigerant

Depending on the market, the air conditioning system uses refrigerant R1234yf. If the refrigerant R1234yf is used, there is a sticker on the inside of the luggage compartment lid.

### WARNING

Refrigerant under pressure

The air conditioning system contains pressurized refrigerant R1234yf.

- ▶ The refrigerant system may only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to ensure that it functions properly and safely (in accordance with SAE J2845 Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A / C System).
- ▶ Porsche recommends contacting an authorized Porsche dealer because they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

### Marking for R1234yf

There is a marking on the inside of the luggage compartment lid.



Fig. 185: Marking for R1234yf

### Observe the safety symbols on the label for R1234yf



Caution



Lubricant type



Mobile air conditioning (MAC)



The mobile air conditioning system (MAC) must be serviced by an authorized service technician



Flammable refrigerant

### Evaporator

The evaporator of the air conditioning system (cooling coil) must **never** be repaired or replaced by an evaporator that has been removed from a used or scrapped vehicle. New MAC exchange evaporators must be certified and labeled in accordance with SAE standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744 (Design Criteria and Certification for OEM Mobile Air Conditioning Evaporator and Service Replacements).

## Measurement on the Test Stand

### Carrying out test stand measurements

#### WARNING

Inhalation of toxic exhaust gases

Danger of serious or fatal injuries due to inhalation of toxic exhaust gases.

Exhaust gas contains colorless and odorless carbon monoxide, which is toxic even in low concentrations.

- ▶ Only perform work with the engine running outdoors or with suitable extraction systems for the exhaust gases.

#### WARNING

Inadequate securing of vehicle

An unsecured or incorrectly secured vehicle can move unintentionally or tip or fall off lifting equipment, such as a jack or lifting platform. This can cause serious injuries and damage.

- ▶ Raise the vehicle using a jack on a solid and flat surface only.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when working under the vehicle.
- ▶ Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall.

### Performance measurement

Performance measurements on roller-type test stands are not approved by Porsche.

### Carrying out brake tests

- ▶ Only carry out brake testing on roller-type test stands.

The following limits must not be exceeded:

- Test speed 4.6 mph (7.5 km/h)
- Test duration 20 seconds

### Carrying out electric parking brake tests

- ▶ Only test the electric parking brake on the test bench **with the ignition switched on and with the manual gearshift lever in N.**

The vehicle switches automatically to the brake test stand mode in which the electric parking brake can be tested. A message appears on the multifunction display in the instrument panel.

## Tires and Wheels

### Maintain Load and speed

The service life of tires depends on driving habits as well as the right tire pressure and correct chassis setting. Rapid acceleration, extreme cornering speeds and hard braking increase tire wear. Moreover, tread wear is increased at high outside temperatures and on rough road surfaces.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 248.

#### NOTE

Never use radial and diagonal tires on the vehicle at the same time

- ▶ Always use the same type of tire.
- ▶ Drive at an appropriate speed.
- ▶ Do not overload the vehicle and check the roof load.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Wheels and Tires" on page 252.

## Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

### Check tire pressure



Low tire pressure

Driving with insufficiently inflated tires increases the risk of a flat tire and can subsequently lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

In addition, insufficient tire pressure leads to increased wear on the affected tires and causes damage.

- ▶ Use a precise tire pressure gage to check tire pressures.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the tire wall.
- ▶ Cold tire pressure means that when you adjust the tire pressure, all tires must be cold, with a maximum outside temperature of 68 °F (20 °C). Make sure that the tires are not exposed to direct sunlight before measuring the cold pressures, as otherwise the pressures would increase due to the influence of temperature.
- ▶ Check tire pressures at least once a month when the tires are cold.
- ▶ Valve caps protect the valve from dust and dirt and thus from leaks. Always screw the caps tightly. Replace missing caps immediately.
- ▶ Use only plastic valve caps.
- ▶ For safety reasons, do not use compressed air cylinders to inflate the tires.

**NOTE**

A tire pressure that is excessively low can cause the tires to overheat and become damaged, even invisibly.

- ▶ Hidden tire damage will not be rectified by correcting the tire pressure.
- ▶ Never release air from hot tires. Tire pressure is increased in hot tires. The tire pressure would drop below the prescribed value.

When tires are warm, the tire pressure is increased.

- ▶ Never vent air from hot tires. This could cause the tire pressure to drop below the prescribed value.



Fig. 186: Tire pressure plate on door sill

The tire pressure must correspond to the prescribed value. The tire pressure can be found on the plate on the driver's side door entry area ▶ (Fig. 186) and in the Technical Data on page 308. The pressures apply to cold tires (68°F/20 °C).

- ▶ Check the cold tire pressure at least every two weeks.

### Checking the tire pressure using a pressure gauge

- Remove the tire valve cap.
- Press the pressure gauge onto the valve.
- Read off the tire pressure from the pressure gauge and compare it with the permitted tire pressure. This information can be found on the tire pressure plate or in the chapter "Technical data".
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 248.
- Remove the pressure gauge.

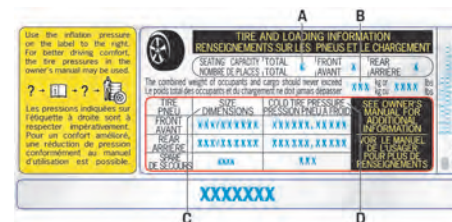


Fig. 187: Example of tire pressure plate

### A Seat capacity

Maximum number of vehicle occupants including driver.

**B** Load limit value

Maximum gross weight of the vehicle load (occupants and luggage). This is the maximum weight of occupants and luggage that the vehicle may be loaded on.

**C** Load limit value

Size of tires fitted at the factory.

**D** Recommended tire pressure for cold tires

These values refer to cold tires (20 °C (68 °F)).


## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Each tire, including the spare tire (if available), should be checked once a month in cold conditions and corrected to the value recommended by the vehicle manufacturer, which can be found on the vehicle tire pressure plate. (If the vehicle is equipped with tires that differ in size from the tire pressure plate of the vehicle, the correct tire pressure for these tires must be determined.) For added safety, the vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), which triggers a warning light if the tire pressure of one or more tires is significantly too low. If the tire pressure warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible, check the tires and correct the tire pressure. Driving with significantly low tire pressure causes the tire to become too hot and can cause tire damage. In addition, low tire pressure leads to more fuel consumption and tire wear and can impair the driving and braking features. It must be noted that the TPMS is not a substitute for the proper care of the tires and it is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tire pressure is correct, even if the tire pressure has not decreased so much that the TPMS tire pressure warning light comes on. Display and settings of the tire pressure monitoring system are on the multifunction display. However, the tires still have to be inflated manually.

► Refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 248.

The TPMS offers the following functions:

- Permanent monitoring of tire pressure and tire temperature.
- Displays the actual tire pressure (actual pressure) during the trip.
- Tire pressure warnings in two stages (yellow and red warning).
- Vehicle is stationary: Display of the pressure difference from the target pressure.

The tire pressure warning light  and a corresponding message on the instrument cluster warn of a loss of pressure in two stages (yellow and red tire pressure warning, depending on the extent of the pressure loss).

The tire pressure warning light only goes out when the tire pressure has been corrected to the target pressure.

The yellow tire pressure warning is displayed for approx. 10 seconds after the vehicle comes to a standstill and is switched off or when the vehicle is switched on again. The yellow tire pressure warning can be acknowledged when the vehicle is switched on. The red tire pressure warning also appears while driving and can be acknowledged.

- If the tire pressure warning light comes on and a tire pressure warning is displayed despite the correct tire pressure: Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

## Information

The Tire Pressure Monitoring system issues warnings relating to loss of pressure due to natural diffusion and gradual loss of pressure caused by foreign bodies. The Tire Pressure Monitoring system cannot warn of sudden tire damage, e.g. sudden punctures.

### WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure

Excessively low or high tire pressure destroys the tire and wheel, extends the braking distance, and significantly increases the risk of an accident.

Although the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is available, it is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tires are inflated to the right tire pressure and that the settings in the TPMS menu are correct.

- Adapt tire pressure to the fitted tires.
  - Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.
- Make sure that the settings in the TPMS menu on the multifunction display correspond to the tires fitted on the vehicle. After a wheel change, update the settings in the TPMS menu.
- Even if a newly fitted set of tires has the same settings as the previous set, select the tire type and size again on the multifunction display.




**⚠ WARNING**

Incorrect tire pressure

- ▶ Incomplete entries or the wrong choice of tire on the multifunction display will impact on the correct output of warnings and notices.
- ▶ If a red tire pressure warning appears on the multifunction display: Stop immediately in a suitable place and check the tires for damage. If necessary, repair damage using tire sealant.
- ▶ Do **not** continue to drive with defective tires. Have defective tires replaced immediately. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.
- ▶ Do not drive with tires that repeatedly lose pressure in a short space of time. If in doubt, have the tire checked by an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

**Malfunctions in the Tire Pressure Monitoring system**

In the event of malfunctions, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is unable to monitor the tire pressure. The tire pressure warning light  lights up on the instrument panel and a corresponding message appears on the multifunction display.

- ▶ If the fault persists: Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

Monitoring is interrupted in the following cases:

- Fault in the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.
  - Missing wheel sensors for the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.
  - In the learning phase after the tire settings have been updated.
  - After the wheels have been changed without updating the tire settings.
  - If the tire temperatures are too high.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning lights and light indicators" on page 107.

**Retrieving the tire pressure**** Information**

After the ignition is switched on, the tire pressures are only taught-in and displayed after reaching a speed of approx. 15 mph (25 km/h). Dashes (-.-) will appear instead of the tire pressures.

The tire pressures are no longer displayed when the ignition is switched off and on again, or the vehicle has been stationary for more than approx. 10 minutes. If the tire is inflated by at least 1.5 psi (0.1 bar), the corresponding tire pressure is updated and displayed.

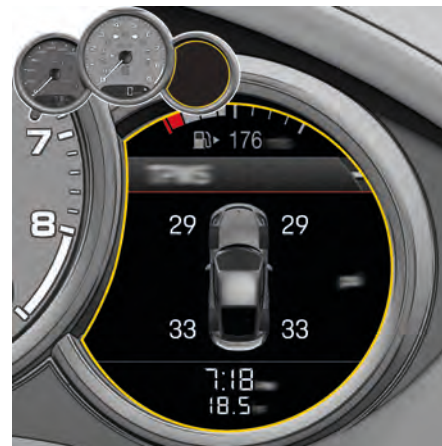


Fig. 188: Tire pressure display

- ▶ Select the TPMS menu.

The actual pressure is displayed for information purposes only. The tire pressure changes according to the temperature.

- ▶ Never change the tire pressures on the basis of this display.

## Viewing Fill info

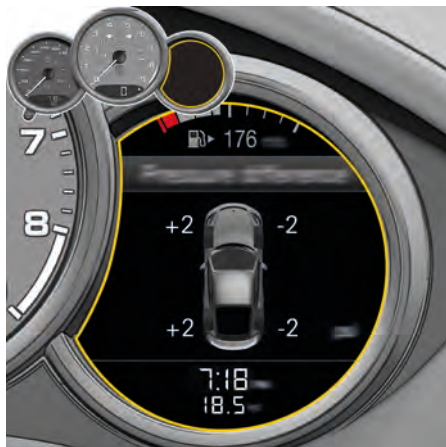


Fig. 189: Example pressure difference

- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.

### ► Tire pressure ► Fill info

The pressure difference from the set pressure on the relevant wheel is displayed.

Example: If the reading for the right rear tire is shown as **-1.4 psi (-0.1 bar)**, this tire needs to be inflated by 1.4 psi (0.1 bar). The tire temperature has already been taken into account in the pressure shown.

- You should only use the pressure difference from the display or the corresponding tire pressure warning to correct the tire pressure.

In the case of tires that have not yet been taught, the new target pressures are displayed instead of the actual pressure differences.

## Selecting the tire type (fitted tire type and tire size)

### ⓘ Information

The options available depend on the model type. It is therefore possible that not all the options shown here are available on the multifunction display.

- Before fitting tires with dimensions not stored on the multifunction display, first add the missing information on the multifunction display.

Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

- Only use tires approved by Porsche.

- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.

### ► TPMS ► Tire type

#### Available setting and abbreviation:


- 20" Summer: **20" (S)**
- 20" Winter: **20" (W)**

The selected setting appears as an abbreviation in the **TPMS** main menu in the **Tire type** line.

## Teaching the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

After the tires have been changed, the wheel sensor has been replaced, or the tire settings have been updated, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System information about the tires starts to be taught-in. The Tire Pressure Monitoring system recognizes the wheels and their installation position. The position and pressure data is available as soon as the Tire Pressure Monitoring system has assigned the recognized wheels to the correct wheel position.

During the learning process, the target pressures for cold tires (68°F/20 °C) are displayed in the inflation info and the message **No monitoring, system learns from 15 mph (25 km/h)** appears in the multifunction display.

The tire pressure warning light  on the instrument panel stays lit until all the wheels have been taught.

- Refer to chapter "Warning lights and light indicators" on page 107.

## Select tire pressure in the TPMS menu

- ✓ 718 Cayman GT4 RS

For driving on the race track, pressures deviating from road mode can be set and monitored.

Race track mode is **not** designed for public road traffic.

This allows the experienced driver to adapt the tire pressure individually to the race track in order to achieve optimum handling.

### WARNING

Tire pressure too low

Despite the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, responsibility for selecting the set tire pressures for driving on a race circuit is always the responsibility of the driver.

- Adjust the required pressures to the maximum speeds to be driven.
  - Take into account the warning thresholds that result in the output of a tire pressure warning.
- For information on warning thresholds and tire pressure warnings:
  - Refer to chapter "Checking tires" on page 226.

### ► Tire pressure ► Race track

The current actual pressures are displayed.

## Setting tire pressures for the race track

✓ 718 Cayman GT4 RS

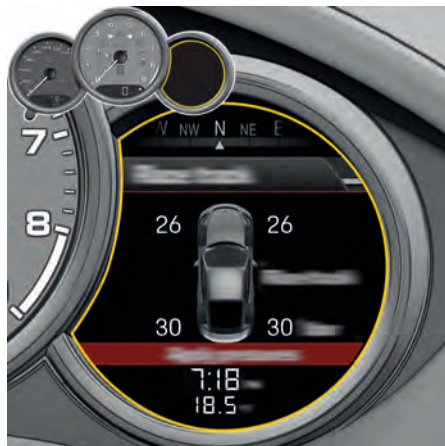


Fig. 190: Example - Apply tire pressures for race track

### **i** Information


The desired actual pressures must not be less than 1.8 bar per wheel.

- ▶ Set the desired actual pressures for the race track on the wheel.

▶ **Tire pressure ▶ Race track ▶ Take over pressures**

### **i** Information

If the minimum pressure in the tire is not reached, the message **Observe minimum target pressure 1.8 bar** appears and the new pressures are not applied. In this case, the tire pressures to be monitored must be set again.

The new tire pressures are only applied successfully when the message **New target pressures** is displayed on the multifunction display. When race circuit mode is activated, is permanently  displayed on the multifunction display.

### Switch back to road mode

There are **two** ways of switching back to street mode.


#### Variant 1: without switching off the ignition

▶ **Tire pressure ▶ Race track ▶ No**

If you switch from race circuit mode to road mode without first switching off the ignition, the last tire selection is monitored.

- ▶ Use the pressure differences from the **Fill Info** display in the **Tire Pressure** main menu or from the corresponding tire pressure warning to correct the tire pressure.

#### Variant 2: after the ignition is switched off

If the race track mode is set to run after an extended interruption in the ignition, the **Race track**  (Fig. 190) menu with the query (selection) appears in the multifunction display each time the ignition is activated: **No/Yes/New pressure**.

#### No:

Selecting **No** and then selecting the **Tire type** menu resets the tire pressures to be monitored to road mode.

- After switching to road mode, the tire pressure monitoring system re-learns the tires. The required pressures for cold tires (68 °F/20 °C) are displayed in the **Inflation info** menu as long as this is the case.
- When the Tire Pressure Monitoring System has been taught, check the tire pressure in the **Fill info** menu on all wheels.
- If necessary, correct the tire pressure to the setpoint pressure (pressure difference **0.0**).

#### Yes:

Selecting **Yes** retains the set tire pressures for monitoring while driving on the race track.

#### New pressure:


Selecting **new pressure** allows new tire pressures to be set for monitoring while driving on the race track.

### **i** Information

If no selection is made before driving off, the system automatically switches back to road mode and the message **Wheel change? Update settings**.

- ▶ Update the settings on the multifunction display the next time the vehicle comes to a standstill.

## Tire pressure warnings

The tire pressure warning light  on the instrument panel and a corresponding message on the multifunction display warn against loss of pressure in two stages (yellow and red tire pressure warning, depending on the extent of the pressure loss).

## **i** Information

### Race track mode:

- If the actual pressure (e.g. due to cooling) drops below 1.6 bar, a red warning is issued. The red warning is canceled as soon as the actual pressure exceeds 1.6 bar (e.g. due to heating).
  - If the warning threshold of the tire pressure warning is also not reached, the warning is only canceled when the tires are refilled to the required pressure again (pressure difference 0.0) or a new target pressure is set in the Racetrack menu.
- 
- ▶ Always check the tires for damage before filling to the required pressure (pressure difference 0.0).

## **i** Information

The tire pressure warning light only goes out when the tire pressure has been corrected to the target pressure.

The yellow tire pressure warning is displayed for approx. 10 seconds after the vehicle comes to a standstill or when the vehicle is switched on again.

The yellow tire pressure warning can be acknowledged when the vehicle is switched on.

The red tire pressure warning also appears while driving and can be acknowledged.

▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

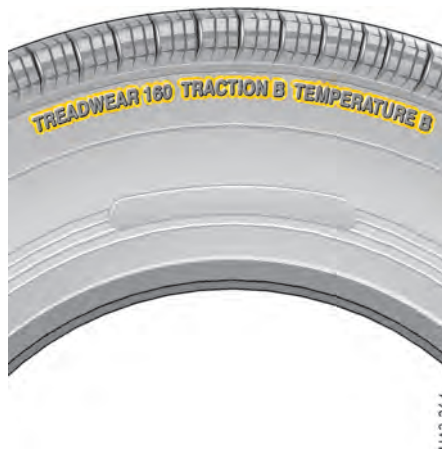


Fig. 191: "Treadwear", "Traction" and "Temperature" of the tire

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum tire width for example: All passenger vehicle tires must also comply with the safety requirements of the German Federal Government (Federal Safety Requirements). Specification of quality classes, if applicable.

### "Treadwear"

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded "150" would wear one and a half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded "100". The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use,

however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### "Traction" AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## **i** Information

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**⚠ WARNING**

Misuse of tires

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

- ▶ The maximum permissible speed for the tires mounted on the vehicle should not be exceeded.
- ▶ The tire pressure should be set correctly.
- ▶ The maximum payload of the vehicle should be observed.

**Tire glossary****Radial tires**

An air-filled tire whose cord threads are arranged transversely to the center groove.

**Fabric layer**

A layer of rubber-coated, parallel threads.

**Cord**

The threads that make up the fabric layers.

**Rim**

A metal carrier for a tire or a tire and hose assembly on which the tire beads sit.

**Bead**

The part of the tire made of steel wires reinforced with cords, which is shaped to match the rim.

**Side panel/tire edge**

The part of a tire located between the tread and bead.

**Running surface**

The part of the tire that comes into contact with the road surface.

**Tire pressure plate**

A sign placed in the area of the door sill showing the seat capacity, the load limit, the size of the original tires and the recommended tire pressure.

**Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

An identification number located on radial tires with information on the manufacturer, tire size, tire type and production date.

**Tire pressure**

A measured variable for the amount of air present in the tire. The tire pressure is measured in kilopascals (kPa), pounds per square inch (psi) or bar.

**Cold tire pressure**

The tire pressure of a cold tire at an ambient temperature of max. 20 °C / 68 °F and without direct sunlight.

**Maximum permissible tire pressure**

The maximum pressure at which a cold tire may be inflated.

**Recommended tire pressure**

The pressure specified on the tire pressure plate for cold tires.

**kPa (kilopascal)**

One metric unit for the tire pressure.

**PSI (pounds per square inch)**

A standard unit for tire pressure.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Payload information" on page 249.

**Overloading****⚠ DANGER**

Overloaded

Overloading can lead to dangerous vehicle reactions and longer braking distances.

- ▶ Do not overload the vehicle. Note roof load.
- ▶ If you are going to load the vehicle, first correct the tire pressure. The tire pressure for a loaded vehicle can be found on the tire pressure plate and in the "Technical data" chapter.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 248.
- ▶ Never exceed the specified axle load.

**NOTE**

Risk of vehicle and tire damage. Damage due to overloading is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Tire damage can also be caused by overloading. Such damage is not covered under the Tire Warranty.

- ▶ Do not overload the vehicle. Observe the roof load.
- ▶ If the vehicle will be loaded, first correct the tire pressure. The tire pressure for a loaded vehicle can be found on the tire pressure plate and in the chapter "Technical data".
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 248.
- ▶ Never exceed the specified axle load.

**Inflating tires****⚠ CAUTION**

Hot filler hose

The compressor filler hose can become hot during filling and cause burns.

- ▶ Wear gloves.

The compressor is located under the cover in the front trunk.

▷ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions on the compressor.
1. Screw the compressor filler hose onto the tire valve.
  2. Connect the compressor to a socket in the vehicle and switch on.
    - ➔ The tire will inflate.
  3. Check inflation pressure with pressure gauge and reduce tire pressure or continue filling as required. Check the tire pressure again.
  4. Switch off the compressor.
  5. Unscrew compressor filler hose.

### **i** Information

Tire pressure can be checked and inflated at service stations.

### Reducing inflation pressure

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Open the air bleed screw on the filler hose until the correct pressure is achieved.

## Reading inscription on tires

### Reading inscription on tires



Fig. 192: Labeling on radial tires

#### A – Tire size

Example: P 265/40R18 (101Y)

- P – The tire is designed for passenger vehicles. This information is not displayed on every tire.
- 265 – Specification of the tire width in mm.
- 40 – Percentage ratio of tire height to tire width.
- R – Identification letter for radial tires.
- 18 – Specification the rim diameter in inches.
- 101 – Load-carrying coefficient.
- Y – Speed index.
- XL (Extra Load) – Tires with increased load capacity.

#### B – TIN (Tire Identification Number)

Example: DOT xx xx xxxx xxxx

The DOT symbol indicates that the tires meet the requirements of the US Department of Transportation and contains the following information:

- The first two digits provide information about the manufacturer.
- The next two characters provide information about the tire size.

- The next four characters provide information about the tire type.
- The next four characters provide information about the production date. For example, if the last four digits are "0204", this means that the tire was produced in the second calendar week of 2004.

#### C – Composition and material of the fabric position

The number of layers in the tread and the side walls and their material composition.

#### D – Maximum permissible tire pressure

The maximum pressure at which a cold tire may be inflated.

- Do not exceed the maximum permitted tire pressure.

#### E – Maximum load capacity

The maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry. When replacing tires, make sure that the new tire has the same load capacity as the factory-installed tire.

#### F – Radial

The marking indicates whether the tire has a radial structure.

#### G – Marking for tubeless or tube tires

Identification for tubeless tires.

#### Speed index

The letter for the speed index provides information about the maximum permitted speed of the tire. The information is provided on the tire edge.

The speed rating **F** indicates the maximum permitted speed for the tire.



<b>H</b>	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
<b>V</b>	up to 150 mph (240 km/h)
<b>W</b>	up to 165 mph (270 km/h)
<b>Y</b>	up to 185 mph (300 km/h)
<b>(Y)</b>	up to 185 mph (300 km/h) as for Y tires. Speeds of more than 185 mph (300 km/h) are also possible at a maximum tire load capacity of 85 % (confirmation from tire manufacturer required for speeds of more than 185 mph (300 km/h)).



Fig. 193: Inscription on wheel

- A** Rim width in inches
- B** Rim-flange contour code letter
- C** Symbol for drop-center rim
- D** Rim diameter in inches
- E** Double hump
- F** Rim offset in mm

### Reading off inscription on wheel

The information is located on the back of the spokes near the tire valve.

## Checking tires

### Recognize tire damage



Hidden tire damage and damage to the rim flange

Hidden tire damage can cause the tire to burst. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Check tires, including the sidewalls, regularly for embedded foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- ▶ Cross curb edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Avoid driving over steep or sharp curbs or objects with sharp edges (e.g. stones) heavily or at an acute angle.
- ▶ If in doubt, have the tire, especially the inner side, checked by an expert. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Tire repairs are not permitted under any circumstances. Sealing a tire with tire sealant is only an emergency solution so that you can drive to the nearest workshop.

For safety reasons, tires must be replaced in the event of the following types of damage:

- If fabric rupturing cannot be ruled out.
- If the tire was thermally or mechanically overloaded as a result of pressure loss or other prior damage.



## Checking and replacing valves and valve caps

- ▶ Use only genuine Porsche valves for the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- ▶ Check valves and replace if necessary whenever the tires are changed.  
Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools.

If valve caps are missing, the valve is unprotected from dust and dirt, which may result in leaks.

- ▶ Always screw on valve caps tightly to protect valve cores from dirt. Dirty valve cores can cause seeping air loss.
- ▶ Replace missing valve caps immediately.
- ▶ Use only plastic valve caps.

## Check tire tread

1. Check the tread regularly, especially before and after long drives.
2. Original Porsche equipment has built-in tire wear indicators. They are molded into the tread grooves and become visible as bands approximately 1/2 inch (12 mm) wide when the tire tread depth depletes to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
3. If the wear indicators become visible in two or more adjacent grooves, it is time to replace the tires. Allowing the tires wear to that extent is discouraged.
4. Worn tires do not provide enough road adhesion and have even less effect on wet road surfaces.

5. For safety reasons, tires should be replaced before the wear indicators become visible. Winter tires are no longer suitable if their tread depth is less than 5/32-inch (4 mm).
6. In the United States, the permitted minimum tread depth may be regulated at the state level. All relevant regulations must be observed.

## Measuring tire tread depth

- ▶ Insert a commercially available tread depth gauge or caliper in the tire tread and measure the tire tread depth.

### Information

Unevenly worn tires indicate a fault on the vehicle:

- ▶ Visit a Porsche partner – there they have trained technicians and the required parts and tools

## Changing wheels

- ▶ Turn off the vehicle when changing a wheel.

### WARNING

Lack of grip

Initially, new tires do not provide their full grip.

- ▶ You should therefore drive at moderate speeds during the first 120 miles (200 km), to extend the service life of the tires and achieve full performance capability.
- ▶ As a rule, only mount tires of identical make, type and specification number (e.g. "N...").
- ▶ Before fitting new tires, inquire about their current approval status: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▶ Use only tire makes tested and approved by Porsche.

- ▶ The tread depth difference on one axle must not be more than 30 %.
- ▶ Use second-hand tires only if their prior usage is known.
- ▶ Always replace both tires on one axle to avoid any unnecessary effect on driving behavior due to varying tread depths.
- ▶ Only authorized Porsche Partners may mount tires.  
Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Adjust your driving style to the altered handling behavior.

### Information

New wheels must have tire pressure sensors for the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

- ▶ Make sure the wheels are compatible with the TPMS on your vehicle. For information on suitable wheels and on the TPMS on your vehicle: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▶ When changing a tire, check the battery charge state of the tire pressure sensors: Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

**i Information**

If new tires are mounted on one axle only, a noticeable change in handling may occur due to the different tread depth of the other tires. This is especially the case if only the rear tires are replaced. However, this effect decreases continuously as the tire mileage increases.

- ▶ Adjust your driving style to the altered handling behavior.

**⚠ WARNING**

Working under the vehicle

The vehicle can slip off the jack.

- ▶ Make sure that there is no one inside the vehicle when jacking it up and changing the wheel.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Never jack up the vehicle on a surface that slopes up, down or to the side.
- ▶ Only use the jack to raise the vehicle for changing tires.
- ▶ Always support the vehicle on stable supports when working under the vehicle. A jack is not suitable for this purpose.

**i Information**

The tools needed for changing wheels (jack, wheel bolt wrench, assembly aids, etc.) are not included in the standard scope of supply for the vehicle.

For information on the tool required: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

**i Information**

The tire and wheel sizes on both axles are different.

When removing the wheels, mark the direction of rotation and position on each wheel and carry out the installation according to these markings.

- ▶ Only use wheels/tires with approved dimensions for each axle.

**Installing tires**

Incorrect installation of tires on the rim can damage the tires and rim. This can cause the tire to burst.

You may lose control of the vehicle. Only authorized Porsche dealers should fit tires. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

**Balancing wheels**

As a precaution, have wheels balanced in spring (summer tires) and before winter (M+S tires) by an authorized Porsche dealer.

- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

**Changing wheels with central lock****⚠ WARNING**

Special features of the central lock

Changing a wheel with a central lock differs significantly from a wheel with a standard screw connection.

Improperly changing a wheel or using unsuitable tools can lead to damage or malfunctions, including loosening of the wheel.

- ▶ When changing a wheel, the procedure described below should be followed exactly.
- ▶ Only use the original wrench socket to loosen and fasten the central bolt.
- ▶ Use a suitable torque wrench that is suitable for the high tightening torque of 442 ftlb. (600 Nm) and whose tolerance is a maximum of 15% of the target value.

**⚠ WARNING**

Working under the vehicle

As a result of the high assembly forces, the vehicle can roll away and slip off the jack.

- ▶ If available, always use a lift.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g. by means of chocks under the wheels on the diagonally opposite side.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no one inside the vehicle when jacking it up and changing the wheel.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Never jack up the vehicle on a surface that slopes up, down or to the side.

**⚠ WARNING**

Defective bolted connection through use of unauthorized components and wheels

Unsuitable wheel sizes or incorrectly dimensioned components in the hub area of accessory wheels can cause components to break or become damaged. The use of additional spacers may also impair the overall function of the wheel mounting.

- ▶ Only use components that have been approved by Porsche.
- ▶ **Never** use spacers.

**NOTE**

Impact wrenches damage the central screw and anti-loss device

The support arm of a cordless screwdriver can damage the rims.

If a cordless screwdriver is used without a support arm, the high torque cannot be maintained and there is a risk of tilting.

- ▶ **Do not** use an impact wrench.
- ▶ **Do not** use a cordless screwdriver.

**NOTE**

The wheel must not be resting on the floor while the screws are being tightened. Otherwise, the weight of the vehicle will cause tension and imbalance in the screw connection.

- ▶ Ensure that the vehicle is not standing on the wheel to be secured during fitting.
- ▶ Only use suitable torque wrenches.

**i Information**

The tools needed for changing wheels, e.g. jack, torque wrench, aluminum paste, are not delivered as standard with the vehicle.

For information on this: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

**i Information**

The tire and wheel sizes on both axles are different.

When removing the wheels, mark the direction of rotation and position on each wheel and carry out the installation according to these markings.

**Prepare the wheel**

Porsche central lock is a coordinated overall system, consisting of:

- Wheel.
- Central bolt with anti-loss device.
- Brake disc.
- Wheel studs.
- Wheel hub.
- Cap.

Always have work on the vehicle carried out by a qualified repair shop. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

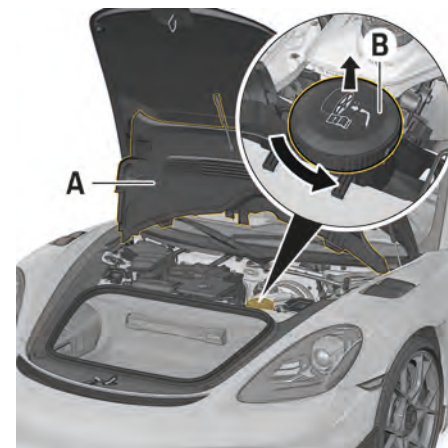


Fig. 194: Socket in the trunk

1. Open the luggage compartment and lift up the plastic cover **A**. ▶ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.
2. Open container **B** and remove socket. The central bolt may only be unscrewed using this original socket. Always leave the socket in the trunk so that it is available in the event of a breakdown.

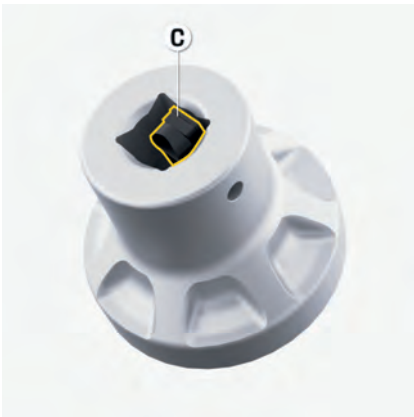


Fig. 195: Socket with auxiliary tool

3. The auxiliary tool is located in socket **C** (Fig. 195) to remove the cover. Remove this from the square and stow it there after use.

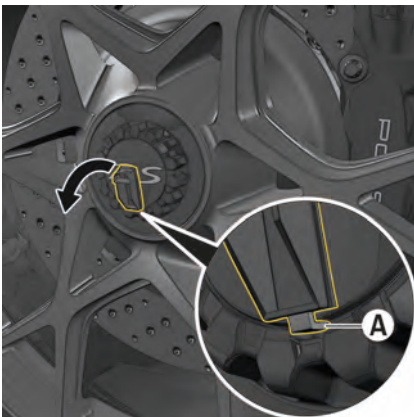


Fig. 196: Lever out the cover with the auxiliary tool

4. Carefully lever the cap out of its seating using the auxiliary tool. Insert the metal tongue deep into the opening groove **A** (Fig. 196) on the central bolt. Then swivel the auxiliary tool back more than 90°.

**NOTE**

Careless removal can scratch the cap

- ▶ Exercise caution when removing the cap.

**Preparing the vehicle**

1. Select gear lever position **P**.
2. Activate electric parking brake.
3. Turn off ignition.
4. Securing vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g., by means of wedges under the wheels on the diagonally opposite side.
5. Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Jack and Lifting Platform" on page 246.
6. Raise the vehicle until the wheel lifts off the ground. Do not lower the vehicle until the end of assembly.

**Dismantle the wheel**

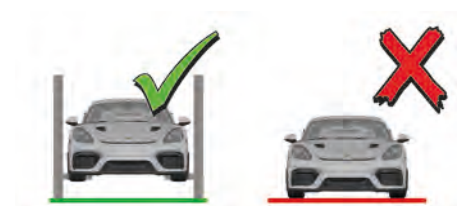


Fig. 197: Vehicle has been raised

- ▶ Ensure that the vehicle is not standing on the wheel to be secured during fitting.

**i Information**

**If the socket cannot be pushed open:**

After a very long period of use or heavy use, safety bolts **E** (Fig. 203) can get stuck.

- ▶ In this case, loosen the safety bolt **A** (Fig. 198) with a suitable tool, e.g., by lightly tapping a thin round bar with a rubber mallet.

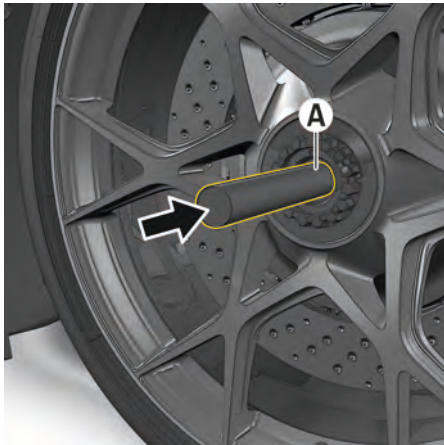


Fig. 198: Loosen the safety bolt

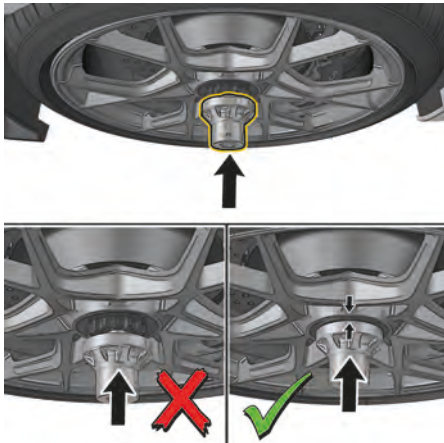


Fig. 199: Put on the socket

1. Position the socket and push it on against slight resistance .

(Fig. 199)

The socket audibly clicks into place. This opens the anti-loss device of the central bolt. If the socket is inserted correctly, there is a gap of approx. 0.08 in. (2 mm) between the socket and the central bolt.

2. Insert a torque wrench or a long lever (ideal length 47.2–59.1 in. (1.2–1.5 m)) with a 1" square connection into the socket.
3. With the help of a **second person**, brake the wheel firmly with the brake pedal to prevent it from turning. The turning forces cannot be held by the parking brake or the gearbox alone.



**WARNING** Sudden loosening of the central bolt

A very high torque is required to loosen the central bolt. The loosening torque can be significantly greater than the tightening torque. The bolt may begin to loosen suddenly.

An inadequately attached wrench socket can slide off and lead to injuries.

- ▶ Make sure there is sufficient clearance so that neither people nor vehicle parts will be harmed if the lever breaks away.
- ▶ When loosening the central bolt, make sure that the wrench socket remains pushed on fully and does not slide out of position.

#### NOTE

Opening the central lock with the socket pushed forward incompletely can damage the loss prevention system.

- ▶ When loosening the central bolt, make sure that the socket remains pushed on fully and does not slide out of position.
- ▶ Observe the direction of rotation.
- ▶ Hold the steering wheel tightly when loosening the front wheels.



Fig. 200: Removing the central bolt

4. Loosen the central bolt with great force and then unscrew it completely (Fig. 200). The socket must remain fully open until the end.
5. Put down the central bolt with the visible side up, protected from e.g. water, dust, dirt.

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the brake discs on vehicles with Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB).

- ▶ Do not place the wheel on the PCCB brake disk when removing it.
- ▶ Use PCCB assembly aid.

## Prepare wheel assembly

Before the wheel is fitted, the components involved must be cleaned, checked and, in some cases, greased. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

### Check central bolt



Fig. 201: Check the conical ring

- ▶ Cone ring **C** (Fig. 201) must be able to be turned in the central bolt without great resistance or jerking. If turning is almost impossible, grease the inside of the central bolt again. Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

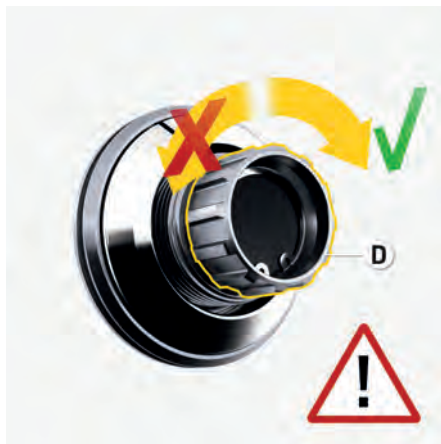


Fig. 202: Check anti-loss device

- ▶ Loss protection **D** (Fig. 202) must turn clockwise. It clicks like a safe lock.
- ▶ Anti-loss device **D** (Fig. 202) must not turn counter-clockwise. Irregular clicking, delayed locking, skipping, or jamming indicate damage to the anti-loss device. Never use this central bolt.



Fig. 203: Check safety bolts

- ▶ The safety bolt **E**. (Fig. 203) Push about an inch into the screw. When you let go, the bolt must snap back. Jamming indicates damage to the anti-loss device. Never use the central bolt and the anti-loss device.



## Mount the wheel



Fig. 204: Place the wheel on the wheel hub

- Put the wheel onto the wheel hub carefully and without tilting (Fig. 204). Thread the wheel into the wheel bolts by turning it slightly and push it against the brake disc.

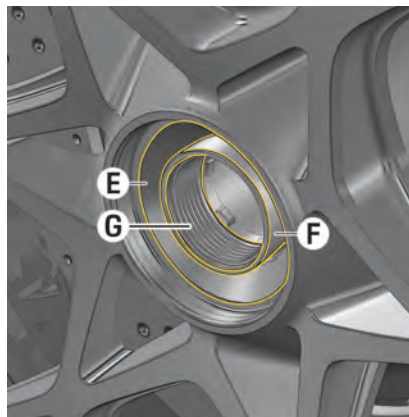


Fig. 205: Lubricate parts

- Grease the following surfaces each time the wheel is fitted:**
  - Wipe old grease and dirt from the conical surface **E** (Fig. 205) in the wheel as well as on the front outside **F** (Fig. 205) of the wheel hub. Then grease very thinly with aluminum paste. This allows the screw connection to slide better into its seat.
  - Thread **G** (Fig. 205) in the wheel hub must be well greased. To do this, re-grease with aluminum grease at every screw connection. Do not remove old grease. All other parts must be grease-free.
  - Only use accessories that have been approved by Porsche.

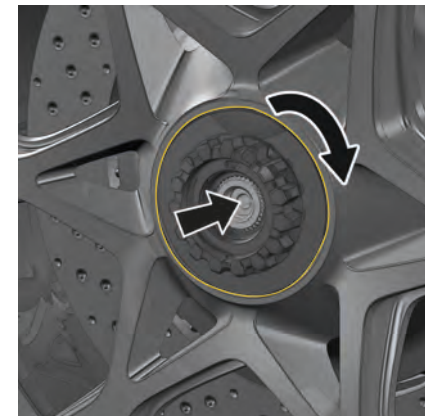


Fig. 206: Removing the central bolt

- Insert the central bolt into the wheel hub and screw it in by hand (Fig. 206).

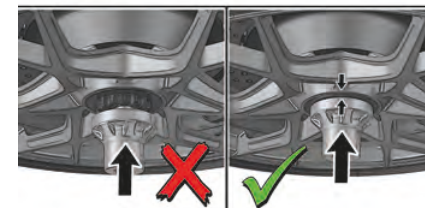
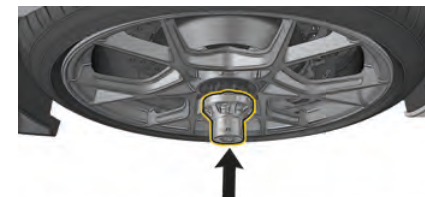


Fig. 207: Put on the socket

- Position the socket and push it on against slight resistance (Fig. 207).



The socket audibly clicks into place. This opens the anti-loss device of the central bolt. If the socket is inserted correctly, there is a gap of approx. 0.08 in. (2 mm) between the socket and the central bolt.

5. Insert the torque wrench with a 1" square connection into the socket.
6. With the help of a **second person**, brake the wheel firmly with the brake pedal to prevent it from turning. The turning forces cannot be held by the parking brake or the gearbox alone.  
Hold the steering wheel tightly when loosening the front wheels.

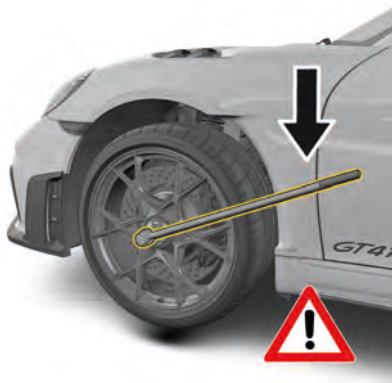


Fig. 208: Tightening the central bolt

7. Tighten central bolt to **442 ftlb (600 Nm)** (Fig. 208).

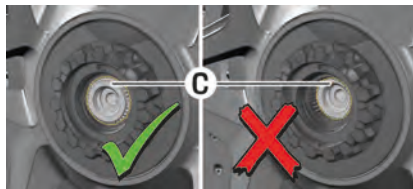


Fig. 209: Check the position of the safety bolt

8. Make sure that safety bolt **C** (Fig. 209) is at the front of the bevel of the tothing.
9. Lower the vehicle fully.
10. Slightly grease the rubber ring of the cap. This facilitates assembly and subsequent disassembly.



Fig. 210: Mount the cap

11. Position the cap in the central bolt so that the positioning tab faces the slot in the bolt. Then press the cap into position (Fig. 210).

**Do not drive without the cap.** Otherwise, water and dirt can penetrate and affect the function of the central bolt lock.

### **i** Information

Tightening the central bolt again after 31 miles (50km) is **not** required.

### **i** Information

If **wheel hub, brake disc, wheel bolts, wheel, or central bolt** have been replaced, the central bolt must be tightened twice (Fig. 211)

- Tighten the central bolt to **442 ftlb. (600 Nm)**.
- Loosen the central bolt again by a **1/4 turn**.
- Tighten the central bolt to **442 ftlb. (600 Nm)**.

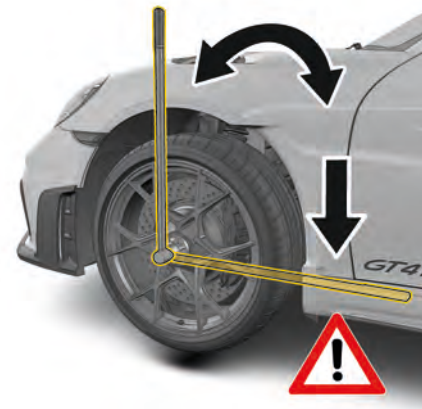


Fig. 211: Use of new parts

### **i** Information

- ▶ Update the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) settings.

## Performing emergency fastening of the central bolt

### ⚠ WARNING

Inadequately tightened central bolt

Driving with an inadequately tightened central bolt can lead to accidents.

- ▶ Avoid rapid acceleration and high cornering speeds.
- ▶ Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- ▶ Emergency fastening must never be used when driving on race circuits.

If **no** suitable torque wrench for the high tightening torque of 442 ftlb. (600 Nm) is available in a breakdown situation, perform emergency fastening of the central bolt.

- ▶ Changing wheels
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Changing wheels with central lock" on page 228.
- ▶ Ensure that the vehicle is not standing on the wheel to be secured during fitting.
- ✓ Long lever (approx. 39 in./1 m.) with 1" adapter.
- ✓ Torque wrench for 73.75 ftlb (100 Nm) with 1" adapter.

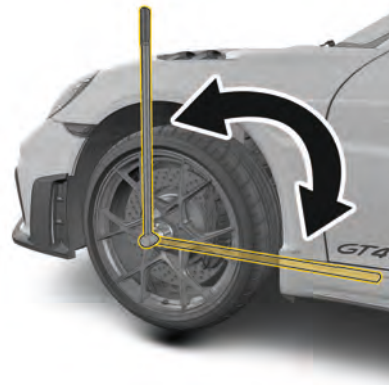


Fig. 212: Tighten the central bolt and loosen it again

1. Tighten the central bolt with great force using a long lever and loosen again by 1/4 turn (Fig. 212).

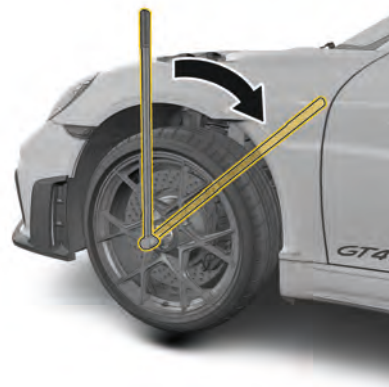


Fig. 213: Tightening the central bolt

2. Tighten central bolt to **73.75 ftlb (100 Nm)** using a torque wrench (Fig. 213).



Fig. 214: Markings on the central bolt

3. The central bolt has ■ and ■ (Fig. 214) markings.

Draw a guide line on the wheel opposite the ■ marking using a pen.

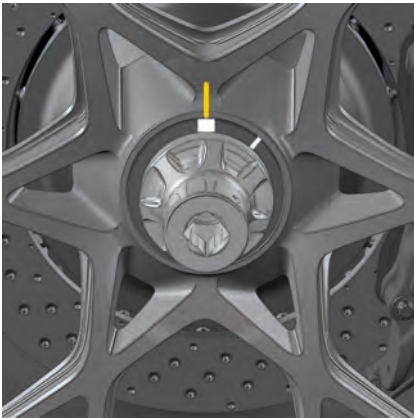


Fig. 215: Tightening the central bolt

## Using snow tires and snow chains

### Using snow tires

#### ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the permitted maximum speed

Exceeding the permitted maximum speed may cause tires to burst.

- ▶ Observe the maximum speed permitted for the tires.
  - ▶ Snow tires with a lower permitted maximum speed than the specified maximum speed of the vehicle may only be fitted if they bear the M+S designation or the snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Observe the applicable regulations in your country. All-season and all-terrain tires are also speed-restricted and bear this designation.
  - ▶ Affix the sticker with the maximum speed permitted in the driver's field of vision. Observe the applicable regulations in your country.
  - ▶ Set the maximum speed permitted as the speed limit.
- 
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Menu overview" on page 104.
  - ▶ Mount winter tires well before the onset of cold weather.
  - ▶ Use only tire makes tested and approved by Porsche.
  - ▶ Before mounting new tires, inquire about their current approval status: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.



### Information

At low temperatures, chattering noises caused by the tires can occur during maneuvering or accelerating out of curves on both dry and wet road surfaces.

The driving performance and comfort of summer tires are decreased at temperatures below 45 °F/7 °C. Porsche therefore recommends mounting snow tires on the vehicle at temperatures below 45 °F/7 °C.

Extremely low temperatures below 5 °F (–15 °C) can cause permanent damage to summer tires.

Snow tires are no longer suitable when their tread depth falls below 0.16 in. (4 mm).

### Using snow chains

Install snow chains only on the rear wheels and only with the tire/rim combinations designated for use with snow chains listed in the Technical Data.

▶ Refer to chapter "Wheels and Tires" on page 252.

- ▶ Only use snow chains approved by Porsche so that sufficient clearance between the wheel housing and chain is assured.

For information on approved snow chains:

▶ Refer to chapter "Wheels and Tires" on page 252.

- ▶ Remove ice and snow deposits in the wheel housing before fitting the chains.
- ▶ Observe the different national regulations regarding maximum speeds.

4. Continue tightening the central bolt with the long lever until the **STOP** marking on the cover is aligned with the guide line (Fig. 215). The bolt is now securely tightened.
5. Check the work steps for the safety bolt and carry out to mount the cap.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Prepare wheel assembly" on page 232.
  - ▶ Have an authorized Porsche dealer loosen the central bolt once again as soon as possible and then have it tightened to the specified torque of **442 ftlb. (600 Nm)** using a suitable torque wrench.
 


Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.

## Storing wheels

- ▶ Always store wheels in a cool, dry and dark place. Store tires without rims vertically.
- ▶ Do not store summer tires or vehicles with mounted summer tires at ambient temperatures under 5 °F (-15 °C).
- ▶ Avoid contact with gasoline, oil or grease.
- ▶ Do **not** use tires that are more than 6 years old. Chemical additives, which make the tire rubber elastic, lose their effectiveness over time and the rubber becomes brittle. The age of the tire can be seen from the "DOT" code number shown on the tire sidewall. If the last four digits read 3015, for example, then the tire was produced in the 30th week of 2015.

## Flat Tire

### Responding to Tire Pressure Monitoring System warning messages

If the symbol  lights up in the multifunction display with a warning message, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System has detected a serious loss of pressure. This loss of pressure can indicate tire damage.

- ▶ Stop in a suitable place and check the indicated tire for damage.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 121.

### Parking vehicle safely

1. Stop the vehicle as far away from the driving lane as possible. The vehicle must be parked on a firm, flat and skid-proof surface.
2. Turn on the emergency flasher.
3. Activate electric parking brake.
4. Move the selector lever to position **P**
5. Straighten the front wheels.
6. To lock the steering and prevent the engine from being started: Remove vehicle key. Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Remove operating device.
7. Have all passengers leave the vehicle. Pay attention to the traffic as they do so.
8. Set up the warning triangle at a suitable distance.
9. Secure vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g. with wedges under the wheels on the opposite side.

## Sealing defective tires



Risk of accident due to sealed tires

Damaged tires that are sealed with tire sealant can lose pressure or burst in the event of inappropriate speed or continuous load.

- ▶ Sealing the tire with tire sealant is only an emergency solution enabling you to drive to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▶ Use the tire sealant only in the case of cuts or punctures no larger than 0.16 in. (4 mm).
- ▶ Never use tire sealant if the rim is damaged or if you have driven with low tire pressure or deflated tires.
- ▶ Do not use tire sealant at outside temperatures below -4 °F (-20 °C).
- ▶ Avoid rapid acceleration and high cornering speeds.
- ▶ Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- ▶ Check the tire pressure after driving for around 10 minutes. If the tire pressure is less than 22 psi (1.5 bar), do not continue driving.
- ▶ Have sealed tires replaced by an authorized Porsche dealer as soon as possible. Tell the Porsche dealer that the tire contains tire sealant.
- ▶ Tire repairs are **not** allowed. Replace damaged tires.
- ▶ Observe the safety information and instructions for use in the separate operating instructions for the tire sealant and compressor.

In the event of a flat tire, tire puncture or damage can be sealed temporarily using the tire sealant set (Tire Mobility System—TMS). The following is required to properly seal a punctured tire:

- The **tire sealant kit (Tire Mobility System – TMS)** is located in the front luggage compartment and consists of:
  - Filler bottle
  - Filler hose
  - Valve turner
  - Replacement valve core
  - Stickers with the maximum speed permitted
  - Operating instructions
    - ▷ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.
- The **compressor** is located in the front trunk:
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.

## Adding tire sealant (Tire Mobility System – TMS)



**WARNING**

Flammable and harmful sealant

The sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Prolonged or repeated exposure can cause irritation, allergic reaction or organ damage.

- ▶ Fire, naked flames and smoking are prohibited when handling tire sealant.
- ▶ Keep tire sealant away from children.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin, eyes and clothing.
- ▶ If tire sealant gets on your skin or into your eyes, thoroughly rinse the affected part of your body immediately with plenty of water.
- ▶ If you feel unwell or have an allergic reaction, consult a doctor immediately.
- ▶ Change soiled clothing immediately.
- ▶ Do not inhale vapors.
- ▶ If tire sealant is swallowed, thoroughly rinse out your mouth immediately and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting. Consult a doctor immediately.



**WARNING**

Failure to detect pressure loss in the tire

A tire pressure sensor that is soiled with tire sealant cannot determine the tire pressure correctly.

- ▶ When the defective tire is changed, have the tire pressure sensor replaced as well.

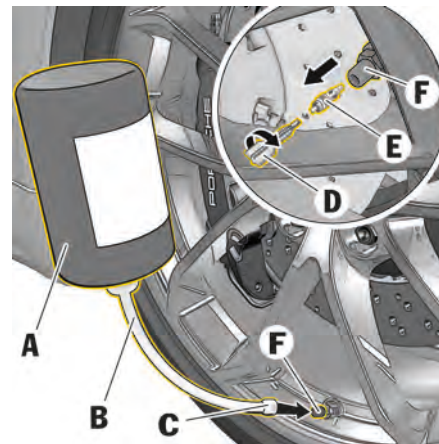


Fig. 216: Adding tire sealant (Tire Mobility System – TMS)

- A Filler bottle
- B Filler hose
- C Filler hose plug
- D Valve turner
- E Valve core
- F Tire valve

## Preparing to fill

1. Leave the object that caused the puncture in the tire.
2. Remove tire sealant and the enclosed sticker from the trunk. The tire sealant is located in the right-hand box in the trunk. The compressor is located under the cover in the trunk.
  - ▷ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tire sealant, tool box and equipment for roadside assistance" on page 189.
3. Affix the sticker in the driver's field of vision.

### Adding tire sealant (Tire Mobility System – TMS)

▷ Refer to the operating instructions for the tire sealant.

1. Shake filler bottle **A**.
2. Screw filler hose **B** onto filler bottle.
  - ➔ The filler bottle is now open.
3. Unscrew cap from tire valve **F**.
4. Remove core **E** from tire valve using valve turner **D**. If you do not have a replacement valve core, keep the valve core in a clean, dry place.
5. Remove plug **C** from filler hose **B**.
6. Push filler hose onto tire valve.
7. Hold filler bottle higher than the tire valve and squeeze it forcefully until bottle contents are completely emptied into tire.
8. Detach filler hose from tire valve.
9. If available, screw replacement valve core or retained valve core **E** firmly into tire valve using valve turner **D**.

### Inflating tire

▷ Follow operating instructions on compressor.

▷ Refer to chapter "Inflating tires" on page 224.

1. Connect compressor to a socket in the vehicle and inflate tire to at least 36 psi (2.5 bar). If this tire pressure cannot be reached, the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving with this tire.
2. Screw cap onto tire valve **F**.

### Checking pressure

- ▶ Check tire pressure after driving for approx. ten minutes.

If the tire pressure is less than 22 psi (1.5 bar), do not continue driving. If pressure of more than 22 psi (1.5 bar) is indicated, correct to the prescribed pressure.

▷ Refer to chapter "Wheels and Tires" on page 252.

### Changing tires

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Changing wheels" on page 227.

### Updating tire settings in the multifunction display after changing tire

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.

## Fuses

### General safety instructions

Depending on the model and equipment, fuse boxes are located at various locations in the vehicle.

Have all work on fuse boxes performed exclusively by an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer, as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.



**DANGER**

Electric shock

Replacing fuses or relays with the engine running or the ignition switched on could result in electric shock.

- ▶ Always switch off the engine and the ignition when working on the vehicle electrical system.



**WARNING**

Short circuit

Working on the vehicle's electrical system can cause a short circuit. Short circuits can cause fire.

- ▶ Always disconnect the negative terminal on the battery when working on the electrical system.

▷ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 194.



## ⚠ WARNING

Improper interventions and incorrect accessories

Improper interventions in the fuse box and the use of the incorrect accessories can result in damage and malfunctions in electrical and electronic systems.

- ▶ Do not attempt to replace any electrical components except the fuses listed here (e.g. relays).
- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an authorized Porsche dealer as they have trained technicians and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Only use accessories that have been approved by Porsche. For further information on approved accessories: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

## Opening fuse box

### Driver's side fuses



Fig. 217: Fuse carrier in driver's side footwell

### Row A

No.	Consumption
1	Bottom left: Air-conditioning fan (right-hand drive only)
2	Top left: PSM control unit
3	Bottom right: Seat adjustment and driver seat control unit
4	Top right: Secondary air pump

### Row B

No.	Consumption
1	Headlight adjustment Right and left hand drive Front lid light Front lid actuator Left high beam Left low lights Front right side marker light Rear left and front left turn signals
2	Exhaust flap control

No.	Consumption
	718 Cayman GT4 RS: High-profile rear spoiler brake light Rear luggage compartment light Rear lid actuator Right rear fog light Left brake light Left reversing light Left tail light Left daytime running lights
3	Alarm horn
4	Interior lighting Hall sensors 718 Spyder RS: Convertible top relay 718 Spyder RS: Convertible top latch switch 718 Spyder RS: Steering column lock LEDs for central locking Ambient lighting License plate light Left rear fog light High-level brake light Right brake light



No.	Consumption
	Right reversing light Right tail light Right daytime running lights
5	Fuel pump system relay and control unit
6	Filler flap locking Electric steering column lock Terminal 30 Washer pump front and rear
7	Free
8	Air conditioning system control unit
9	Free
10	Steering column Stopwatch

## Row C

No.	Consumption
1	Center console switch panel Gateway control unit Diagnostic socket Ignition lock Steering column lock Light switch Control unit ERA-GLO-NASS (left-hand drive only, Russia) 718 Cayman GT4 RS: Luggage compartment light Horn relay Starter relay
2	Footwell lighting Electric ignition key removal lock Front right and rear right turn signals LEDs on emergency flasher switch Electric ignition lock lighting Front right and front left side turn signals Right high beam Right low lights

No.	Consumption
	Front left side marker light
3	VTS control unit
4	Horn
5	Free
6	Power window control unit, left Left door control unit
7	Free
8	PSM control unit
9	Alarm sirens
10	Passenger compartment monitoring system sensor

## Row D

No.	Consumption
1	Free
2	Garage door opener
3	Left headlight
4	PDC control unit Gateway/diagnostic socket

No.	Consumption
	Air quality sensor Headlight control unit
5	PSM control unit
6	Steering column switch module Electric steering gear Refrigerant pressure sensor Radiator fan relay
7	Gear lever control unit
8	Right headlight
9	Interior mirror
10	Free

### Passenger side fuses

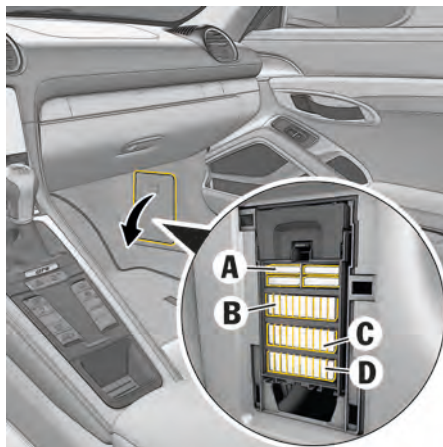


Fig. 218: Fuse carrier in passenger's side footwell

#### Row A

No.	Consumption
1	Bottom left: DC/DC converter PCM
2	Top left: Front axle lift system
3	Bottom right: Fresh-air blower motor and blower regulator (left-hand drive only)
4	Top right: Seat adjustment and passenger seat control unit

#### Row B

No.	Consumption
1	Rain sensor
2	Air conditioning system control unit - seat heating
3	PCM components: (rear view camera, antenna amplifier, control unit display, USB hub, coupling antenna, card reader)
4	Central CPU with external amplifier  Central CPU with internal amplifier
5	TPMS control unit Air conditioning system control unit
6	Sound system amplifier
7	Subwoofer amplifier Burmester®
8	Free
9	Instrument cluster
10	Free

## Row C

No.	Consumption
1	TSX808 diagnostic socket ERA-GLONASS (left-hand drive only, Russia, Belarus, Armenia and Kazakhstan)
2	Electric parking brake button
3	Overhead console
4	PDK control unit
5	Free
6	Front wiper motor
7	Power window control unit, right Right door control unit
8	Steering column adjustment
9	Free
10	Free

## Row D

No.	Consumption
1	Airbag control unit Occupant sensing control unit
2	PASM control unit
3	Free
4	Free
5	Free
6	Free
7	Loads active when starting DME, PDC, VTS, ERA-GLONASS control units (only left-hand drive, Russia, Belarus, Armenia and Kazakhstan) BCM rear Diagnostic socket ERA-GLONASS (left-hand drive only Russia, Belarus, Armenia and Kazakhstan)
8	Free
9	Center console electrical socket Cigarette lighter

No.	Consumption
10	Electrical socket in passenger footwell

## Refueling

### General safety instructions



Refueling Fires Phones

The RF energy from a cellphone can cause sparking on bare metal, much like aluminum foil in a microwave oven. The spark could ignite gasoline fumes present while refueling.

- ▶ Do not use a cellphone while pumping gas.



Refueling Fires Static Electricity

Static discharge from your body can ignite gasoline fumes present when you get back out of the vehicle and touch the fuel nozzle.

- ▶ Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping gas.



Fire hazard during refueling

Fuel is highly flammable, can combust or explode.

- ▶ Fire, open flame and smoking are prohibited when handling fuel.



Fuel vapors and skin contact with fuel

Fuel and fuel vapors are harmful to health.

- ▶ Do not inhale fuel vapors.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin and clothing.

#### NOTE

To prevent damage to the exhaust cleaning system and the engine:

- ▶ Never drive the tank dry.
- ▶ Avoid high curve speeds after the warning lights come on.

#### Information

In some cases, fuels contain a high percentage of sulfur. Under certain driving conditions, combustion in the engine can lead to unpleasant smells ("rotten egg smell"). Porsche is not responsible for this particularity and it does not indicate a defect in the vehicle.

The fuel level is displayed in the instrument cluster when the ignition is switched on.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Instrument Panel" on page 101.

If the residual quantity falls below a model-dependent level, the warning lamp lights up in the multifunction display of the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

- ▶ Refuel at the next opportunity.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Filling quantities" on page 252.

### Selecting suitable gasoline

#### NOTE

Unsuitable fuels may damage the engine as well as the fuel and exhaust system.

- ▶ Only use fuel according to the specification below.
- ▶ Do **not** use any fuels containing methanol.

#### Information

Normally, information on the fuel quality can be found at the pump. Gas station employees can also provide information.

#### NOTE

Unleaded fuels may not be available outside of the USA and Canada.

- ▶ Do not take your vehicle into areas or countries where unleaded fuel may not be available.

The engine is optimally designed for **unleaded metal-free fuels**.

Model	Recommended fuel	Alternative fuel
Octane rating of at least:		
All	RON 98/MOZ 88 (93 CLC or AKI)	95 RON/85 MON (90 CLC or AKI)

The engine is suitable for operation with fuel with up to 15 % ethanol. The use of fuels containing ethanol can increase fuel consumption.

E5

E10

### Information

If the recommended fuel is not available, the vehicle can also be fueled in an emergency with **unleaded metal-free fuel**, with octane levels of **91 RON/82.5 MON (86 CLC or AKI)**. However, this may reduce performance and increase fuel consumption.

- ▶ **Refuel with unleaded metal-free fuel, with octane levels** of at least **91 RON/82.5 MON**.
- ▶ Do **not** drive with full throttle with unleaded fuel with octane levels of 91 RON/82.5 MON (86 CLC or AKI).

## Using additives with lower fuel quality

### NOTE

Unapproved additives can damage the engine as well as the fuel and exhaust system.

- ▶ Only use additives that have been approved by Porsche.

Fuel deposit characteristics may not meet requirements in some countries. In this case, following consultation with an authorized Porsche Partner dealer, the fuel may be mixed with an additive sold and recommended by Porsche: Porsche part number 000 043 209 02.

- ▶ Observe the instructions and mixing ratios specified on the container.
- ▶ Observe maintenance intervals, particularly oil change intervals.

## Refueling

### NOTE

Contact with fuels may bleach decorative films.

- ▶ Immediately wipe fuel off decorative films.

- ✓ Engine switched off.
  - ✓ Ignition switched off.
  - ✓ Vehicle unlocked.
1. To open the filler flap, press on the rear part of the flap. The fuel type to be used for the vehicle is printed on a sticker on the inside of the filler flap.
  2. Slowly unscrew and remove the gas cap.
  3. Place the gas cap in the holder.
  4. Insert the pump nozzle fully into the filler neck with the handle pointing downward.
  5. Operate the nozzle and refuel the vehicle. Do not continue to fill the fuel tank after the automatic nozzle switches off. The fuel could splash back or overflow during heating.
    - ▶ Refer to chapter "Filling quantities" on page 252.
  6. Immediately after refueling, replace the gas cap and turn it until it engages audibly and noticeably.
  7. Close the filler flap and press on the rear part of the filler flap until it engages noticeably.

### Information

If the gas cap is lost, it must only be replaced by an original part.

## Filler flap emergency release

In the case of a fault with the electrical release, the filler flap can be opened manually:

1. Open the passenger's door.
2. Pull up the knob in the right-hand door cut-out.
  - ➔ The filler flap is unlocked.

## Fuel vapor restraint system

### Vent valve for fuel tank

The evaporation chamber and the carbon canister prevent fuel vapors from entering the atmosphere at very high outside temperatures if the vehicle is driven rapidly through bends or has been parked off-level.

### Fuel vapor restraint system and storage

During refueling, the vapors collect in the evaporation chamber. The vapors enter the carbon canister via a vent line. They are stored there for as long as the engine is not running.

### Flushing system

When the engine is running, the fuel vapors from the container are mixed with fresh air from the ambient air of the container. This mixture reaches the intake tract via the tank vent line, is mixed with intake air and burned during the normal combustion process.

## Jack and Lifting Platform

### Raising the vehicle

There are arrow markings on the side skirt by the jacking points.

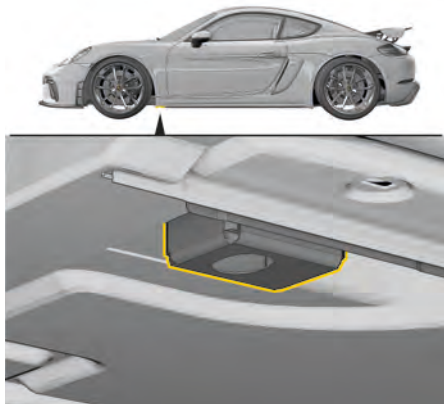


Fig. 219: Front jacking point for lifting platform or jack



Fig. 220: Rear jacking point for lifting platform or jack

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Vehicle inadequately secured

An unsecured or incorrectly secured vehicle can move unexpectedly or tip or fall off lifting equipment e. g. a jack or lifting platform. This can cause serious injuries and damage.

- ▶ Only raise the vehicle using a jack on a solid and flat surface.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when working under it.
- ▶ Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall.
- ▶ When working on a running engine, always apply the electric parking brake **and** move the gearshift lever into the neutral position or the selector lever to the **P** position.

▶ Refer to chapter "Changing wheels" on page 227.

## Washer Fluid

### Adding washer fluid



Fig. 221: Washer fluid reservoir for windshield and headlights

Note the following points:


- ▶ Depending on season, add appropriate additives (window cleaner concentrate, antifreeze) to the water. Note the correct mixing ratio as well as all warnings on the containers of the additives used.
  - **Summer:** Fill with water and window cleaner concentrate.
  - **Winter:** Fill with water, antifreeze and window cleaner concentrate.

Only use window cleaner concentrates that meet the following requirements:

- Dilutability 1:100.
- Phosphate-free.
- Suitable for plastic headlights.

For information on window cleaner concentrates approved by Porsche: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

### Responding to warning message

If the washer fluid level is low, the symbol  appears in the multifunction display.

- ▶ Add washer fluid at the next opportunity.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 121.

### Topping up washer fluid

#### NOTE

Risk of damage to the headlight.

- ▶ Do not lean on the headlight when topping up the washer fluid.

1. Open cap of washer fluid reservoir.
2. Top up washer fluid.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter “Filling quantities” on page 252.
3. Carefully close cap.



## Technical Data

### Technical Data

#### Vehicle identification data

The information contained in this manual may differ from the vehicle-specific data due to different equipment versions or for country-specific reasons. Unless stated separated, it applies to all body versions. For vehicle-specific data, please see the official vehicle documents, permits and the information plates (e.g. identification plate) on the vehicle. The information in the official vehicle documents and registration documents always has priority over the information in this manual.

#### Vehicle identification number



Fig. 222: Location of vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number is located behind the windshield at the bottom left and under the passenger seat.

- ▶ When ordering spare parts, always state the vehicle identification number.

#### Safety conformity stickers



Fig. 223: Placement position of safety conformity stickers

The safety conformity sticker gives you the certainty that your new Porsche meets all the automotive vehicle safety standards (Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards) that apply at the time the vehicle was manufactured. The sticker also provides information about the month and year of production, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforations), the permissible gross weight and the permissible axle loads (**Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** and the **Gross Axle Weight Rating**).

## Tire pressure plate



Fig. 224: Location of tire pressure plate

The tire pressure plate is located on the door sill of the driver's door.

## Vehicle data carrier

The vehicle data carrier can be found in the service booklet. It contains all the important data about your vehicle. This data carrier cannot be reordered if it is lost or damaged.

## Payload information

### Explanation of terms

The **rear axle load** is the vehicle weight on the rear axle plus the weight of the transported load. The **empty weight** – the actual weight of your vehicle – is the vehicle weight including standard and individual equipment, fluids and tool box. This weight does not include passengers or luggage. The **gross vehi-**

**cle weight** is the sum of the empty weight and the weight of the passengers and luggage. The **gross vehicle weight rating** is the maximum permitted weight of the vehicle including occupants, luggage and optional equipment. The **gross axle weight rating** is the upper load limit for the front or rear axle. This information can be found on a safety compliance sticker in the door opening on the driver's side. How to make sure you are compliant with tire load capacity and payload:

▷ p. 217 The load capacity coefficient (e.g. "106") is a minimum requirement.

The combined **gross vehicle weight rating** is the maximum permitted weight of the vehicle including passengers and luggage. The **permitted payload** (load limit) is the upper limit for the gross vehicle weight rating (occupants and luggage) of the vehicle. This is the maximum weight of occupants and luggage that the vehicle can be loaded with. This information can be found on the tire pressure plate. The **gross vehicle weight rating when loaded** is the sum total of empty weight, accessory weight, payload weight, and the weight of production options. The **load index** indicates the maximum load that a tire can nominally carry at a given tire pressure. The **maximum load index** indicates the load capacity of a tire at the maximum permitted tire pressure. The **payload capacity** is the permitted payload weight and equals the payload limit minus the weight of the occupants.

- ▶ Never exceed the permitted limits.

## **⚠ DANGER**

Riding in the luggage compartment

Injuries in an accident are much more likely if there are passengers in the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Occupants may only ride in the seats provided for this purpose.
- ▶ Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts.

## **⚠ DANGER**

Overloading the vehicle

Overloading leads to dangerous vehicle reactions and longer braking distances.

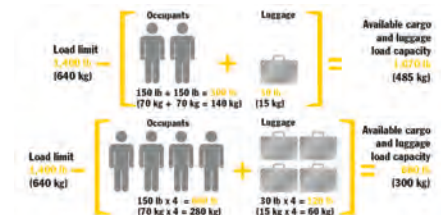
- ▶ Never exceed the specified axle loads.

## **NOTE**

Risk of vehicle damage if overloaded.

Overloading can reduce the life of the tires and the vehicle. Overload damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

- ▶ Never exceed the specified axle loads.



### How to determine the combined weight of occupants and luggage:

- Add up the weight of all occupants and then add the total weight of the luggage (illustration).

### Steps for determining the correct payload limit:

- Look for the information "The combined weight of occupants and luggage must never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the vehicle plate.
- Determine the total weight of the driver and occupants who will be traveling with you.
- Subtract the total weight of the driver and occupants from XXX lbs. or XXX kg
- The resulting value is the available capacity for the payload and luggage. For example, if "XXX" is 1400 lbs and there are four occupants weighing 150 lbs each, the payload and luggage capacity is calculated as follows:  $[1400 - 600 (4 \times 150) = 800 \text{ lbs.}]$ .
- Determine the combined weight of the payload and luggage for the vehicle. This weight must not exceed the payload and luggage capacity calculated in step 4.

## Engine data

	718 Cayman GT4 RS	718 Spyder RS
<b>No. of cylinders</b>	6	6
<b>Displacement</b>	3.996 cm <sup>3</sup>	3.996 cm <sup>3</sup>
<b>Max. engine power</b>	368 kW (500 hp)	368 kW (500 hp)
at rpm	8,400 rpm	8,400 rpm
<b>Max. torque</b>	332 lb-ft (450 Nm)	332 lb-ft (450 Nm)
at rpm	6,750 rpm	6,750 rpm
<b>Engine oil consumption</b>	Up to 1.36 quarts/1,000 miles (0.8 l/1,000 km)	Up to 1.36 quarts/1,000 miles (0.8 l/1,000 km)
<b>Maximum permitted engine speed</b>	9,000 rpm	9,000 rpm

## Dimensions

	718 Cayman GT4 RS	718 Spyder RS
<b>Length (depending on equipment)</b>	175 in. (4,456 mm)	178.5 in. (4,418 mm)
<b>Width</b>	71.7 in. (1,822 mm)	71.7 in. (1,822 mm)
Width with door mirrors	78.5 in. (1,994 mm)	78.5 in. (1,994 mm)
<b>Height at empty weight as per DIN</b>	49.9 in. (1,267 mm)	49.3 in. (1,252 mm)
<b>Ground clearance at empty weight as per DIN</b> depending on equipment	3.1 in. – 3.9 in.	3.1 in. – 3.9 in.

## Filling quantities

- ▶ Use only fluids and fuels approved by Porsche. For more information: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

<b>Fuel</b>	Approx. 68 quarts (64 liters), with a reserve of approx. 8 quarts (8 liters)
<b>Windshield/headlight cleaning fluid</b>	approx. 2.6 quarts (2.5 liters)
<b>Refrigerant R1234yf</b>	1.85 lb. (835 g) (only use refrigerant R1234yf for vehicles with an air conditioning system)
<b>Compressor oil of air conditioning SP-A2</b>	51 in. (130 cm) <sup>3</sup> (only use refrigerant R1234yf for vehicles with an air conditioning system)

## Weights

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight or maximum axle loads. The attachment of additional accessories reduces the maximum permitted load capacity.

	<b>718 Cayman GT4 RS</b>	<b>718 Spyder RS</b>
<b>Load</b>	The combined weight of occupants and luggage must never exceed the weight specified on the tire pressure plate.	
<b>Maximum axle load, front</b>	1,720 lbs. (780 kg)	1,698 lbs. (770 kg)
<b>Maximum axle load, rear</b>	2,220 lbs. (1,000 kg)	2,183 lbs. (990 kg)
<b>Maximum gross weight</b>	3,904 lbs. (1,771 kg)	3,869 lbs. (1,755 kg)

## Wheels and Tires

### Wheel and Tire Sizes

Tires approved by Porsche are the best tires for your vehicle. The load capacity code number (e.g. "94") and speed code letter for permitted maximum speed (e.g. "Y") are minimum requirements. When fitting new or different tires:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Tires and Wheels" on page 217.
- ▶ Only fit snow chains to the correctly marked wheel and tire sizes and only on the rear wheels.

Observe the applicable national regulations regarding maximum speeds when snow chains are fitted. Only use fine-link edge snow chains approved by Porsche.

- ▶ Before fitting different wheels and tires, check the EU declaration of conformity to see if the desired wheel/tire combination is permitted for your vehicle. For more information: Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

Tire type	Tire size	Wheel size	Fitting snow chains
<b>718 Cayman GT4 RS, 718 Spyder RS</b>			
<b>Summer tires</b>	FA: 245/35 ZR 20 (95Y) XL	FA: 8,5J x 20, RO 61	No
	RA: 295/30 ZR 20 (101Y) XL	RA: 11J x 20, RO 50	
<b>Snow tires</b>	FA: 235/35 R 20 92V M+S	FA: 8J x 20, RO 57	Yes
	RA: 275/30 R 20 97V M+S	RA: 10J x 20, RO 45	
	FA: 245/35 R 20 91V M+S	FA: 8,5J x 20, RO 61	No
	RA: 295/30 R 20 97V M+S	RA: 11J x 20, RO 50	
	FA: 245/35 R 20 91V M+S	FA: 8,5J x 20, RO 61	No
	RA: 295/30 R 20 101V M+S	RA: 11J x 20, RO 50	

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle, RO = rim offset

### Tire pressure

These tire pressures apply only to the tire makes and types approved by Porsche for cold tires (68 °F/20 °C).

- Select Set tire type on the multifunction display and adjust the tire pressure.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Tire Pressure and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" on page 218.
  - ▶ Refer to chapter "Tires and Wheels" on page 217.

Standard tire pressure

	718 Cayman GT4 RS, 718 Spyder RS	
Tires	FA	RA
<b>Summer tires</b>	2.0 bar	2.3 bar
245/35 ZR 20 / 295/30 ZR 20	200 kPa	230 kPa
	29 psi	33 psi
<b>Snow tires</b>	2.5 bar	2.5 bar
235/35 R 20 / 275/30 R 20	250 kPa	250 kPa
	36 psi	36 psi
<b>Snow tires</b>	2.5 bar	2.5 bar
245/35 R 20 / 295/30 R 20	250 kPa	250 kPa
	36 psi	36 psi

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle



## Chassis settings

### Public road traffic and race circuit operation

The anti-roll bars can be adjusted individually on the front and rear axles. The standard setting is also recommended for racetrack operation. On public roads, the suspension must be in the standard setting.

718 Cayman GT4 RS: Special notices on suspension settings can be found in a separate brochure:

- ▶ Refer to the separate brochure "Driving on the Race Track".

	718 Cayman GT4 RS	718 Spyder RS
<b>Total front-axle toe</b>		+2' ±2'
<b>Rear-axle toe per wheel</b>		+10' ±2'
<b>Front-axle camber</b>		-1°30' ±3'
<b>Rear-axle camber</b>		-1°45' ±5'

Chassis setting can only be adjusted by a professional.

- ▶ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer. Porsche recommends an Porschepartner because he has qualified technicians and the required parts and tools.

Engine diagram at full load (EU6)

✓ 718 Cayman GT4 RS, 718 Spyder RS

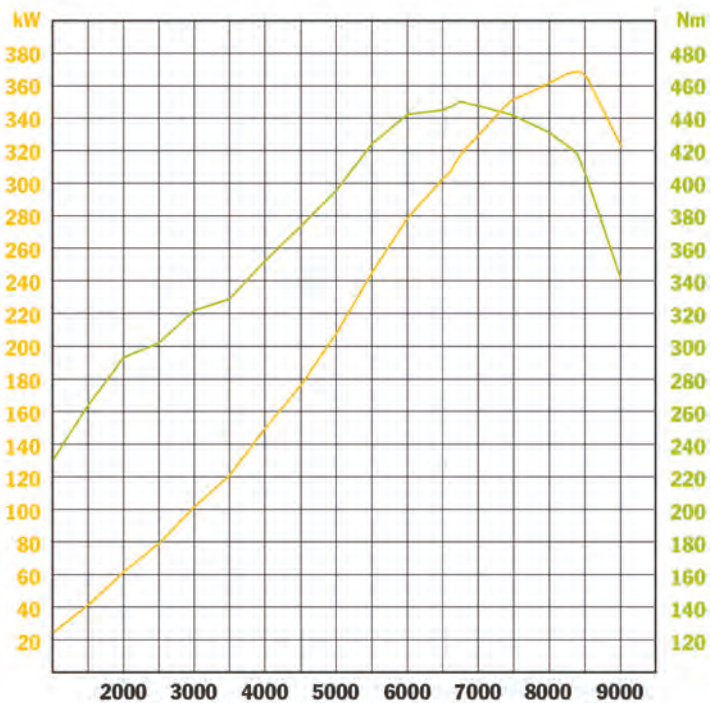


Fig. 225: Engine diagram at full load

## Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

### Technical data: Audio and video files

<b>Supported media</b>	<b>SD cards</b> up to 128 GB <b>Portable playback devices</b> MTP players, USB 2.0 devices from "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6", for example USB sticks, USB MP3 players without special driver software, external USB flash drives, and hard drives
<b>File system</b>	<b>SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC</b> memory cards <b>USB storage devices</b> exFAT, FAT or FAT32, NTFS file system with maximum 4 partitions
<b>Format</b>	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3; Windows Media Audio 9 and 10; MPEG-2/-4; FLAC, MPEG-1/-2; ISO-MPEG4; DivX 3, 4 and 5; Xvid; ISO-MPEG4 H.264 (MPEG4 AVC); Windows Media Video 9
<b>File extension</b>	.mp3; .wma; .asf; .m4a; .m4b; .aac; .flac; .mpg; .mpeg; .avi; .mp4; .m4v; .mov; .wmv
<b>Playback lists</b>	.M3U, .PLS, .WPL, .M3U8, .ASX
<b>Properties</b>	Max. 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequency; max. 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at max. 25 fps
<b>Number of files</b>	<b>Jukebox</b> (max. 10 GB storage space) max. 3,000 files can be copied <b>USB mass storage device</b> max. 10,000 files per medium, max. 1,000 files per directory/playlist
<b>Meta data</b>	Album covers up to 800x800 pixels, GIF, JPG and PNG formats or via Gracenote® <sup>1</sup> database

### Technical data: Connectivity

<b>Cell networks</b>	GSM/GPRS/EDGE: Dual Band, 850/900/1,800/1,900 MHz UMTS/HSPA+: Triple-Band, 850 MHz (Band V)/AWS (Band IV)/1,900 MHz (Band II) LTE: Quad-Band, 700 MHz (Band 17)/850 MHz (Band 5) /AWS (Band 4)/1,900 MHz (Band 2)
<b>WiFi</b>	IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (2.4 GHz)
<b>Bluetooth®</b>	Bluetooth® 2.1, IEEE 802.15.1, Class 2, range approx. 32 ft (10 m)

1. Gracenote is a trademark or registered trademark of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

**Technical data: Connectivity**

**SIM card** Mini SIM, dimensions: 1 x 0.6 in. (25 x 15 mm)

**Technical data: Radio**

**Frequency ranges/standards** VHF (FM): 87.75–107.9 MHz (set manually in 200-kHz increments, 1st level 150 kHz)  
AM: 530–1,710 kHz (set manually in 10 kHz increments)

**Tuning stops during automatic station search** VHF (FM): 200 kHz  
MW (AM): 10 kHz

**Inspection marks and declarations of conformity**

**Radio Frequency Devices and Radio Communication Equipment  
United States of America**

This vehicle includes Radio Frequency Devices that are certified under the following IDs:

FCC ID: KR5315-140930 (BCM Basic)

FCC ID: KR5315-180528 (Key Kessy)

FCC ID: KR55WK50138 (Key Basic)

FCC ID: NF3-LRR3SCU (LRR3)

FCC ID:NF3-MRR1REAR (MRR1Rear)

FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR2 (LTE Compensor)

FCC ID: T8GA270 (MIB2)

Radio Frequency Devices and Radio Communication Equipment comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. These devices may not cause harmful interference, and
2. These devices must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to the equipment not expressly approved by Porsche may void the FCC authorization to operate the equipment. Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information: The radiated output power of the devices is far below the FCC radio frequency exposure limits. Nevertheless, the devices shall be used in such a manner that the potential for human contact during normal operation is minimized. Any antenna used with these devices must be located at least 8 inches (20,3 cm) from all persons.

**NOTE:** The equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. The equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause

harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

**Canada**

This vehicle includes following Radio Frequency Devices/ Ce véhicule comprend les appareils à radiofréquence suivants:

IC: 3887A-MRR1REAR (MRR1 Rear)

IC: 3887A-LRR3SCU (LRR3)

IC: 4774A-MBCNAR2 (LTE-Compensor)

IC: 7812D-5WK50138 (Key Basic)

IC: 7812D-315140930 (BCM Basis 315)

IC: 7812D-315180528 (Key Kessy)

Radio Frequency Devices and Radio Communication Equipment comply with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. ISED Canada's licence-exempt RSSs and These devices contain licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) These devices may not cause interference; and
- (2) These devices must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

These Class B digital apparatus comply with Canadian ICES-003.

Ces appareils sont conformes à la norme RSS-210 de l'Industrie Canadienne. Les émetteurs/récepteurs exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil sont conformes aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence.

Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) Ces appareils ne doivent pas causer d'interférences nuisibles et
- (2) Ces appareils doivent accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris les interférences pouvant entraîner un fonctionnement.

Ces appareils numérique de la classe B sont conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

## Recycling

### Airbag and seat-belt pretensioner units

Non-ignited gas generators, or whole vehicles or assemblies with airbag and seat-belt pretensioner units, must not be disposed of as "normal" scrap or waste or put into any other form of end storage.

For further information on proper disposal:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

### Old batteries

Old batteries must not be disposed of as "normal" scrap or waste or put into any other form of end storage.

- ▶ Local disposal regulations must be observed. Bring old household batteries to battery collection points.

For further information on proper disposal:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Porsche dealer.

## Radio equipment in accordance with 2014/53/EU

### Declaration of Conformity

Your vehicle features a variety of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that it complies with the specifications for its use in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the relevant EU Declaration of Conformity is available at the following Internet address:

<https://www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehiclinformation/documents/>



## Radio equipment, frequency band, maximum transmission power

Unless otherwise indicated, the specifications apply to all models or vehicles equipped with the relevant radio equipment <sup>1</sup>. Deviations are marked by footnotes.

### Opening and closing

Vehicle key	
<b>PAG-KEY-434-180528</b>	
125.00 kHz	Reception only
434,42 MHz	-20 dBm
Central control unit	
<b>PAG-BCU-434-180528</b>	
125.00 kHz	< 40 dBμA/m @ 10 m
434,42 MHz	Reception only

1. In some countries, the installation or authorization to use the radio technology may be limited, not allowed or only possible with additional requirements.

Garage Door Opener (HomeLink®)	
Universal Garage Door Opener HomeLink® EHL2	
26.957–27.293 MHz	-7.4 dBm
40,660–40,700 MHz	-9 dBm
433.05–434.79 MHz	-6.1 dBm
868.00–868.60 MHz	-5.6 dBm
868.70–869.20 MHz	-5.6 dBm

**Safety**

Tire Pressure Monitoring System 3rd gen. control unit	
TPMS ECU E5.5 (G5 compact H06) 433 MHz TSSSG4G5b	
433.85–433.99 MHz	27–40 dBV/m <sup>1</sup>

Tire Pressure Monitoring System 3rd gen. wheel electronics	
TPMS sensor S5.05 433 MHz TSSRE4Uf	
433.85–433.99 MHz	16 mW

Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PVTS Plus) - telematics control unit	
telematics Control Unit 2150	
GSM 900 (880–915 MHz)	1,995 mW
GSM 1800 (1,710–1,785 MHz)	1,995 mW
WCDMA B1 1,920–1,980 MHz	251 mW
WCDMA B5 824–849 MHz	251 mW
WCDMA B8 880–915 MHz	251 mW
LTE-FDD B1 1,920–1,980 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B3 1,710–1,785 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B5 824–849 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B7 2,500–2,570 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B8 880–915 MHz	199 mW

Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PVTS Plus) - telematics control unit	
telematics Control Unit 2150	
LTE-FDD B20 832–862 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B28 703–748 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B38 2,570–2,620 MHz	199 mW
LTE-FDD B40 2,300–2,400 MHz	199 mW
GPS 1,575.42 MHz ± 1.023 (Rx)	
Galileo 1,575.42 MHz ± 2.046 (Rx)	
Porsche Vehicle Tracking System - Driver Card	
Driver Card Remote for Tracking System 2781	
433.85–433.99 MHz	0.001 mW

1. Only receivers

**Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Remote Keypad**

**Short range transmitter for tracking unit  
8005/8015**

433.92 MHz                      0.06 mW

**Interior monitoring sensor**

**Intrusion Detector for automotive application  
5480**

5,725–5,875 MHz              –40 dBm

**Entertainment and infotainment**

**Porsche Communication Management (PCM)**

**MIB2 Main-Unit P010/P074/P100**

WiFi                                      < 10.00 mW  
(2,400–2,484 MHz)

Bluetooth®                              < 10.00 mW  
(2,400–2,484 MHz)

GSM 850 transmitter              3,162.28 mW  
(824–849 MHz)

GSM 900 transmitter              3,162.28 mW  
(880–915 MHz)

GSM 1800 transmitter              1,584.89 mW  
(1,710–1,785 MHz)

GSM 1900 transmitter              1,584.89 mW

**Porsche Communication Management (PCM)**

**MIB2 Main-Unit P010/P074/P100**

(1,850–1,910 MHz)

WCDMA I transmitter              501.19 mW  
(1,920–1,980 MHz)

WCDMA III transmitter              501.19 mW  
(1,710–1,785 MHz)

WCDMA VIII transmitter              501.19 mW  
(880–950 MHz)

LTE FDD1 transmitter              316.23 mW  
(1,920–1,980 MHz)

LTE FDD3 transmitter              316.23 mW  
(1,710–1,785 MHz)

LTE FDD7 transmitter              316.23 mW  
(2,500–2,570 MHz)

LTE FDD8 transmitter              316.23 mW  
(880–915 MHz)

LTE FDD20 transmitter              316.23 mW  
(832–862 MHz)

**Smartphone tray**

**LTE-MBC-EU2 Multi-band compensator**

GSM 900 transmitter              2000.00 mW  
(880–915 MHz)

GSM 1800 transmitter              1000.00 mW  
(1,710–1,785 MHz)

WCDMA I transmitter              125.00 mW  
(1,920–1,980 MHz)

WCDMA III transmitter              125.00 mW  
(1,710–1,785 MHz)

WCDMA VIII transmitter              125.00 mW  
(880–915 MHz)

LTE FDD1 transmitter              200.00 mW  
(1,920–1,980 MHz)

LTE FDD3 transmitter              200.00 mW  
(1,710–1,785 MHz)

LTE FDD7 transmitter              200.00 mW  
(2,500–2,570 MHz)

LTE FDD8 transmitter              200.00 mW  
(880–915 MHz)

LTE FDD20 transmitter              200.00 mW  
(832–862 MHz)



**Antennas without transmission capacity**

- AG27P
- AG15B
- 920406A

**Other**

Porsche car camera <sup>1</sup>	
UTR 2.0	
WiFi (2,400–2,484 MHz)	31.6 mW
WiFi (5,735–5,815 MHz)	31.6 mW
Radar (5,735–5,835 MHz)	19.95 mW
Porsche car camera, rear	
UTR 2.0 Rear	
WiFi (2,400- 2,484 MHz)	31.6 mW
WiFi (5,735- 5,815 MHz)	31.6 mW
Radar (24.2 GHz)	19.95 mW

**Radio equipment outside the EU  
Inspection marks and declarations of conformity**

**Declaration of Conformity**

Your vehicle features a variety of radio equipment. The full text of the relevant EU Declaration of Conformity is available at the following Internet address: <https://www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehiculeinformation/documents/>



**Albania, Bahrain, Bosnia and Herzegovina, French Guyana, Georgia, Gibraltar, Guadeloupe, Iceland, Israel, Ivory Coast, Kuwait, Macedonia, Martinique, Moldova, Monaco, Montenegro, New Caledonia, Norway, Reunion, Sri Lanka, St. Lucia, Switzerland, Trinidad &Tobago, Turkey**

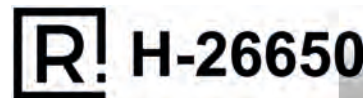
**Algeria**

Agréé par l'ANF: N° 1247/TR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2017 (LTE Compensor)  
 Agréé par l'ANF: N°26/H/ANF/2021 (Key Basic 434)  
 Homologué par l'ARPCE: N° 1285/IR//HMG/PC/ARPCE/2018 (MIB2)  
 Homologué par l'ANF: N° CC 404/HANF/2022 (Intrusion sensor)

**Argentina**



- CNC ID: H-24905 (Key-Basic)
- CNC ID: H-26088 (Key-Kessy)
- CNC ID: H-21517 (BCM 434)
- CNC ID: C-26724 (MIB2)
- CNC ID: H-24892 (LTE Compensor)
- CNC ID: H-24102 (TPMS)



**Australia**



**Belarus**



**Brazil**



"Incorporates a product type-approved by Anatel under number:  
 01687-18-02149 (Key)

1. Currently available as retrofit kit. Available as original equipment with rear car camera from model year 2022 or 2023.

00278-15-07978 (MIB2)  
 02483-14-06324 (Homelink)  
 01370-15-02149 (BCM Basis)  
 09776-22-14914 (Intrusion sensor)

Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL [www.anatel.gov.br](http://www.anatel.gov.br)

## Brunei



DTA-005816 (Homelink)  
 DTA-005086 (Key Basic 434)  
 DTA-024351 (Key Kessy 433)  
 DTA-024350 (BCM Basic 433)  
 DTA-024352 (Key Kessy 434)  
 DTA-022364 (BCM Basic 434)  
 DTA-007035 (MIB2)

## Canada

This vehicle includes following Radio Frequency Devices/ Ce véhicule comprend les appareils à radiofréquence suivants:

IC: 4774A–MBCNAR2 (LTE-Compensor)  
 IC: 7812D–5WK50138 (Key Basic)  
 IC: 7812D–315140930 (BCM Basis 315)  
 IC: 7812D–315180528 (Key Kessy)  
 IC: 4774A–19300 (5W WLC)  
 IC: 643A–A270 (MIB2)  
 IC: 23807–5480 (Intrusion Sensor)

Radio Frequency Devices and Radio Communication Equipment comply with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

ISED Canada's licence-exempt RSSs and these devices contain licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) These devices may not cause interference; and
- (2) These devices must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

These Class B digital apparatus comply with Canadian ICES-003.

Ces appareils sont conformes à la norme RSS-210 de l'Industrie Canadienne. Les émetteurs/récepteurs exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil

sont conformes aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence.

Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) Ces appareils ne doivent pas causer d'interférences nuisibles et
- (2) Ces appareils doivent accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris les interférences pouvant entraîner un fonctionnement.

Ces appareils numérique de la classe B sont conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

## Costa Rica

SUTEL 05140-2020 (Key Basic 434)  
 SUTEL 02197-2018 (Key Kessy 433)  
 SUTEL 02206-2018 (Key Kessy 434)  
 SUTEL 01398-2018 (BCM Basic 433)  
 SUTEL 00002-2017 (BCM Basic 434)  
 SUTEL 06864-2014 (MIB2)

## Customs Union (including Armenia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Russia)



Модель: LTE-MBC-EU2

Изготовитель: CVS Dabendorf GmbH

Сделано в Германии

Электропитание: 12 V 400 mA

### Ecuador

ARCOTEL-NRH-2020-000705 (PAG-RKE-434, Continental)  
 ARCOTEL-NRH-2022-001161 (PPE-1B-433, Continental)  
 ARCOTEL-NRH-2020-000722 (Homelink EHL2, Gentex)

### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E0-13B (BCM Basic 434)  
 NCA APPROVED: 7T6-5H-7DF-163 (MIB2)  
 NCA APPROVED: BRE-1M-GE2-X53 (Key kessy)  
 NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X68 (Key Basic)  
 NCA APPROVED: BR3-1M-E2-X23 (BCM Basic 433)  
 NCA APPROVED: BRE-1M-GE2-X53 (Key Kessy 433)

### Great Britain



Your vehicle features a variety of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that it complies with the specifications for its use pursuant to The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the relevant Declaration of Conformity is available at the following website:

<https://www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehicleinformation/documents/>

The following acts as importer of the radio equipment devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017: Porsche Cars Great Britain Ltd.  
 Bath Road, Calcot, Reading, Berkshire, RG31 7SE  
 United Kingdom

The importer's address and the UKCA mark apply to all products subject to UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) requirements.

### Hong Kong

HKCA 1035: Automotive radar: radio equipment exempted from licensing.



### India

NER-ETA/668 (Key Basic)  
 ETA-22022/128/2013-RLO(NR) (MIB2)  
 NER-ETA/672 (BCM Basic 434)  
 NR-ETA/9100-RLO(NR) (Key Kessy)

### Indonesia



Dilarang melakukan perubahan spesifikasi yang dapat menimbulkan gangguan fisik dan/atau elektromagnetik terhadap lingkungan sekitar



73337/SDPPI/2021  
2692



70530/SDPPI/2020  
2692



66074/SDPPI/2020  
4334

(TSSRE4Uf)



63118/SDPPI/2019  
2992



77384/SDPPI/2021  
4334

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא  
55-12036 אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של  
המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Model Name: TSSSG4G5b

Manufacturer: Huf Electronics Bretten



91315/SDPPI/2023  
2692

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא  
55-09683 אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של  
המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Model Name: TSSRE4Uf

Manufacturer: Huf Electronics Bretten



91318/SDPPI/2023  
2692

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא  
51-62760 אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של  
המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Model Name: BCM High

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive Technologies  
GmbH



88543/SDPPI/2023  
9120003271158

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא  
51-94518 אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של  
המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Model Name: Key Kessy / PAG-Key 434

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive Technologies  
GmbH



92911/SDPPI/2023  
2692

## Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא  
51-76046 אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של  
המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר  
Model Name: MIB2

Manufacturer: Harman Becker Automotive Systemes  
GmbH

## Jamaica

These products have been Type Approved by Ja-  
maica:

SMA – PAG-KEY- 434-180528

SMA – PAG-BCU-433-180528

SMA – PAG-BCU-434-180528

SMA – PAG-RKE-434-190401 (Key Basic)

SMA – MIB2 Main Unit (MIB2)

## Japan



202-LSC006



201-180199



201-Y09215024



202-YK08560751

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא  
51-60534 אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של  
המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Model Name: Key Basic / RKE-Key 434

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive Technologies  
GmbH

Japanese Radio Law Compliance. This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law. This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

本製品は、電波法に基づく特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明などを受けております。認証番号:

本製品の改造は禁止されています。(適合証明番号などが無効となります)。

## Jordan

T/4/11/11/8910 (TSSSG4G5b)

TRC/34/7730/2020 (BCM 434)

TRC/LPD/2014/186 (MIB2)

T/4/11/11/2883 (Key Kessy/PAG-Key 434)

T/4/11/11/9184 (TSSRE4Uf)

## Malaysia



CIDF20098171

CIDF20102089

HIDF17000085 (TSSRE4Uf)

HIDF15000591 (Intrusion sensor)

## Mexico

IFETEL: RTIAUMI14-1863 (MIB2)

IFETEL: RLVCO5W09-0492 (Key Basic)

IFETEL: RLVCOA18-0313 (Key Kessy)

IFETEL: RTIMOLT20-1047 (LTE Compensor)

IFETEL: RLVCOA17-0864 (BCM Basic)

IFETEL: RLVBHTS19-1995 (TSSRE4Uf)

IFETEL: RLVV05422-3887 (Intrusion sensor)

Para su uso en México, la operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

- Es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- Este equipo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

## Moldova

Acest vehicul este echipat cu o varietate de echipament radio.

Urmatorul este importatorul de echipament radio pentru piata din Republica Moldova cu privinta reglementarii echipamentului radio:

GT Sport Auto Ltd.

General Importer of Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG in Moldova

Calea lesilor str. 28/1

MD-2069, Chişinău

## Mongolia



APPROVED  
IN MONGOLIA  
ID: A20000124



APPROVED  
IN MONGOLIA  
ID: A19000569

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 24001 ANRT 2020

Date d'agrément: 13/05/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 15102 ANRT 2017

Date d'agrément: 03/11/2017

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 25086 ANRT 2020

Date d'agrément: 31/07/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 15960 ANRT 2018

Date d'agrément: 05/03/2018

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 19520 ANRT 2019

Date d'agrément: 23/04/2019

**Nigeria**

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

OMAN - TRA
D090258
TRA/TA-R/6348/18

**Oman**

OMAN - TRA
D090258
TRA/TA-R/0662/12

OMAN - TRA
D090258
TRA/TA-R/0629/12

OMAN - TRA
D090258
TRA/TA-R/1037/09

OMAN - TRA
D90024
TRA/TA-R/8056/19

OMAN - TRA
D172249
TRA/TA-R/10614/20

OMAN - TRA
D080134
TRA/TA-R/2106/14

OMAN - TRA
D100428
TRA/TA-R/5420/18

OMAN - TRA
D100428
TRA/TA-R/5422/18

OMAN - TRA
D100428
TRA/TA-R/12881/21

**Pakistan**



**Paraguay**



- NR: 2023-01-I-0003 (BCM 434)
- NR: 2023-04-I-0269 (BCM 433)
- NR: 2023-04-I-0258 (Key-Kessy 433)
- NR: 2023-04-I-0259 (Key-Kessy 434)
- NR: 2020-07-I-000512 (Key-Basic)
- NR: 2021-06-I-0309 (MIB2)
- NR: 2020-09-I-0664 (Homelink)



Philippines



Approval Ref.: CRA/SA/2018/R-6937 (Key Kessy 434)

Approval Ref.: ICTQATAR/RT/2012/R-2944 (BCM 434)

Approval Ref.: CRA/SA/2015/R-4714

Approval Ref.: CRA/SM/2023/S-0012872 (Intrusion sensor)

Serbia



Qatar

Approval Ref.: CRA/SM/2020/S-0006251 (MIB2)

Approval Ref.: CRA/SM/2019/R-7682 (Homelink)





И 005 21



И 005 22



И 011 09



И 038 20

Singapore

Complies with  
IMDA Standards  
DB107205

Complies with  
IMDA Standards  
DA105282

Complies with  
IMDA Standards  
DB107205

South Africa

ICASA TA-2015/158  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2005/614  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2012/399  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2018/217  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2018/218  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2014/1837  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2019/1853  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2020/6392  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2019/5116  
APPROVED

ICASA TA-2021/3105  
APPROVED

South Korea

Key Kessy (433) 인증정보 적합성평가를 받은자의 상호: Continental Automotive GmbH 가치 제의 명칭(모델명): 특정 번호로 부여하기 인증번호: R-CRM-TAL-PAG-433-1M0528 제조지/제조국가: Continental Automotive GmbH/독일	
---	--

BCM Basic (433) 인증정보 적합성평가를 받은자의 상호: Continental Automotive GmbH 가치 제의 명칭(모델명): 특정 번호로 부여하기 인증번호: MSP-RRM-TAL-433-1A09 제조지/제조국가: Continental Automotive GmbH/독일	
---	--

**Wireless Charger 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Moxie CVS Dabendorf GmbH

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
WDH-194

인증번호:  
MSP-REM-NDS-ROD

제조사/제조국가:  
Moxie CVS Dabendorf GmbH/독일



**Car Audio (RC) 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Alpine Electronics, INC

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
Car-Audio (RC)

인증번호:  
MSP-REM-NDS-ROD

제조사/제조국가:  
Alpine Electronics, INC / 벨기에



**Key Basic (433) 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Continental Automotive GmbH

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
내이티브전송용 무선기기

인증번호:  
TAU-SWR50137

제조사/제조국가:  
Continental Automotive GmbH/독일



**MMXF online 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Alpine Electronics, INC

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
MMXF online, LTE 이동통신용 무선장치용 기차기

인증번호:  
MSP-CRM-NDS-MMNF-online

제조사/제조국가:  
Alpine Electronics, INC / 벨기에



**TPMS (TSSRE4UF) 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Huf Basling Electronics Bietzen GmbH

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
특정소출력 무선기기

인증번호:  
H-C-HEB-TSSRE4UF

제조사/제조국가:  
Huf Basling Electronics Bietzen GmbH/독일




**TPMS (TSSG4GSb) 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Huf Basling Electronics Bietzen GmbH

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
TPMS (C) 5.6 423MHz

인증번호:  
H-C-HEB-TSSG4GSb

제조사/제조국가:  
Huf Basling Electronics Bietzen GmbH/독일




**LTE Compensor 인증정보**

적합성 평가를 받은자의 상호:  
Moxie CVS Dabendorf GmbH

기차체의 명칭(모델명):  
LTE-MBC-CN

인증번호:  
MSP-CMMA-NTV-LTE-MBC-CN


제조사/제조국가:  
Moxie CVS Dabendorf GmbH/독일




이 기기는 업무용 환경에서 사용 목적으로 적합성 평가를 받은 기기로서 가정용 환경에서 사용하는 경우 전파간섭의 우려가 있습니다.

(English Translation: This equipment has been tested for compliance with the intended use in a commercial environment. If the equipment is used in a domestic environment, it may cause radio interference.)


Taiwan




CCAE09LP0150T1




CCAE18LP0570T8



CCAE15LP0170T7



CCAE18LP0610T7



CCAL22LP0720T6

根據 LP0002 低功率射頻器材技術規範\_章節 3.8.2: 取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材, 非經核准, 公司、商號或使用 者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信; 經發現有干擾現象時, 應立即停用, 並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信, 指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand



Importer No.: 6550000

Dealer No.: 6550001 (Bangkok)

Dealer No.: 6550002 (Pattanakarn)

- 1) เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์ที่มีความ สอดคล้อง-ตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดของ กสทช.
- 2) เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่ไม่มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการ ใช้เครื่อง วิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการ โทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

## Turkey

### TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çepitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açışından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı\*:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş. Bekerpınar Mahallesi, Anadolu Caddesi, No:22 ve 45, 41420 Çayyova/Kocaeli

\*Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

## Ukraine

Your vehicle features a variety of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that it complies with the specifications for its use pursuant to the Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment of Ukraine (Decree 355/2017). This information contains details of the manufacturers and the transmission characteristics of the radio equipment from April 2019. The full text of the relevant Declarations of Conformity is available at the following website:

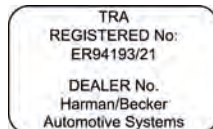
<https://porsche.ua/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/>



## United Arab Emirates

تجد ملىصقات الشهادات الخاصة بمكونات الإشعال،  
على <https://www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehicleinformation/documents/uae-label/>.

[www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehicleinformation/documents/uae-label/](https://www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehicleinformation/documents/uae-label/).



## United States of America

This vehicle includes Radio Frequency Devices that are certified under the following IDs:

FCC ID: KR5315-140930 (BCM Basic)

FCC ID: KR5315-180528 (Key Kessy)

FCC ID: KR55WK50138 (Key Basic)

FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR2 (LTE Compensor)

FCC ID: T8GA270 (MIB2)

FCC ID: NWD5480 (Intrusion sensor)

Radio Frequency Devices and Radio Communication Equipment comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. These devices may not cause harmful interference, and
2. These devices must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to the equipment not expressly approved by Porsche may void the FCC authorization to operate the equipment. Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information: The radiated output power of the devices is far below the FCC radio frequency exposure limits. Nevertheless, the devices shall be used in such a manner that the potential for human contact during normal operation is minimized. Any antenna used with these devices must be located at least 8 inches (20,3 cm) from all persons.

**NOTE:** The equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. The equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not

occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## Vietnam



## Index

## Numbers and symbols

◇-Assigning the ◇ button..... 142

## A

Accept/reject a call..... 165

Adaptive lighting system, automatic driving light assistant..... 86

Adjust  
PCM display for vehicle settings..... 141

Air conditioning  
Set front temperature..... 62

Air conditioning options  
Set..... 141

Air pressure  
Speed warning..... 219

Airbag  
care instructions..... 215

Alarm system..... 29  
Function description..... 29  
function display..... 29  
switch on/off..... 29  
Turning off interior monitoring system and inclination sensor..... 29

Aluminum rims  
Care instructions..... 214

Antifreeze  
in coolant..... 204

App  
Using remote access services..... 183

Apps..... 176

Assign multifunction steering wheel  
◇ button..... 142

Assign steering wheel  
◇ button..... 142

Assistance systems  
Set..... 141

AUTO (light switch)  
Driving light assistant..... 86

Automatic Coming Home lights..... 86

Automatic dimming  
Mirrors..... 74

Automatic lights  
Setting..... 86

## B

Belt tensioners..... 69

Belts  
Belt tensioners..... 69  
care instructions..... 215  
Fastening..... 69  
Instructions..... 69

Bluetooth®  
device manager..... 145

Brake  
Test stand..... 217

Brake fluid  
Changing the brake fluid..... 201

Brakes  
Brake pad warning..... 77  
Brake pads and brake disks..... 77  
Foot brake..... 77  
General safety instructions..... 76

Braking  
Emergency braking function..... 78

Browsing  
media..... 149

## C

Cabriolet  
Wind deflector..... 46

Car care  
airbags..... 215  
Car wash..... 210  
Decorative films..... 212  
fabric trim panel..... 215  
for seat belts..... 215

Headlights..... 213

Light-metal wheels..... 214

Paint..... 212

Paint protection films..... 213

Plastic parts..... 213

Seals..... 214

Underbody protection..... 212

Use of high-pressure cleaning equipment... 210

Wheel bolts..... 227

Windows..... 213

Car Care..... 215

Car wash..... 210

Care  
Race – Tex..... 215

Care instructions

airbags..... 215

Car wash..... 210

carpet..... 215

Decorative films..... 212

displays..... 215

fabric trim panel..... 215

floor mats..... 215

for screens..... 215

for touch displays..... 215

leather..... 214

Light-metal wheels..... 214

Paint..... 212

Paint protection films..... 213

PCM..... 215

Seals..... 214

seat belts..... 215

Underbody protection..... 212

Wheel bolts..... 227

Windows..... 213

Caring for wheels..... 214

Carpet..... 215

care instructions..... 215

Central locking

Locking the vehicle with the vehicle key..... 49

Unlock vehicle with the vehicle key..... 49

- Central locking system
  - Using..... 49
- Charging adapter..... 193
- Chassis number..... 248
- Chassis settings..... 255
- Check Engine (emission control)..... 107
- Check voicemail..... 165
- Cockpit
  - Adjusting lighting..... 57
  - Fuel level display..... 102
  - Tachometer..... 101
  - Warning lights and light indicators..... 107
- Coming Home function
  - switching on..... 87
- Configure & use services..... 178
- Configure steering wheel shortcut button..... 142
- Configuring News
  - in My Porsche..... 183
- Connect..... 175
  - cellphone via Bluetooth® (second phone)..... 167
  - phone via Bluetooth® (second phone)..... 167
- Connecting
  - phone (Bluetooth®)..... 181
  - phone via Bluetooth® (known phone)..... 167
  - phones via Bluetooth® (Windows® or iOS® operating system)..... 181
- Connecting an external device..... 146
- Connection status..... 166
- Contacts (phone)..... 165
- Contract duration Display Porsche Connect services..... 178
- Convertible top
  - Raising/lowering wind deflector..... 46
- Coolant
  - Adding coolant..... 204
  - Checking coolant level..... 204
- Cooling system
  - Warning on the multifunction display..... 121
- Cornering light
  - dynamic..... 87
- Courtesy lights, Entry function..... 87
- Cruise..... 99
- Cruise control
  - Cruise..... 99
  - Function description..... 99
  - Interrupt operation..... 100
  - Store speed in memory..... 100
- Cup holders..... 187
- D**
- Data connection
  - Device manager..... 145
  - Select data connection at access point (APN)..... 177
- Data connection of
  - external WiFi hotspot..... 178
- Date and time
  - set..... 141
- Decorative films
  - Care instructions..... 212
- Device Manager..... 145
- Diagnostic socket..... 6
- Dictate
  - message..... 180
- Digital speedometer..... 102
- Dimensions..... 251
- Display
  - care instructions..... 215
- Display Porsche Connect Services contract duration..... 178
- Door
  - locking with the vehicle key..... 49
  - opening..... 50
  - opening and locking from inside..... 50
- Driving light assistant
  - Low beams..... 86
  - Switch on..... 86
- Dynamic cornering light..... 87
- Dynamic high beam
  - Activate..... 142
- E**
- Electric parking brake..... 77
  - Applying..... 142
  - check on brake test stand..... 217
  - Warning light..... 77
- Electrical power windows
  - opening/closing windows..... 33
  - Store final position..... 33
- Electrical socket (12-volt)..... 192
- Emergency braking function
  - Activate..... 78
- Emergency flasher..... 88
- Emergency key..... 32
- Emergency operation
  - Filler flap..... 245
- Emission control (Check Engine)..... 107
- Emission control warning light..... 107
- Engine
  - Oil add..... 206
  - start..... 79
- Engine data..... 251
- Engine oil..... 206
  - General information..... 207
- Entering/finding a destination..... 154
- Entry & Drive
  - Unlocking vehicle..... 30
- Exterior lighting
  - Setting off delay..... 142
- External mirror..... 73
- External SIM card
  - Data connection..... 177
- F**
- Fabric lining
  - care instructions..... 215
- Faults
  - Emergency operation of filler flap..... 245
  - Power windows..... 33

- Fill quantities
    - Washer fluid. . . . . 252
  - Filler flap
    - emergency operation. . . . . 245
    - Location mark of filler flap. . . . . 102
  - Filling quantities. . . . . 252
  - Fire extinguisher. . . . . 14
  - Floor mats
    - care instructions. . . . . 215
  - Fold in mirrors. . . . . 142
  - Foot brake
    - Safety instructions. . . . . 77
  - Fuel
    - filling. . . . . 245
    - reserve warning. . . . . 102
    - Tank volume. . . . . 252
  - Fuel gauge. . . . . 102
  - Fuel level indicator. . . . . 102
  - Fuel Prices. . . . . 180
  - Fuse
    - Fuse assignment. . . . . 239, 240
    - Fuse box. . . . . 239, 240
    - Replace electrical fuse. . . . . 239
- G**
- Garage door opener
    - Deleting saved signals. . . . . 37
    - functionality. . . . . 36
    - HomeLink®. . . . . 36, 37
    - Programming. . . . . 37
    - Reprogramming. . . . . 37
    - Saving signals on the buttons (rolling code system). . . . . 38
    - Store signals on the buttons – (fixed code system). . . . . 37
  - Garage door Opener
    - Using the garage door opener. . . . . 39
- H**
- Gasoline
    - filling. . . . . 245
    - Fuel level display. . . . . 102
    - reserve warning. . . . . 102
  - Glove compartment
    - storage. . . . . 186
  - Ground clearance. . . . . 251
- I**
- Identification number. . . . . 248
  - Ignition lock
    - Function description. . . . . 78
  - Indicator light. . . . . 107
  - Instrument cluster
    - Adjust display. . . . . 141
    - Adjusting lighting. . . . . 57
    - Configure capacitive instrument cluster button . . . . . 142
  - Hand brake
    - electric parking brake. . . . . 78
  - Headlights
    - Care instructions. . . . . 213
    - set to left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic. . . . . 89
  - Height. . . . . 251
  - High beam
    - switch. . . . . 86
  - High beam lever. . . . . 86
  - High-pressure cleaning equipment
    - Instructions for use. . . . . 210
  - HomeLink®
    - Garage door opener. . . . . 36
    - Programming. . . . . 37
    - Saving a signal on a button (rolling code system) . . . . . 38
    - Store signal on the button (fixed code system) 37
  - HomeLink® Garage door opener
    - Deleting saved signals. . . . . 37
    - Using. . . . . 37
- J**
- Fuel level display. . . . . 102
  - Selecting options and activate functions. . . . . 103
  - Sport Chrono stopwatch. . . . . 161
  - Tachometer. . . . . 101
  - Tire Pressure Monitoring System. . . . . 219
  - Warning lights and light indicators. . . . . 107
- K**
- Instrument field
    - Adjust display. . . . . 141
  - Instrument lighting
    - Adjusting brightness. . . . . 57
  - Instrument panel
    - Adjusting lighting. . . . . 57
    - Fuel level display. . . . . 102
    - Multifunction display. . . . . 101
    - Speedometer. . . . . 101
    - Tachometer. . . . . 101
    - Warning lights and light indicators. . . . . 107
  - Interior lighting
    - Adjusting. . . . . 57
    - Setting light delay time and brightness. . . . . 142
  - Interior mirror
    - dimming. . . . . 74
    - Switching automatic dimming on/off. . . . . 74
- L**
- Key
    - Removing emergency key. . . . . 32
    - Unlock vehicle. . . . . 49
  - Language
    - set. . . . . 141
  - Leather
    - care instructions. . . . . 214
  - Length. . . . . 251
  - Light switch
    - AUTO function. . . . . 86
    - Overview. . . . . 86
  - Light-metal wheels
    - Care instructions. . . . . 214



- Lighting
  - Interior lighting..... 57
- Lights
  - Activate courtesy lights when entering the vehicle..... 87
  - Care instructions..... 213
  - Emergency flasher..... 88
  - Flashers..... 87
  - Interior lighting..... 57
  - Rain function..... 86
  - Set travel mode light..... 142
- Log in Porsche Connect
  - User (Porsche ID)..... 176
- Low beam..... 86
- Luggage compartment..... 188
- M**
- Maintenance
  - Add engine oil..... 207
  - fabrics..... 214
- Malfunctions
  - Store final position of windows..... 33
- Map (Navigation)
  - Call up..... 154
- Maximum axle load, front..... 252
- Maximum axle load, rear..... 252
- Maximum gross weight..... 252
- Media..... 149
  - Selecting a media source..... 149
  - Storing/editing favorites..... 149
  - Supported media and file formats..... 257
  - Tuning to/storing stations..... 149
- Message
  - dictate and read aloud..... 181
- Messages..... 153
- Mirrors
  - Automatic dimming..... 74
  - Folding exterior mirrors in and out..... 74
- Multifunction Display..... 101
- Music
  - Supported file formats..... 257
- My Porsche..... 176
  - Add navigation destination..... 178
  - Configure services..... 176
  - Log in..... 176
- My Porsche App..... 183
- My Porsche Register
  - with Porsche ID..... 176
- N**
- Navigation..... 154
  - Enter destination/search..... 154
  - Enter GPS coordinates..... 154
  - Settings..... 161
- News
  - Using news in PCM..... 183
- O**
- Off-delay
  - switch on..... 87
- Oil..... 206
  - Add..... 206
  - GeneralNotes..... 207
  - Oil pressure warning on the multifunction display..... 127
- On-board computer
  - Tire Pressure Monitoring System..... 219
- Online Map Update..... 184
- Online Navigation..... 154
- Online search..... 184
- Opening and closing
  - side windows..... 33
- Opening playlist..... 149
- Opening voice control..... 181
- Operate the rotary push button..... 113
- Operating materials..... 252
  - Fuel..... 252
  - Washer fluid..... 252
- Operating PCM
  - with touchscreen display..... 179
- P**
- Paint
  - Care instructions..... 212
  - Maintenance..... 212
  - Polishing..... 212
  - Preservation..... 212
  - Removing marks..... 212
  - Repairing paint damage..... 212
- Paint protection films..... 213
  - Care instructions..... 213
- ParkAssist..... 90
- Parking
  - ParkAssist..... 90
- Parking brake
  - check on brake test stand..... 217
- Parking lights..... 86
- Parking spaces..... 184
- PCM
  - Adjusting screen..... 141
  - care instructions..... 215
  - Opening menus..... 113
  - with the rotary/push button..... 113
- Performing emergency fastening of the central bolt..... 235
- Phone
  - Connecting phone via Bluetooth® (new phone)..... 166, 181
  - Connection status..... 166
  - Device Manager..... 145
  - Enter number..... 165
  - Functions available during a phone call..... 167
  - Store/edit favorite..... 166
- Playing
  - media..... 149
  - music..... 149
- Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)..... 92
  - Select suspension mode..... 92

- Porsche Connect. . . . . 175  
     Establish data connection. . . . . 175  
     Registration. . . . . 175  
     Services. . . . . 175  
 Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS). . . . . 87  
 Porsche Stability Management (PSM). . . . . 93  
     Activate PSM Sport. . . . . 93  
 Power window  
     Opening/ closing windows with the vehicle key  
     (remote control). . . . . 33  
     Store final position. . . . . 33  
 Power windows  
     opening/closing windows. . . . . 33  
 PSM (Porsche Stability Management). . . . . 93
- R**
- Race – Tex  
     Car care. . . . . 215  
     Care instructions. . . . . 215  
 Real-time Traffic Info. . . . . 182  
 Rear fog light  
     Driving light adjustment. . . . . 87  
     switch on. . . . . 87  
 Rear fog lights. . . . . 86  
 Refueling  
     Location mark of filler flap. . . . . 102  
 Register and activate  
     Register in My Porsche. . . . . 176  
 Remote control. . . . . 30  
     Unlock vehicle. . . . . 49  
 Replace battery  
     Vehicle key. . . . . 31  
 Reset factory settings  
     for vehicle settings. . . . . 141  
 Roadside assistance  
     Secure vehicle to prevent it from rolling away. . . . . 237  
     Vehicle towing. . . . . 198
- S**
- Safety conformity stickers. . . . . 248  
 Satellite Map. . . . . 184  
 Screens  
     care instructions. . . . . 215  
 Sealant/sealing set  
     for punctured tires. . . . . 237  
 Seals  
     Care instructions. . . . . 214  
 Seat belts  
     Belt tensioners. . . . . 69  
     care instructions. . . . . 215  
     Fastening. . . . . 69  
     Instructions. . . . . 69  
 Seats  
     Using seat heating. . . . . 72  
 Select suspension mode. . . . . 92  
 Selecting access point (APN). . . . . 177  
 Selecting APN (access point). . . . . 177  
 Selecting source (media). . . . . 149  
 Service position. . . . . 98  
 Setting  
     locking options. . . . . 142  
     Setting the button assignment on the multifunction  
     steering wheel. . . . . 142  
 Setting up and using  
     My Porsche App. . . . . 183  
 Settings  
     Vehicle. . . . . 141, 143, 144  
 SIM card  
     Using the SIM card on the phone. . . . . 165  
 Smoker's package. . . . . 191  
 Snow chains  
     General information. . . . . 236  
 Snow tires  
     General information. . . . . 236  
 Speedometer. . . . . 101  
 Sport Chrono  
     Display Sport Chrono stopwatch in PCM. . . . . 162  
 Sport Chrono Stopwatch. . . . . 161, 162  
 Starting  
     Engine. . . . . 79  
 Steering wheel  
     Adjust. . . . . 68  
     Configure shortcut button. . . . . 142  
     Steering wheel lock. . . . . 78  
 Stopwatch. . . . . 161, 162  
 Store the final position of the power windows. . . . . 33  
 Store/edit favorite  
     Phone. . . . . 166  
 Storing  
     a cellphone. . . . . 172  
     a smartphone. . . . . 172  
 Storing/editing a favorite  
     medium. . . . . 149  
 Stowing the phone. . . . . 172  
 Summer tire  
     storage. . . . . 237  
 Switch seat heating on and off. . . . . 72  
 Switching off  
     cruise control. . . . . 100  
 Switching on  
     cruise control. . . . . 100
- T**
- Tachometer. . . . . 101  
 Technical data  
     Chassis setting. . . . . 255  
     filling quantities. . . . . 252  
     for wheel and tire sizes. . . . . 252  
     Tire pressure tables. . . . . 252  
 Test stand  
     Brake testing. . . . . 217  
 Tightening torque  
     Wheel bolts. . . . . 227  
 Time and date  
     set. . . . . 141  
 Tire  
     storage. . . . . 237

- Tire pressure
  - Check. . . . . 218
  - Checking in the instrument cluster. . . . . 219
  - Speed warning. . . . . 219
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). . . . . 219
  - Opening. . . . . 219
  - Settings. . . . . 221
- Tire pressure plate. . . . . 249
- Tire pressure tables. . . . . 252
- Tire pressure warning light. . . . . 107
- Tire sealant/sealing set
  - for punctured tires. . . . . 237
- Tire selection. . . . . 142
- Tires . . . . . 217
  - Checking tire pressure. . . . . 218
  - Sealant. . . . . 237
  - Select tire type. . . . . 221
  - Snow tires (general information). . . . . 236
  - Tire pressure plate. . . . . 249
  - Tread depth. . . . . 227
  - valves. . . . . 227
- Torque
  - Tightening torque for wheel bolts. . . . . 227
- Touch display
  - care instructions. . . . . 215
  - Operating touchscreen display. . . . . 179
- Touchdisplay
  - Adjusting screen. . . . . 141
- Towing
  - General notices. . . . . 198
  - Towing lug. . . . . 199
- TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System). . . . . 219
- Transport (on car trains, ferries, etc.)
  - Tie down the vehicle. . . . . 200
- Tray (phone). . . . . 172
- Tread depth
  - Tires. . . . . 227
- Trolley care
  - leather. . . . . 214
- Trunk
  - closing. . . . . 35
  - opening. . . . . 34
- Trunk lid
  - closing. . . . . 35
  - opening. . . . . 34
- Tuning to/storing stations. . . . . 149
- Turn signal lever. . . . . 87
- Turn signal, switch. . . . . 87
- Turning emergency flasher on and off. . . . . 88
- Turning Sport exhaust system
  - on and off. . . . . 80
- U**
- Underbody protection
  - Care instructions. . . . . 212
- Unlatching
  - Unlocking and opening the trunk lid. . . . . 34
- Unlocking
  - Unlock vehicle with the vehicle key. . . . . 49
  - Unlocking and opening the trunk lid. . . . . 34
  - Unlocking the vehicle from inside. . . . . 50
  - Unlocking the vehicle using the vehicle key. . . . . 30
  - Unlocking vehicle from inside. . . . . 30
- Unlocking when approaching vehicle. . . . . 142
- Upshift prompt display. . . . . 102
- Using remote access services. . . . . 183
- V**
- Valves
  - Tires. . . . . 227
- Vehicle
  - Unlock with the vehicle key. . . . . 49
- Vehicle data carrier. . . . . 249
- Vehicle door
  - Opening and closing from inside. . . . . 49
  - unlocking from inside. . . . . 50
- Vehicle identification number. . . . . 248
- Vehicle key. . . . . 30
  - Replace battery. . . . . 31
  - Unlock vehicle. . . . . 49
- Vehicle settings
  - Adjust instrument cluster display. . . . . 141
  - Adjust lighting. . . . . 143
  - Adjusting display of touch display. . . . . 141
  - Adjusting volume of warning signals and ParkAssist. . . . . 142
  - Air conditioning. . . . . 144
  - Air flow. . . . . 144
  - Auto air circulation. . . . . 144
  - Configure. . . . . 141, 143, 144
  - Configure Steering wheel shortcut button. . . . . 142
  - Configuring capacitive combination button. . . . . 142
  - Fold in mirror. . . . . 143
  - for button assignment for multifunction steering wheel. . . . . 142
  - for date and time. . . . . 141
  - Getting started. . . . . 143
  - in language. . . . . 141
  - Locking. . . . . 143
  - Locking options. . . . . 142
  - Mirror. . . . . 143
  - Reset to factory settings. . . . . 141
  - Set units. . . . . 141
  - Set windshield wipers. . . . . 143
  - Setting locking options. . . . . 142
  - Setting the volume of navigation announcements. . . . . 142
  - Settings for locking and unlocking options. . . . . 142
  - Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). . . . . 219
  - Vent panel. . . . . 144
- Video
  - Supported file formats. . . . . 257
- Voice control
  - Voice commands for radio. . . . . 117
  - Voice commands Media. . . . . 117
  - Voice commands Navigation. . . . . 119
  - Voice commands Telephone. . . . . 118

## W

Warning and Information Messages.....	121	Windshield washer system	
Drive system.....	138	Fill quantity.....	252
Engine.....	127	Windshield wiper.....	97
Safety.....	121	Care instructions.....	213
Vehicle.....	133	Change wiper blade.....	98
Warning lights.....	107	Front windshield wipe and wash system.....	97
Warning lights and light indicators.....	107	switch on rain sensor.....	97
Washer fluid		tapping function.....	97
Fill quantity.....	252	Windshield wipers.....	96
Weather.....	185	Wiper blades	
Weights.....	252	Care instructions.....	213
Wheel			
storage.....	237		
valves.....	227		
Wheel and Tire Sizes.....	252		
Wheel bolts.....	227		
Wheels.....	217		
Change (with central lock).....	228		
changing.....	227		
Performing emergency fastening of the central			
bolt.....	235		
Security wheel bolt (socket).....	227		
Snow chains (general information).....	236		
Snow tires (general information).....	236		
Tightening torque.....	227		
Tire Mobility System TMS.....	237		
Tire pressure plate.....	249		
Tire sealant.....	237		
Wheel bolts (care instructions).....	227		
Width.....	251		
WiFi			
Device manager.....	145		
Wind deflector			
Raising/lowering.....	46		
Windows			
Care instructions.....	213		
opening/closing.....	33		
Store final position.....	33		

